



Universiteit
Leiden
The Netherlands

A grammar of Lumun : a Kordofanian language of Sudan

Smits, H.J.; Smits H.J.

Citation

Smits, H. J. (2017, September 21). *A grammar of Lumun : a Kordofanian language of Sudan*. LOT, Utrecht. Retrieved from <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/57165>

Version: Not Applicable (or Unknown)

License: [Licence agreement concerning inclusion of doctoral thesis in the Institutional Repository of the University of Leiden](#)

Downloaded from: <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/57165>

Note: To cite this publication please use the final published version (if applicable).

Cover Page



Universiteit Leiden



The handle <http://hdl.handle.net/1887/57165> holds various files of this Leiden University dissertation

Author: Smits, H.J.

Title: A grammar of Lumun : a Kordofanian language of Sudan

Issue Date: 2017-09-21

A grammar of Lumun
a Kordofanian language of Sudan

VOLUME 1

Published by

LOT

phone: +31 30 253 6111

Trans 10

3512 JK Utrecht

e-mail: lot@uu.nl

The Netherlands

<http://www.lotschool.nl>

Cover illustration: Storage tree at the house of the author's guest family in Təṛəmaṭṭn (Nuba Mountains), February 2009. Picture taken by the author.

ISBN: 978-94-6093-248-9

NUR 616

Copyright © 2017: Heleen Smits. All rights reserved.

A grammar of Lumun
a Kordofanian language of Sudan

Proefschrift

ter verkrijging van
de graad van Doctor aan de Universiteit Leiden,
op gezag van Rector Magnificus prof.mr. C.J.J.M. Stolker,
volgens besluit van het College voor Promoties
te verdedigen op donderdag 21 september 2017
klokke 13.45 uur

door

Helena Johanna Smits
geboren te Den Helder
in 1963

Promotores: Prof. dr. Maarten Kossmann
Prof. dr. Maarten Mous

Promotiecommissie: Prof. dr. Birgit Hellwig (University of Cologne)
Prof. dr. Alexander Lubotsky
Prof. dr. Sharon Rose (University of California,
San Diego)
Prof. dr. Thilo Schadeberg

The research for this dissertation was funded by Leiden University
Centre for Linguistics (LUCL).

Table of Contents

VOLUME 1

List of tables	XVII
Acknowledgements	XXI
Abbreviations and symbols.....	XXV
Maps	XXIX
1. Introduction.....	1
1.1. The Lumun people	1
1.2. Lumun and Tira Lumun.....	2
1.3. Settlements on and around Mount Lumun, and neighbouring peoples	2
1.4. Livelihood	4
1.5. Language situation	5
1.6. Sources on Lumun.....	6
1.7. Classification.....	7
1.8. Published sources on other Talodi languages	9
1.9. Some sources on Heiban, Rashad and Katla languages.....	9
1.10. The research for this study	10
1.11. Language examples in this study	12
1.12. Orthography.....	14
1.13. Glossing	15
1.14. Organization of the book and descriptive approach	16
2. Phonology.....	19
2.1. Consonants.....	20
2.1.1. The phonemes p , t̪ , t , c , k and k^w	22
2.1.2. Remarks on k^w	35
2.1.3. The phonemes m , n , ɲ and ŋ	38

VI

2.1.4.	The lateral phoneme l	46
2.1.5.	The rhotics phonemes r and ɾ	49
2.1.6.	The phoneme w	54
2.1.7.	The palatal glide [j]	59
2.1.8.	Rare sounds.....	59
2.1.9.	Consonant clusters	60
2.2.	Vowels	63
2.2.1.	Contrastive series	63
2.2.2.	ATR (Advanced tongue root).....	66
2.2.3.	Phonetic realizations of ə	67
2.2.4.	Distribution of ə	69
2.2.5.	Co-occurrence restrictions of vowels in roots	70
2.2.6.	Harmony effects across morpheme boundaries	71
2.2.7.	Vowel sequences	73
2.2.8.	Vowel sequences across morpheme boundaries	76
2.2.9.	Nasalization	79
3.	Tone	81
3.1.	General facts	81
3.1.1.	Four tonemes	81
3.1.2.	Tones on vowel sequences: counting morae	82
3.1.3.	Tone on nasals	86
3.1.4.	Distribution in other than prepausal position.....	87
3.2.	The phonetic realization of the tones	89
3.2.1.	Prepausal low tone.....	89
3.2.2.	Rising tone on short (prepausal) vowels.....	90
3.2.3.	High and falling tones.....	92
3.2.4.	Downdrift and downstep.....	92
3.2.5.	Graphs of phonetic realisations	93
3.3.	Tone rules	95

3.3.1.	Tone shift.....	95
3.3.2.	Simplification of a falling (HL) contour.....	96
3.3.3.	More details on Tone Shift: Tone Reappearance sub-Rules.....	98
3.4.	Deviations from the tone rules	102
3.4.1.	Deviation from Contour Simplification: lowering of a final falling tone	103
3.5.	Tone bridge.....	105
3.6.	Clause-final boundary tone with pragmatic function.....	114
3.7.	Intonation effects in isolated nouns.....	117
3.8.	Tonal properties and representation of affixes, clitics, conjunctions and crk	117
4.	Nouns	121
4.1.	Phonological shape	121
4.2.	Tone patterns	121
4.3.	Noun classes.....	124
4.3.1.	Classes consisting of two subclasses	125
4.3.2.	Noun class pairs	130
4.3.3.	Unpaired nouns.....	133
4.3.4.	Nouns and number.....	134
4.3.5.	Noun class pairs and semantics	139
4.3.6.	Class prefixes as derivational tools.....	149
4.4.	Contracted forms with gemination.....	155
4.5.	Complex nouns.....	157
4.5.1.	Diminutive nouns.....	157
4.5.2.	Complex nouns in the t̥ -class.....	159
4.5.3.	Complex nouns: reduplication.....	159
4.6.	Nouns derived from other word categories.	161
4.6.1.	Verb-to-noun derivation.....	161

VIII

4.6.2.	Other nouns and verbs sharing the same root or stem	162
4.6.3.	Nouns derived from adjectives.....	163
4.6.4.	Adverbs functioning as nouns	164
4.7.	Place names and other locative nouns.....	164
4.8.	Descriptive constructions expressing nominal concepts ..	167
4.8.1.	Agent nouns	167
4.8.2.	Other examples of descriptive constructions	168
4.9.	Loans.....	171
4.10.	Kinship terms and personal names	175
4.10.1.	The persona prefix	175
4.10.2.	Kinship terms	178
4.10.3.	The plural suffix - ŋân	185
5.	Concords.....	189
5.1.	Use of the concords.....	190
5.2.	Concords of singular nouns with the persona prefix.....	192
5.3.	Concords of plural nouns with the persona prefix.....	194
5.4.	Agreement with coordinated nouns	194
6.	Pronouns.....	197
6.1.	Free personal pronouns: the full forms.....	197
6.1.1.	Formatives of the free personal pronouns in their full form.....	198
6.1.2.	Use of the free pronouns in their full form: subjects	199
6.1.3.	Use of the free pronouns in their full form: objects..	201
6.1.4.	Free pronouns as complements of a preposition.....	202
6.1.5.	ɔkkwêŋ ‘who’ and ɔkkwí í ‘(the one) who’.....	203
6.2.	Bound personal subject pronouns.....	204
6.2.1.	Combinations of bound subject pronominal and concord	206

6.2.2.	Use of the subject pronominals without concord.....	209
6.3.	Common noun subject pronominal clitics	211
6.3.1.	Subject referencing common nouns denoting people	213
6.4.	Object pronouns.....	214
6.5.	Pronouns as addressees in commands	226
6.5.1.	Imperatives	226
6.5.2.	Commands to a plural addressee.....	226
6.6.	Hortative pronouns	227
6.7.	Pronominals in comitative constructions.....	228
6.8.	Constructions with the associative marker attot , áttót ...	230
6.9.	Reflexivity: 'oneself'	233
7.	Connexive and possessor pronouns.....	235
7.1.	The connexive	235
7.1.1.	Tone and morpho-phonology	235
7.1.2.	Semantics.....	237
7.1.3.	Attributive and predicative use	241
7.1.4.	Independent use of a connexive construction.....	241
7.2.	The absolute connexive.....	242
7.3.	Possessor pronouns	243
7.3.1.	Tone.....	244
7.3.2.	Morpho-phonology.....	246
7.3.3.	Possessor pronouns as predicates	246
7.3.4.	Reference	247
7.3.5.	Semantics.....	247
7.3.6.	Unexpressed possessors	248
7.3.7.	Independent possessor pronouns.....	250
7.3.8.	'My home', 'our home', etc.: irregular forms	251
7.3.9.	Position in the noun phrase.....	252
8.	Demonstratives	255

8.1.	The spatial demonstratives.....	255
8.1.1.	Phonological realizations and tone	257
8.1.2.	Morpho-phonological aspects.....	258
8.1.3.	Use of the spatial demonstrative modifiers	258
8.1.4.	The spatial demonstratives as independent forms	260
8.2.	The anaphoric demonstrative c-ɛn	264
8.2.1.	Tonal properties.....	264
8.2.2.	c-ɛn as attributive modifier.....	264
8.2.3.	c-ɛn used independently	265
8.2.4.	c-ɛn preceded by the restrictor í-	266
8.2.5.	The manner-deictic adjective c-ɛɛná ‘such, like this/that’	267
9.	The restrictor	269
10.	Adjectives	273
10.1.	Adjectives as predicates, attributes and independent forms	273
10.2.	Adjectives as a word class	275
10.2.1.	Semantic grouping	279
10.2.2.	Origins of adjectives.....	282
10.2.3.	Verbal origins.....	282
10.2.4.	Nominal origins	285
10.2.5.	Adverbial origins.....	287
10.2.6.	Singular and plural forms.....	288
10.2.7.	Intensified forms	291
10.3.	Other ways of expressing spiritual property	292
10.4.	Numerals and quantifiers	294
10.4.1.	Numerals.....	294
10.4.2.	at-c-út , át-c-út and numeral	299
10.4.3.	Ordinal numbers	302

10.4.4. Quantifiers	303
10.5. The adjective C- ərĕk ‘some, other’	305
10.6. Some remarks on syntax	308
11. Relative clauses	311
11.1. Subject relative clauses	311
11.1.1. Restrictive subject relative clauses	312
11.1.2. Non-restrictive subject relative clauses	314
11.2. Non-subject relative clauses	315
11.2.1. Morpho-phonology and constructions with personal pronouns	315
11.2.2. Restrictive non-subject relative clauses	317
11.2.3. Non-restrictive non-subject relative clauses	319
11.2.4. Cleft constructions: topicalization of a patient, instrument or comitative constituent	321
11.3. The locative relative ná ‘where’	323
12. Verbs	327
12.1. TAMs and TAM-stems	327
12.2. Citing the verb as lexeme	330
12.3. Morphological structure of verbal words	331
12.4. Segmental and tonal shape of verbs	333
12.4.1. Segmental shape	333
12.4.2. Tone patterns	334
12.4.3. Correlation between initial vowels and tone patterns	336
12.4.4. Overview of segmental and tonal properties relevant for TAM-inflection	337
12.5. The basic TAMs	337
12.5.1. Non-dependency versus dependency	338
12.5.2. The Imperative	339

XII

12.5.3. The Incompletive	343
12.5.4. The Dependent Incompletive	348
12.5.5. The Past	355
12.5.6. The Dependent Perfective	360
12.5.7. The Completive.....	366
12.6. Auxiliaries and other special verbs – defective inflection	375
12.7. ɔkâ ‘be’	376
12.7.1. The copula and the Present.....	377
12.7.2. ‘Be’ as copular verb.....	379
12.7.3. ‘Be’ in adjectival constructions.....	380
12.7.4. ‘Be’ as a locative or existential verb	380
12.7.5. ‘Be’ as auxiliary verb.....	381
12.8. Deictic verbs	392
12.9. ikkɔ cɪk ‘sit, stay’	394
12.10. C- íkkɔ ‘may’	396
12.11. C- arɛ́tɔk + H ‘be still’	398
12.12. C- ícca ‘be still’	401
12.13. C- úrənn + H ‘just now’	404
12.14. * arəka ‘as always’	405
12.15. * anta ‘can (possibility)’	411
12.16. * appa ‘again’	418
12.17. Negation auxiliary.....	423
12.18. Irrealis.....	431
12.18.1. Combinations of irrealis with some other auxiliaries	436
12.19. C- íra ‘should’	437
12.20. Itive and ventive	439
12.20.1. The completive itive/ventive auxiliary C- átt	447
12.20.2. Itive and ventive as markers of possibility/probability	452
12.21. Defective verbs with complementizer element tĩ	454

12.22. C-ɲŋŋ ‘have, must’	455
12.23. Combinations of auxiliaries	457
12.23.1. Constructions with an auxiliary of ‘be’	458

VOLUME 2

13. Pluractionals	461
13.1. Form	461
13.1.1. Further Pluractionals: Pluractionals based on Pluractional stems	468
13.2. Meaning	472
14. Verbal derivation	485
14.1. The Benefactive	496
14.2. The Locative-applicative	502
14.3. The Causatives	516
14.4. The Passives	529
14.5. The Reciprocals	550
14.6. Combinations of derivational suffixes	560
15. cɪk ‘place(s)’: noun and grammaticalizations	565
15.1. The noun cɪk ‘place(s)’	565
15.2. The vague-reference particle cɪk	567
15.2.1. cɪk as part of the verbal lexeme	570
15.2.2. cɪk marking the absence of an expected object	572
15.2.3. cɪk marking the absence of an expected locative constituent	575
15.2.4. cɪk modifying adjectives	578
15.3. Locative proclitic cɪk - ‘just, precisely’	579
15.4. The lexical item ɲcɪk	583
16. Prepositional proclitics	585

XIV

16.1. Tone.....	585
16.2. Morpho-phonology and morphology.....	588
16.3. Semantics and use of ɪ -, nɔ -, tɔ - and tɔ -	592
16.3.1. ɪ - ‘in’	592
16.3.2. nɔ - ‘on, at’	594
16.3.3. tɔ - ‘up on, up at’.....	597
16.3.4. tɔ - ‘at’.....	599
16.3.5. Place names	601
16.4. Complex prepositions.....	603
16.5. ɲ - ‘with, by, (away) from’	605
16.6. Absolute prepositions.....	608
16.6.1. Syntactic constructions involving the absolute prepositions	609
16.6.2. Absolute prepositions preceded by ɲ -	617
16.7. Attachment of ɲ - to an argument that is not its complement	619
17. Adverbs, discourse markers and interjections	621
17.1. Adverbs.....	621
17.1.1. Adverbs and adverbial expressions of time	623
17.1.2. Adverbs and adverbial expressions of place	625
17.1.3. Manner adverbs	629
17.1.4. Some adverbs with miscellaneous semantics.....	631
17.2. Discourse particles	635
17.2.1. The particle -a	636
17.2.2. The particle -na	637
17.2.3. The particle -ti	638
17.2.4. The particle -mé	639
17.2.5. The particle -me	640
17.3. Interjections	640

18.	Conjunctions.....	643
18.1.	ana + H ‘and’	643
18.2.	Conjunctive á - and subjunctive â -.....	647
18.2.1.	The conjunctive particle á - ‘and, while’	648
18.2.2.	The subjunctive particle â - ‘so that, in order to’	653
18.3.	ámma + H ‘if, when’	656
18.4.	akka + H ‘that’	660
18.4.1.	akka + H as complementizer	660
18.4.2.	akka + H with temporal or causal reading	661
18.4.3.	akka + H introducing a noun phrase	664
18.4.4.	anakka + H ‘and when, and after’ and mənnakka + H ‘and when, and after’	664
18.4.5.	akka + H + á - introducing a negative purpose clause	666
18.4.6.	akka + H ‘or’ linking noun phrases.....	668
18.5.	ámma , ámmakka + H and ere + H ‘(just) like, as if’	668
18.6.	məna ‘until’, məna ‘until’	670
18.7.	The complementizer ittī ‘that’	672
19.	Focus	679
19.1.	Subject focus marking	679
19.2.	Non-subject focus marking	681
20.	Question words and particles.....	683
20.1.	Content question words.....	683
20.1.1.	‘who’ and ‘whose’	687
20.1.2.	‘what’, ‘why’ and ‘what kind of’	692
20.1.3.	‘where’	698
20.1.4.	‘how’	701
20.1.5.	‘what time’	704
20.1.6.	‘when’	705

XVI

20.1.7. 'for what purpose' and 'why'	707
20.1.8. 'how many'	709
20.1.9. 'which'	710
20.2. Question particles	711
20.2.1. The question particle -i	711
20.2.2. The tag question word pái 'is it?'	714
20.2.3. The particle for information recovery -a	714
20.2.4. The particle for informal information recovery -ε	715
20.2.5. Absence of question marking	716
Appendices.....	717
Texts	717
Lumun word list	751
References.....	759
Nederlandse samenvatting	769
Curriculum vitae	777

List of tables

Table 1 Basic vocabulary	8
Table 2 Orthography: consonants	14
Table 3 Orthography: vowels.....	14
Table 4 Consonant phonemes	21
Table 5 Phonetic consonants.....	21
Table 6 Allophones and distribution of p , t̪ , t , c , k and kʷ in isolated words	22
Table 7 Realization of p , t̪ , t , c , k and kʷ in additional environments in connected speech across word boundaries	22
Table 8 Distribution of nasal phonemes in words	38
Table 9 Distribution of l in isolated words	47
Table 10 Rhotics: distribution and realization in isolated words	49
Table 11 Rhotics: realization across a morpheme or word boundary	50
Table 12 Pronunciation of intervocalic rhotics.....	51
Table 13 Distribution of w and occurrence after a vowel-final prefix or clitic	54
Table 14 Vowel combinations in lexical roots	70
Table 15 Diphthongs in nominal roots	75
Table 16 Singular noun classes	125
Table 17 Plural noun classes.....	125
Table 18 Combinations of singular k and kʷ with initial stem vowels	126
Table 19 Noun class pairs with 6 or more members	130
Table 20 Noun class pairs with less than 6 members	130
Table 21 (Partly) suppletive pairs.....	132
Table 22 Unpaired nouns	133
Table 23 Birth names	179
Table 24 Kinship and relational terms.....	180
Table 25 Concords of common nouns.....	189
Table 26 Concords of nouns with the persona prefix	190
Table 27 Concords of personal pronouns and pronominal clitics	190

XVIII

Table 28 Modifiers with concord	191
Table 29 Free personal pronouns.....	197
Table 30 Bound personal subject pronouns	205
Table 31 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C- ímma (< imma ‘see’)	207
Table 32 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C- arékə (< arékə ‘work’)	207
Table 33 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C- arəkə (< arəkə ‘eat’)	207
Table 34 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive C- immât (< imma ‘see’)	208
Table 35 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive C- arəkət (< arékə ‘work’)	208
Table 36 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive C- arəkət (< arəkə ‘eat’)	208
Table 37 Clitic and free pronouns with Dependent Incompletive irə ‘say’. 209	
Table 38 Clitic and free pronouns with Dependent Perfective irəkət (< irə ‘say’)	210
Table 39 Pronoun clitics and concords combined	212
Table 40 Object pronouns and clitics	216
Table 41 Hortative pronouns and clitics.....	227
Table 42 Deictic suffixes	256
Table 43 Nouns and demonstratives.....	257
Table 44 Numerals.....	294
Table 45 Restrictive non-subject relative clauses with personal pronoun and Dependent Incompletive	316
Table 46 TAMs of arəkə ‘push’ and arəkət ‘send’	338
Table 47 Imperatives	340
Table 48 Imperatives of arəkə ‘go’ and arəkət ‘come’	342
Table 49 Imperatives with omission of initial ar	342
Table 50 Incompletives	344
Table 51 Irregular Incompletives.....	346
Table 52 Tone patterns of Dependent Incompletives	348

Table 53 Pasts	356
Table 54 Pasts of Benefactive derivations	357
Table 55 Irregular Pasts	358
Table 56 Dependent Perfectives.....	360
Table 57 Dependent Perfectives and Pasts contrasted.....	361
Table 58 Irregular Pasts and Dependent Perfectives contrasted	361
Table 59 Dependent Perfectives of Benefactive derivations	362
Table 60 Dependent Perfectives and Pasts of Benefactive derivations.....	362
Table 61 Completives.....	367
Table 62 Completives of Benefactive verbs	369
Table 63 Irregular Completives	369
Table 64 Deictic verbs.....	392
Table 65 c- arə́tək + H and Dependent Incompletive	400
Table 66 c- urənn + H and dependent incomplete TAM-stem	404
Table 67 TAM-stems and TAMs of * arəka	405
Table 68 arək + H and c- árək + H and dep. incomplete TAM-stem.....	406
Table 69 Completive c- arəkât with Completive and with Past	407
Table 70 Completive c- arəkât /c- arək and dependent TAM-stem	407
Table 71 TAM-stems and TAMs of * anta	411
Table 72 ant + H and c- ánt + H and dep. incomplete TAM-stem.....	412
Table 73 c- ántər / c- ánt and dep. incomplete TAM-stem	413
Table 74 Forms of * anta with dependent perfective TAM-stem	414
Table 75 Commands with ant + H	416
Table 76 TAM-stems and TAMs of * appa	418
Table 77 app + H and c- ápp + H and dep. incomplete TAM-stem.....	419
Table 78 c- áppər /c- ápp and dep. incomplete TAM-stem	420
Table 79 Forms of * appa with dependent perfective TAM-stem	420
Table 80 Commands with app + H	421
Table 81 Dependent Negative Incompletive and Negative Incompletive...	424
Table 82 Dependent Negative Completive and Completive	425
Table 83 Dependent Negative Perfective and Negative Perfective.....	425
Table 84 Dependent Irrealis Completive and Irrealis Completive.....	432
Table 85 Dependent Irrealis Past and Irrealis Past	433

XX

Table 86 Itive and ventive TAM-stems	439
Table 87 Dependent Itive Incompletive and Itive Incompletive.....	440
Table 88 Dependent Itive Perfective and Itive Perfective	440
Table 89 Dependent Ventive Incompletive and Ventive Incompletive	440
Table 90 Dependent Ventive Perfective and Ventive Perfective	441
Table 91 Itive/Ventive Completive and Itive/Ventive Past Perfective.....	448
Table 92 Form features of Pluractionals	462
Table 93 Pluractionals and Further Pluractionals	469
Table 94 Derivations with PASS1 also having middle semantics.....	543
Table 95 Derivations with PASS1 only having middle semantics.....	545
Table 96 Verbs derived with (V)kɔ having middle semantics.....	545
Table 97 Verbs of ‘break’ and ‘tear’	547
Table 98 Derivations of ‘wake up (tr.)’ and ‘pour’.....	549
Table 99 Combination of PASS3 and PASS1	549
Table 100 Tonal effects of the PPCs on low-toned nouns.....	586
Table 101 Tonal effects of the PPCs on nouns containing a H-tone	587
Table 102 Body parts collocated with tɔ- and/or tɔ-	600
Table 103 Seasons.....	624
Table 104 Deictic adverbs.....	625
Table 105 Content question words	683
Table 106 Modifying content question words	684

Acknowledgements

I am very grateful for having had the opportunity to study the Lumun language and write a book about it. I vividly remember the joy I felt upon receiving the news that my proposal had been granted by LUCL – it felt like finally having come on the right track. This feeling of gratitude has never faded, and I like to express my thanks to the many people who have supported me and contributed, in one way or another, to this study. Thanks also to Leiden University Fund (LUF)/Van Walsum for co-financing my field work in 2008-2009.

The support and confidence of Thilo Schadeberg have been very important to me, and his classes a continuing source of inspiration.

Maarten Kossmann was my supervisor from an early stage onwards. His thorough and utterly useful comments arrived in my e-mail with unbelievable swiftness, or were offered on the spot when we met. Maarten, thanks very much for your unwavering dedication, enthusiasm and patience! More than once, I felt you just ‘saved’ me.

Thanks to Maarten Mous and Thilo Schadeberg for their valuable comments, and to “fellow-Talodians” John Vanderelst and Russell Norton for helpful discussions. Thanks in particular to Sharon Rose for detailed comments and clarifying suggestions. Victoria Nyst was my roommate and coffee-break companion. For all our discussions and good times together, herzlichen Dank!

Many other colleagues at LUCL made me feel at home there: Anne-Christie, Ongaye, Rebecca, Khalid, Stanly, Mulugeta, Felix, Azeb, Connie, Maggy, Daniela, Kofi, Mercy, Josh, Sandra, Martine, Allison, Jessie, Gea, Esrih, Merel, Alice, Daan, Zohreh, Sara, Angela, Jean, Christian, Ramada, Suzanne, Hamine, Sima, Maud, Jenny, Sander, Jos, Jenneke, Gertie, Amanda, Sika, Tano, Ndokobai, and surely still others.

I thank Constance (Connie) Kutsch Lojenga for inviting me to join her to Khartoum in 2004 for a linguistic conference and workshops. This brought me into contact with the Lumun language team, which

XXII

turned out to be of crucial importance for this research. Moreover, I benefitted greatly from her fieldwork experience and initial findings, especially in the field of tone.

The Linguistic Department of the University of Khartoum greatly facilitated my project. Abeer Bashir, Suzan Alamin and Abdelrahim Mugaddam helped me obtain the necessary documents for residing in Sudan and travelling to the Nuba Mountains and offered me a welcoming environment where I could always find a quiet place to work. Thank you so much for your help and friendship! Thanks also to Maha, Helene Fatima, Nada, Ali, Ikhlas, Ahlam and all the others for making the Linguistics Department such a good place to be.

When I was in the capital, I spent most of my working time in the Lumun office at the Translation Department of the Episcopal Church of Sudan in Omdurman. John Shakir, Lukka Kamsur, Lotti Tager and Markos Lalu made me feel part of the Lumun team and made my heart go out to the Lumun people. Apart from working with me, you and your families offered me friendship and hospitality, in Khartoum/Omdurman as well as in the Nuba Mountains. Thanks to Nimeri Alamin and Nafisa Abdullai, who worked with me as language consultants in Khartoum/Omdurman, and to Thomas Kuku for always being willing to address my questions. I thank Fajak, Nabil, Kamal, May, Audrey and Vinton, Tim, Amy, Russell, and in an earlier stage Leoma and Sarah, for their assistance, and all the others in the Omdurman office for their hospitality and support. Thanks also to Osman Alope, Hassan Ramla and Abdu Kwoccana in Omdurman.

Gertrud Schneider-Blum (Trudel) and I shared a room whenever our visits to Khartoum overlapped. After your morning tea we set out to our working places, in the evening we cooked and shared the experiences of the day. It was such a good time!

In the Lumun area and Kadugli I got the support of many people. Apart from the Lumun team members and their families, I mention: Osman Aleji, Osman Sabun, Santo Kulubade, Philip Mandari, Bolus Allia, Gabriel Alemin, Appanco, John's mother Okumang Ando, Appanco's sister Nasra, Risala and Nafisa Abdullai, Nimeri Alemin

and Markos Kamsur and family members. A special thanks to Risala and Nafisa: you offered me such a pleasant home at your house for the longer part of my stay in the Lumun area. Thanks also to those who made recordings with me, some of which have been included in this book. Still others guided me through the mountains, helped me with my luggage, welcomed me in their homes, shared food with me, showed me interesting places, received me in their schools and churches, shared their language with me. I am grateful to all of you.

At home, I thank many people for their enthusiasm, encouragement and patience, as well as for their interest in the Lumun people and the situation in the Nuba Mountains. Thanks to Khalid and to Rebecca and Josh for their hospitality, providing a very good place to stay for John Shakir when he was in the Netherlands. Thanks to my colleagues, since 2013, at the African Studies Centre, and especially my colleagues at the library, for their concern and support. Dank ook aan mijn familie en vrienden voor hun steun en interesse, elk op haar of zijn eigen manier. John was altijd welkom bij mijn moeder en bij Anneke en Johan; ook tijdens vakanties met Xenia was er soms nog skype met Sudan; gesprekken onder het hardlopen met Amaranth gingen met regelmaat over het proefschrift. Hans' hulp, in de laatste fase, was onontbeerlijk.

To John Shakir, finally, I owe my most special thanks. You never got tired of my endless questions. Your commitment to the Lumun people and the Lumun language remained my strongest inspiration.

Abbreviations and symbols

NB: Abbreviations used in interlinear glosses are in small capitals.

1	first person singular
12	first and second person singular
1A	first person plural exclusive
12A	first person plural inclusive
2	second person singular
2A	second person plural
3	third person singular
3A	third person plural
a.o.	amongst others
ABS	absolute form
adj.	adjective
ASS	associative element
ALLOW	particle expressing allowance (-na)
app.	appendix
ATT	particle claiming the attention of the hearer (-a)
BEN	benefactive suffix
C	concord
C	consonant
CAUS1	causative suffix -ε
CAUS2	causative suffix -ie
cf.	compare with (confer)
COMPL	completive TAM-stem
CONJ	conjunctive particle (á-)
COP	copula (c-á)
DEP	dependent verb form
DEPCOMPL	dependent completive TAM-stem
DEPINCOMPL	dependent incomplete TAM-stem
DEPPRFV	dependent perfective TAM-stem
DIM	diminutive prefix (ŋa-)
DIST	distal
e.g.	for example (Latin: exempli gratia)
e.o.	each other
excl	exclusive
fr.	from

XXVI

g.	gemination
HRT12	hortative pronoun, first and second person singular
HRT12A	hortative pronoun, first person plural inclusive
i.e.	that is (Latin: id est)
IMP	imperative TAM-stem
incl	inclusive
INCOMPL	incompletive TAM-stem
intr.	intransitive
INTS	intensifying
IRR	irrealis
IT	itive
ITVEN	itive or ventive (depending on context)
k.o.	kind of
lit.	literally
LOC	pragmatic locative proclitic (cí k-)
LOCAPP	locative applicative suffix
n.	noun
N	nasal consonant
NEARSP	near speaker
NEARADDR	near addressee
NEG	negation marker
NOM	nominalization
NP	noun phrase
num	numeral
o1	first person singular object
o12 (etc.)	first and second person singular object
o ₂ 2 (etc.)	second person singular as second object
obj.	object
PASS1	passive suffix -(a)kɔ
PASS2	passive suffix -(V)tta
PASS3	passive suffix -(u)ra
PCL	pronoun clitic
PERS	persona prefix (ʒ-)
pl.	plural
PL	plural suffix (-ŋʂn)
PLC	plural noun class prefix
PLR	plural agreement marked through reduplication
PLUR	pluractional

POSS1	first person possessor
POSS12 (etc.)	first and second person singular possessor
PPC	prepositional proclitic
PR	present TAM-stem
p.redup	partial reduplication
PRO	common noun subject pronominal clitic
PROBS	pronominal base
PROP	particle expressing proposal (- mé)
PST	past TAM-stem
Q	polar question particle (- ɪ)
QW	question word marker (- ṭa)
REC1	reciprocal suffix -(a) rɔ
REC2	reciprocal suffix - ttɔ
RECOV	information recovery particle (- a)
RECOVIN	informal information recovery particle (- ɛ)
REDUP	reduplication
REL	relative word
RES	restrictor (í -)
sg.	singular
SGC	singular noun class prefix
sp.	species
SUBJ	subjunctive particle (â -)
subj.	subject
Sud. Ar.	Sudanese Arabic
TAM	tense, aspect, mood
tr.	transitive
UNCERT	interjection expressing uncertainty (cɔŋ)
URG	particle expressing urgency (- mɛ)
v.	verb
V	vowel
VEN	ventive
VREF	vague reference particle cɪk
vs.	versus
/ /	phonemic presentation
[]	phonetic presentation
< >	orthographic presentation
*	ungrammatical; unattested item; item in protolanguage

XXVIII

Some further explanation about glossing conventions is provided in chapter 1.13.

Maps

Fig. 1 Map of Sudan. Source: Google Maps (accessed 7 June 2017).



XXX

Fig. 2 Southern Nuba Mountains. Source: <http://elevationmap.net> (accessed 7 June 2017).



1. Introduction

Lumun is spoken in the Nuba Mountains in the Republic of the Sudan by the Lumun people and is classified as Niger-Congo/Kordofanian/Talodi group. This chapter introduces the Lumun and their language. It also provides information about the research for this book.

1.1. The Lumun people

The Lumun number an estimated 20,000 people, of which ca. 15,000 speak the language (Lewis et al. 2016). An earlier figure is provided by Stevenson (1984, p. 28), who mentions an estimated number of 5,000 Lumun speakers around 1960.¹ The Lumun live on and near Mount Lumun (in Arabic *Jebel Lumun*), which is located in the southern part of the Nuba Mountains in the Republic of Sudan, approximately between 10° 91' 00" to 10° 84' 00" latitude and 30° 23' 00" to 30° 32' 00" longitude. Mount Lumun forms the northern part of a mountainous range called the Limon Hills. Mount Lumun is not actually one mountain, but a constellation of hills, valleys and plateaus. The Limon Hills, together with the Moro Hills to their west, are surrounded by vast and flat lowland area.

Part of the Lumun community resides nowadays in the greater Khartoum area, where people took refuge after the second Sudanese civil war (1983-2005) reached the Nuba Mountains and the Lumun area. After a short interval of peace, the Nuba Mountains came under attack again in June 2011; military actions against the area continue up to today. Many Lumun, and particularly young men, have since crossed the border to South Sudan.

In their own language, the Lumun refer to themselves as **arrô**, singular **parrô**, and to their home area as **tôrrô**, literally 'Up at the Lumun people'. As mentioned in Smits (2007a), **arrô** is not, in origin, a proper name, but probably means something like 'our people'. A

¹ The number of Lumun speakers is mentioned under 'Mesakin', 'Settlements in Lumun' (p. 28). As sources for his information about the size of Nuba peoples, Stevenson used the 1955/56 Sudan Census and some reports published no later than 1963.

cognate term **arra** refers to **darra**-speaking people, in the literature referred to as Masakin Tuwal (Vanderelst 2016, p. 4). **parra/arra** is also mentioned in Tucker & Bryan (1966, p. 286): **arra kapi** ‘we are Masakin’. The origin of the (non-indigenous) name ‘Lumun’ is not clear.

1.2. Lumun and Tira Lumun

The eastern part of the Lumun home area has a mixed population of Lumun speakers and speakers of Tira, a language of the Heiban group of Kordofanian. The speakers of Tira in the Lumun area are referred to in the literature as Tira Lumun², and form part of the Lumun community³. Several Tira Lumun, however, and particularly of the younger generations, do not speak Lumun, or only very little⁴. Some settlements in the Lumun area are predominantly Tira Lumun, in particular Kərəkkər, which is located on the plains at the north-east side of the Limon Hills. The Tira people themselves live in an area north east of the Lumun area. In the literature, the Lumun speakers are sometimes referred to as Kuku Lumun⁵, as opposed to the Tira Lumun. In this study, I use Lumun for both the language and the speakers of the Lumun language.

1.3. Settlements on and around Mount Lumun, and neighbouring peoples

The Lumun heartland and the place where the Lumun people consider themselves to originate from is Təṛəmaṭṣṭn, in the western part of Mount Lumun. Oral history tells that, from there, people moved south-west to (inner) Ṭaṛu (also called Cangaro) after finding a large water place there. This wet area is still there, allowing, amongst others, the cultivation of lime trees and banana plants.

² Also Tira Luman, Tira Limon.

³ Stevenson (1984, p. 27) provides a number of 12,661 Tira Lumun, mentioned as ‘Lumun’ under ‘Koalib-Moro peoples’.

⁴ Information by John Shakir.

⁵ Several variants are used: Kuku Lumun, Kuku-Luman, Koko-Luman (Stevenson 1956); Koko Limon (Roden 1972).

The northern boundary of Mount Lumun is marked by a rather steep descent onto the flat plains. The valley of Ṭṛṭ forms the southern boundary of Mount Lumun; beyond Ṭṛṭ to the southern edge of the Limon Hills is Tocho territory. In the west, the Lumun border on the Acheron community, who live in the north-western part of the Moro Hills. The Torona people were the (south-)eastern neighbours of the Lumun in the Limon Hills. Some time after end of 1930-beginning of 1931, during which period language data were collected among Torona people by Donald and Phoebe MacDiarmid (MacDiarmid & MacDiarmid 1931), the Torona have ceased to exist as a community dispersing and integrating into other communities (Norton & Kuku Alaki 2015, p. 65), particularly into the Tira Lumun community. According to Lumun oral history this was due to a conflict with the Lumun over the cutting of ṭupú, a kind of bamboo⁶.

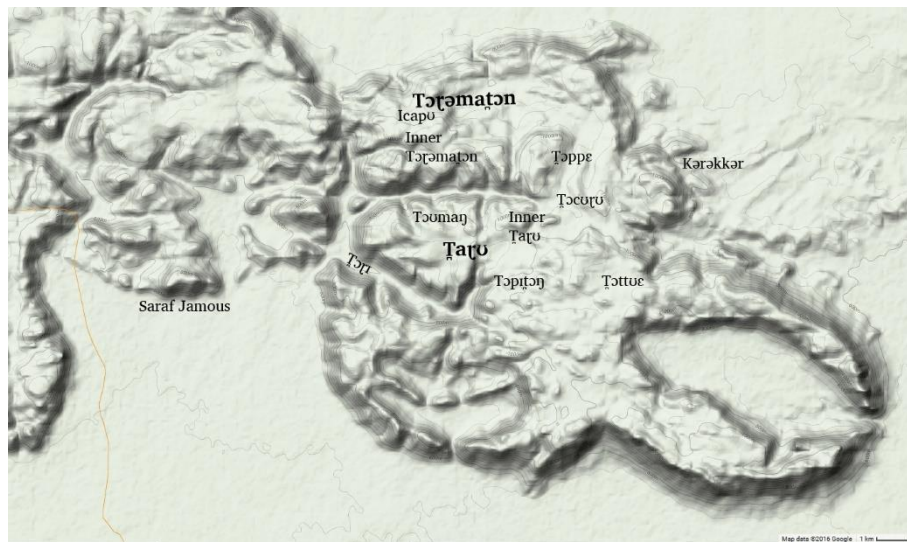
Lumun people are also living in the surroundings of Mount Lumun. The market town of Saraf Jamous (lit. ‘drinking of the buffalo’, from Sudanese Arabic *sharaab* ‘drinking’ and *jaamuus* ‘buffalo’) lies south-west of Mount Lumun and is the main entry point to the Limon Hills from the south. Here, Lumun live together with (mainly) Moro, Tocho and Acheron. Coming from Umm Dorein, cars don’t usually go beyond Saraf Jamous, though it is possible for a car to reach up to the beginning of the valley of Ṭṛṭ.

Lumun have further settled on the plains north of Mount Lumun, mixing there (mainly) with Moro and Acheron. In southern direction, away from Mount Lumun, they can be found in Ramla and on Jebel Ṭabuli (north-eastern part). Settlement outside of Mount Lumun seems to be of fairly recent date. Roden (1972, p. 80) reports that, in the early seventies, the Lumun, unlike many other Nuba groups, were still exclusively living and cultivating on their mountain.

Administratively the Lumun area is divided into Ṭṛṭəmaṭṭən and Ṭṛṭ. Ṭṛṭəmaṭṭən and Ṭṛṭ both have an area chief, who is the highest administrative authority. Ṭṛṭəmaṭṭən is entirely Lumun-speaking and

⁶ Oral history as told by Osman Alope (born around 1940), recorded in September 2012 in Omdurman and summarized by John Shakir.

Fig. 3 Map of the Limon Hills. Source: <http://elevationmap.net> (accessed 15 Dec 2016), with added place names.



The Lumun are subsistence farmers. Their crops include sorghum (in different varieties), groundnuts, sesame, beans, maize, pumpkin, onions and tomatoes. People have fields both directly around their house and further away. Many have a few chickens and several have some livestock (goats, sheep and/or cows); some also have a pig. Edible roots, leafy vegetables, berries and fruits regularly add to the

diet, as may sometimes birds and rodents, trapped in the wild, and, in the wet season, fish. The staple food is a stiff sorghum porridge called **ḡurû**, translated in this book with the term ‘asida’, from Sudanese Arabic *‘ašiida*. Relatively few food items come from outside, most importantly salt (though in times of need there is an indigenous replacement), sugar and tea. Some foodstuffs are produced in surplus of private use and sold in the local markets, such as onions; some other products are collected in the wild especially for selling (such as tamarind fruits).

Towards the end of the dry season (March, April) water tends to become scarce in several places and women may have to walk far to get water. In general, the rhythm of life on Mount Lumun is based on the agricultural cycle. Descriptions of the agricultural year in other communities in the Nuba Mountains can, a.o., be found in Meerpohl (2012, about Tima) and Ille (2013, about Miri, Krongo, Moro, Tira and Abol); no studies, however, exist of (aspects of) Lumun society, whether relating to the agricultural cycle and livelihoods, social organization, religious beliefs, cultural practices, material culture, or any other subject. In Nadel’s study of Nuba peoples (1947) the Lumun are not mentioned.

1.5. Language situation

Among Lumun on Mount Lumun monolingualism is not at all uncommon, and especially not in the area of inner **Tɔɾəmaʃɔn**. In other places on Mount Lumun, especially men may have some competence in a neighbouring language such as Tocho and/or Moro, due to their greater mobility as compared to women. Arabic seems to play little role in the Lumun community on Mount Lumun, though particularly men may have (some) competence in it. Knowledge of English is rare among Lumun residing in the home area, but not entirely absent.

In the lowland areas surrounding Mount Lumun, people often have competence in one or more neighbouring languages; they may also have (some) competence in Arabic. In the Arab-dominated and otherwise mixed-language environment of greater Khartoum,

language loss in favour of Arabic proceeds rapidly. Generations born in or near the capital often have little competence in Lumun. Regular visits to people in the home area and vice versa, which used to give important boosts to the language competence of those living outside, have since 2011 again come to a halt.

1.6. Sources on Lumun

The earliest published Lumun data are eighteen words collected by Brenda Seligman during an ethnographical expedition in South Kordofan in 1910. The expedition did not venture into the Limon Hills, but Seligman found speakers of Lumun in Talodi, a town to the south-east of the Limon Hills (Seligman 1910/1911).

The next language data come from a missionary couple from New Zealand, Phoebe and Donald MacDiarmid, who went on a three-months linguistic survey expedition in the Nuba Mountains in 1930-1931. They did not include their Lumun data in the article that appeared in 1931, but the data were made available to missionary and linguist Roland C. Stevenson who mentions them as his main source for Lumun and incidentally provides some examples (Stevenson 1956, p. 142, 145).

In the mid-nineties, after a Lumun refugee community had taken root in greater Khartoum, community members engaged in designing an alphabet, the development of literacy materials and Bible translation. Unpublished notes on phonology were drafted by, amongst others, Jacob (1996) and Kutsch Lojenga (2004); on morphology, amongst others, by Spronk (2000), Yip (2003), Kutsch Lojenga (2004), Smits (2007a and 2007b), Goff (2010), and Lalu Balati, Tager Arkatha, Kabjan Kapija & Shakir Kilia (2015). Unpublished wordlists were compiled by, amongst others, Kuku, Shakir, Kamsur & Tager (2006), unpublished notes on orthography by the Lumun Language Team (2010). Published work on Lumun includes Spronk (2004) on orthography as part of a description of Talodi orthographies, Smits (2011, 2012 and 2013) on morphology, and Stirtz (2012) on narrative discourse. Norton & Kuku Alaki (2015) include Lumun data in their comparative-historical analysis of Talodi languages.

1.7. Classification

In 1981 Schadeberg published three studies on three of the five groups of Kordofanian, a language family originally posited in 1950 by Joseph Greenberg as part of his Niger-Kordofanian phylum (later renamed Niger-Congo) and presented more elaborately in Greenberg's 'Languages of Africa' (1963). Schadeberg's surveys of the Heiban group and Talodi groups (1981a and 1981b), based on data collected during his field trip from October 1974 to January 1975, established these groups as coordinated clusters within the Kordofanian family; his article on the Kadugli (Kadu) group (called Tumtum in Greenberg's work) proposed the —widely accepted— exclusion of these languages from Kordofanian (Schadeberg 1981c). Since 1981 the Kordofanian family has generally been regarded as consisting of the four remaining groups: Heiban, Talodi, Rashad and Katla: '[the] one level of classification within Kordofanian that is unambiguous and non-controversial' (Schadeberg 1989). However, with more data on different languages having become available in recent years, new questions have arisen. Both Dimmendaal and Blench consider Katla (or Katloid) and Rashad a genetic unit within Niger-Congo, but not together with Talodi and Heiban (Dimmendaal 2009a, 2015 (a.o.), Blench 2013). According to Dimmendaal, Katloid-Rashad is more closely related to Benue-Congo than to Talodi and Heiban (2015, p. 59). The issue of whether Lafofa is indeed part of Talodi (supported in Schadeberg 1981b) is also still not settled (Blench 2013, p. 580; Dimmendaal 2015, p. 29), not in the least because sufficient language data are still lacking. A different type of critique on the Kordofanian grouping is Hammerström (2013).

Apart from the case of Lafofa, the internal consistence of the Talodi group has not been contested. Internal subclassification, however, is 'a less clear matter' (Schadeberg 1981b, p. 92); this includes the position of Lumun within the group. In MacDiarmids' (1931) survey Lumun (Luman) had been grouped together with Tocho (Tacho), Acheron (Achron) and Torona; Stevenson (1956-1957) has the same grouping, calling it "Moro Hills dialect cluster". Schadeberg, who did not have access to the unpublished notes of the MacDiarmids, only to Seligman's eighteen words, confines himself to confirming that

Lumun belongs to the Talodi group (p. 12). Recently Norton and Kuku Alaki (2015) have proposed an internal classification of Narrow-Talodi (that is, the Talodi languages except Lafofa) that deviates from Schadeberg's structuring of the Narrow-Talodi languages included in his survey. Schadeberg proposed a cluster of Ngile and Dengebu in coordination with Tocho, Jomang and Nding; Norton and Kuku Alaki, identifying nine Talodi language varieties, posit an initial split between Lumun-Torona and the other seven: Nding, Tasomi-Tata (Jomang), Dagik (Dengebu), Tuwal, Daloka-Aheimar (Ngile), Acheron and Tocho.

The data of Lumun, Tocho, Acheron and Dagik in the table below illustrate the close genetic relations between these languages. The table lists the first ten items of the Leipzig-Jakarta list of basic vocabulary (Haspelmath & Tadmor 2009).

Table 1 Basic vocabulary

		<i>Lumun</i>	<i>Tocho</i> ⁷	<i>Acheron</i> ⁸	<i>Dagik</i> ⁹
1	fire	ṭṭik/lṭik	ṭṭik	ḍik/rik	ḍi [F]
2	nose	kṛnce/ṛnce		gɜnze/nɜnze	
3	to go	ɛḥ ; IMP: ṛkɔ	IMP: ṛgɔ		taw ; IMP: agɔ
4	water	ṛəṛi/ṛəṛi	ṛi	ṛir; ṛirɜk	ṛer [FF] ¹⁰
5	mouth	ṭɔn/lɔn	ṭɔṇ/lɔṇ	ḍɔṇ	ḍɔgəṛɔ/rɔgəṛɔ [LLL]
6	tongue	ṭɔṛɛ/lɔṛɛ	ṭɔṛɔṇɛ/ lɔṛɔṇɛ	ḍɔrɜṇɛ/ rɔrɜṇɛ	ḍɔlɔṇɛ/rɔlɔṇɛ [LLL]
7	blood	ṛɔccɔk/ ṛɔccɔk; ṛiccɔk/	ṛiccɔk	ṛissok	ṛeru [HH]

⁷ Data from Schadeberg (1981b).

⁸ Data from Norton (2000). Tone is not written on these data.

⁹ Data from Vanderelst (2015). The tone class is mentioned between brackets. The tonal realization of the isolated noun may be different (p. 41).

¹⁰ There is a deleted underlying sequence [əḱʷ], hence the two tones (Vanderelst 2016, p. 24-25).

		ᵛiccôk			
7	bone	cumian/ mumiam	cíᵛaᵛ/ mᵛaᵛ	z3maᵛᵛaᵛ/ ᵛ3maᵛᵛaᵛ; z3mbᵛᵛ/ m3mbᵛᵛ	səme/məme [LL]
9	2SG	ᵛóᵛ	ᵛᵛᵛᵛ		aᵛa [FF]
9	root	ᵛəka/ləka	ᵛᵛᵛgak/ ləgak	ᵛᵛwak/ ruwak	ᵛᵛga/rəga [LL]

1.8. Published sources on other Talodi languages

MacDiarmid & MacDiarmid (1931) and Stevenson (1956-1957) are early sources on Talodi languages. Schadeberg (1981b) provides word lists of six Talodi languages: Ngile (Daloka), Dengebu (Masakin Tuwal), Tocho, Jomang (Talodi), Nding (Eliri) and Tegem (Lafofa), and presents reconstructions of Proto-Talodi nouns and noun classes. Norton (2000) is a study on Acheron nouns; Spronk's overview of Talodi orthographies (2004) was already mentioned above. Vanderelst (2013) is a study on Dagik personal pronouns, Kuku Alaki & Norton (2013) is about Tocho phonology and orthography, and Norton (2013) deals with the Acheron vowel system. Norton & Kuku Alaki (2015) offers a historical-comparative analysis of Talodi languages, including amongst others, Torona data. The authors obtained these data from a last known speaker in her eighties, who was interviewed in Khartoum in 2012, and who passed away in 2014 (Norton & Kuku Alaki 2015, p. 62). Vanderelst's 'A grammar of Dagik' (2016) is the first published grammar of a Talodi language. Vanderelst's book has been available to me while writing this introduction; the manuscript of the main text, however, had already been finished.

1.9. Some sources on Heiban, Rashad and Katla languages

Some studies have recently appeared on languages of the Heiban, Rashad and Katla groups as well. The following is not an exhaustive listing. A phonology of Koalib (Heiban) was published by Quint (2006), as well as some articles, a.o. on benefactive and malefactive verbs (Quint 2010) and loans (Quint 2013). There were articles on

various issues of phonology and tone in Moro (Heiban); recent publications include Rose & Piccinini (2016), Jenks & Rose (2015) and Ritchart & Rose (2015). Articles on other topics deal, a.o., with noun classes and noun phrases, verbal morphology and wh-questions (a.o. Gibbard et al. (2009), Rose (2013), Jenks (2013), Ackerman & Moore (2013), Rose et al. (2014)). Abdalla Kuku published on vowel harmony and on locatives in Laru (Heiban) (2012, 2015) and articles appeared on participant reference in verbs and on comparative constructions in Ebang (Heiban) (Schadeberg & Kossmann 2010; Schadeberg 2013). The manuscripts were published of Stevenson's grammars of two languages of the Heiban group, Tira and Otoro (Schadeberg 2009). On Tima, a language of the Katla group, there were several studies on various topics of phonology and grammar, a.o. on vowels and on morpho-phonology (Bashir 2013, 2015), on nouns (Schneider-Blum 2011, 2012; Dimmendaal 2014), on nominal and verbal morphology and on adjectives (Alamin 2012, 2013), on participant marking and on ditransitive constructions (Dimmendaal 2009b, 2010). There was an article on sociolinguistics (Mugaddam & Abdelhay 2013), and Schneider-Blum produced an illustrated dictionary (2013). Hellwig published on Katla (2013). A survey article of Rashad research data was published (Schadeberg 2013) as well as an article on the pronominal system of Tagoi (Rashad) (Alamin 2015). Lafofa remained the most understudied group, no new language data became available.

An overview of older linguistic and anthropological research in the Nuba Mountains can be found in Schadeberg & Blench (2013); a bibliography of Nuba Mountains research is Dabitz (1985).

1.10. The research for this study

My first introduction to members of the Lumun community was in 2004, when I was in Khartoum to attend the Nilo-Saharan Conference organized by prof. Amin Abu Manga of the University of Khartoum and dr. Leoma Gilley. Afterwards I took part in language workshops by dr. Constance Kutsch Lojenga of Leiden University, amongst others with the Lumun language team. My MA-thesis (2007)

resulted from this, as well as a paper on Lumun locative constructions (2007).

The research for the current study started in September 2007, in the framework of a PhD position at the Leiden University Centre for Linguistics (LUCL). In order to collect language data, I made shorter and longer trips to Sudan, respectively in 2008, 2008-2009, 2010 and 2012; these periods together added up to fifteen months. I travelled to the Lumun area four times, altogether staying there about three and a half months (in 2008, 2009 and 2010); the rest of my fieldwork time was spent in Khartoum and Omdurman. In 2015 I went back to Khartoum for a visit to the Lumun team and the Linguistics Department of the University of Khartoum.

In the initial stages of the research in Khartoum/Omdurman in 2008, my language consultant was Nimeri Alemin from Tɔumân, then ca. 30 years old, who was visiting family in Omdurman and who had been trained as a health worker during the war by Doctors Without Borders. The purpose of my first trip to the Nuba Mountains in 2008, undertaken together with John Shakir, was to be introduced to leaders and other community members in Kadugli and the Lumun area, and to explain about the research I planned to do. The stories in appendix I and II were recorded in (inner) Ṭaṛu during this first visit.

During my second visit to Mount Lumun I stayed with Nasra, sister of Appanco, in Icapô (Tɔ̄ɾəmaʦôn). She and Risala Abdullai, also from Icapô, were my main language consultants during this visit. Both were then around 20 years old. After Nimeri had returned to the Nuba Mountains, my main consultant in Khartoum became Risala's younger sister Nafisa, who was staying in the capital for some months. During my third and longest visit (two months, early 2009) I was a guest of the Abdullai family in Icapô, working with both Nafisa and Risala. The texts in the appendices II and III were recorded during this period. In 2010, I went on a short trip to the Lumun area on the occasion of a celebration in Ṭaṛu.

From the very beginning of my fieldwork in the capital, I had been welcome in the office of the Lumun language team in Omdurman,

consisting of Lukka Kamsur from Ṭṭoppó (Tocho area), whose family came from Ṭṭpaṛṣ (Ṭaṛu), Lotti Tager, born in Ṭṭəraŋkân (Ṭṭəmaṭṭn), Markos Lalu from Ṭṭəməu (Ṭaṛu) and team leader John Shakir from Ṭṭṛṭ. Born between 1970 and 1977, three of these men had come to Omdurman as adolescents/young men and had been in the capital for many years. Only Markos Lalu was living in Ṭaṛu during my first fieldwork periods; he sometimes travelled to Omdurman. All team members had, for shorter or longer periods, been back to Mount Lumun since the war had ended.

Several times I sat in on working sessions and language discussions of the team, and we made recordings of Lumun words and stories. After the initial years, John Shakir became my most important language consultant. Following on the 1st Nuba Mountain Languages Conference in Leiden in September 2011 he stayed a further three weeks in Leiden and during my (one-month) visit in 2012 he was my main language consultant. The rest of the time, we mostly worked through the internet while I was in the Netherlands.

1.11. Language examples in this study

Example sentences in this book come from different sources. A first source are the recordings. Six texts by three different speakers were recorded in Ṭaṛu and Ṭṭəmaṭṭn and fully transcribed with the help of Nafisa Abdullai and John Shakir (in total 22 minutes of spoken text). Four of these texts are included in the appendices. The other two, by Nafisa Abdullai, are an instruction how to make a dish of groundnuts and vegetables called **pacikkōt** and an animal story, ‘The story of the jackal’.¹¹ Another source were written texts. These include stories and other texts written by members of the Lumun language team and by others during language workshops organized by the language team on Mount Lumun. Some of these texts were checked and revised by John Shakir together with the authors during a later visit to the area. Furthermore, Nafisa Abdullai wrote some short essays and stories when I worked with her in Khartoum, one in

¹¹ Both were recorded in Ṭṭəmaṭṭn in February 2009.

the form of a dialogue. She also wrote a letter. Of some of these written texts recordings were made.

I further used translated Bible portions in different stages of checking and correction, in particular the gospels and the Acts of the Apostles. Publication of the New Testament in Lumun is foreseen in 2018. Parts of the Old Testament have been translated as well, or are in the process of being translated. Versions of the books of Genesis, Exodus, Ruth and Jonah have been available to me.

Several examples were taken from these various written sources. All examples were checked with a language consultant, also because tone is not part of the Lumun orthography. In the case of examples from translated Bible parts, I mention the book and verse. In the case of examples from other written texts I mention the type of text between parentheses, for example ‘fr. written story’. Apart from ‘The story of the jackal’ by Nafisa Abdullai, the story ‘A boy and a goat’ by John Shakir is explicitly mentioned whenever an example is taken from it, because this story has been published in Stirtz (2012)¹². A source has not been mentioned in case of variations on a phrase, clause or sentence from a text.

Examples were also obtained through elicitation, which was often informed and inspired by constructions found in written or recorded texts or in pieces of conversation. Examples also came about through trial of constructions produced by myself —typically variations on attested constructions— and variants and alternatives volunteered by consultants.

It must be remarked that writing (and reading) Lumun is by no means easy for most members of the Lumun community. Literacy in the community is low, and among women even extremely low. Lumun as a written language only began to be introduced in the home area after the cease-fire of 2002, when members of the team were able to travel to the Lumun area for the first time after many years, and some of them could stay there for several months. Before

¹² Tone has not been marked in Stirtz (2012).

that, as far as people had learned to read and write, this was in Arabic rather than in the Roman script used for Lumun. During the short years of peace before June 2011, Kenyan teachers came to the area introducing the Kenyan school curriculum and using the Roman script. It was typically students of this generation who picked up on reading and writing Lumun. Opportunities to practice writing and spelling, however, remained limited, also because of the scarcity of paper and the absence of electricity and/or a mobile phone network in the area.

1.12. Orthography

The orthography I use is partly the same and partly different from the orthography as used by the Lumun team. Where the Lumun orthography writes a single consonant with a digraph or a combination with a diacritic, I use IPA-symbols (**th** vs. **t̪**, **ny** vs. **ɲ**, **ng** vs. **ŋ** and **r** vs. **ɾ**). However, I use **kw** for the labialized velar oral consonant, just as in the Lumun orthography. The ATR-contrast between vowels is signalled in the Lumun orthography by the presence or absence of two dots over the vowel (**i** vs. **ĩ** and **u** vs. **ũ**). I write **ɨ**, **u**, **ɪ**, **ʊ**, **ɛ**, **ɔ**, **a** and an eighth vowel **ə**, which is an additional vowel as compared to the Lumun alphabet. Where I use **ə**, the Lumun team either writes no vowel (this practice is of fairly recent date), uses **a**, or uses the vowel with which **ə** is coarticulated. I write **ɨ** instead of **i** because, when marked for tone, **i** is hardly distinguishable from **ɪ**.

Table 2 Orthography: consonants

Lumun orthography	p	t	th	c	k	kw	m	n	ny	ng	l	r	r	w
This book	p	t	t̪	c	k	kw	m	n	ɲ	ŋ	l	r	ɾ	w

Table 3 Orthography: vowels

Lumun orthography	ĩ	ũ	i	u	e	o	a	
this book	ɨ	u	ɪ	ʊ	ɛ	ɔ	a	ə

I basically use phonemic spelling, but at word-internal morpheme boundaries apply ‘surface’ spelling rather than ‘deep’ spelling. That is, in case of word-internal change to a different phoneme (due to assimilation or neutralization), I write this different phoneme. For example:

pɪɾɪmampɪɾɪman paát ‘the spider has come’ (<**pɪɾɪman-pɪɾɪman paát**)

In connected speech, both (underlying) **n**’s in ‘spider’ change to **m** before **p**, which, like **n**, exists as a phoneme. I write **m** instead of **n** word-internally, but not at the word boundary.

Sudanese Arabic words are cited, where possible, from Tamis & Persson (2011), otherwise from Hillelson (1930). I give the terms only in Roman script, using the transcription as in Tamis & Persson.

1.13. Glossing

The glossing in this book is based on the Leipzig glossing rules, with some deviations. My way of glossing is as follows:

A hyphen indicates separable morphemes within a Lumun word; no distinction is made between affixes and clitics. A hyphen in a Lumun word corresponds with a hyphen in the English gloss. A tilde (~) in a Lumun word marks a separable reduplicated part that is glossed with a grammatical meaning (either PLR (plural) or INTS (intensifying)). A tilde in a Lumun word corresponds with a tilde in the gloss.¹³ In the absence of a (clear) grammatical meaning, a reduplicated part is just glossed with REDUP and a hyphen.

A dot in a Lumun word signifies a separable morpheme or a historical formative that is left unglossed. One specific use of the dot is in inflected verbs, separating its marking for tense/aspect/mood from the lexical stem. In such cases the dot relates to a colon in the gloss, but the two are not aligned (unless coincidentally). In the

¹³ Elsewhere in the text, the tilde indicates forms in free variation.

Lumun word the tense/aspect/mood marking may precede or follow the lexical stem; in the gloss the lexical meaning of the verb is always mentioned first, followed by the colon, after which the tense/aspect/mood meaning of the verb is indicated. For example:

ukol w-a.ll̩

child C-run:INCOMPL

the child will run

A dot between two lexical and/or grammatical meanings in the gloss is used in case of a portemanteau morpheme in Lumun (i.e. two morphemes that have fused in an inseparable way).

Except in a few special cases, noun class prefixes are not glossed, nor separated from the nominal stem by a dot. Verbal derivational suffixes are only glossed in chapter 14 on verbal derivation.

An underscore is used in the gloss when the English needs two words to express one meaning. Clarifying remarks in the English translations are put between parentheses.

1.14. Organization of the book and descriptive approach

This descriptive grammar of Lumun starts out with issues of phonology, turning then to parts of speech and morphology. The chapters 2 and 3 provide inventories of the distinctive consonants, vowels and tones, their distribution and realization in different environments. Some cases of morpheme-specific behaviour have been included as well. I use the notion of ‘tone pattern’, considering segments and tone as partly independent, as in auto-segmental phonology (Goldsmith 1976). The next chapters deal with morphology: parts of speech (i.e. words with certain grammatical functions) as well smaller morphological units, i.e. clitics and affixes (for example ‘concord’ (chapter 5), the ‘restrictor’ (chapter 9), verbal inflection (chapter 12) and verbal derivation (chapter 14). The chapters on morphology make use of and are informed by linguistic concepts and descriptions as found in Payne (1997) and Dixon (2010a, 2010b, 2012). Addressing a certain morpheme, I typically

first describe its form, including its tonal characteristics, then its meaning and its use in context. The latter provides an opportunity to include remarks on syntax. Issues of syntax are in particular offered in chapter 14 on derivation, including a statement on basic word order. The morphological description is guided by form units with certain meanings as present in the language. Just occasionally will I take meaning as point of departure, in particular when a specific form is common in other languages but lacking in Lumun (e.g. Lumun has no reflexive pronoun(s)). This description is synchronic, i.e. it describes what is there in the language at this point in time. On a few occasions I, nevertheless, propose what may have happened historically, with the aim to clarify the current phenomena.

2. Phonology

This chapter presents the Lumun phonemes and their distribution and realization, as well as processes of assimilation and elision across morpheme boundaries within the phonological word and across word boundaries. The term ‘phonological word’ refers here to a lexical root which may be (partially) reduplicated and to which one or more affixes and/or clitics may be added. Phonological rules typically apply within this domain. In connected speech, the same phonological rules may also apply post-lexically. The notions ‘word-initial’ and ‘word-final’ therefore refer to the position of a phoneme in an isolated word.

Specific morphemes may interact with an adjacent phoneme or morpheme in a specific way. Such morpho-phonological processes are mentioned in the chapter or section concerned with the morpheme, but in some cases also (briefly) noted here.

Make-up of phonological words

Verbal affixes comprise the concords and derivational and inflectional affixes. Concords on verbs are markers of agreement with the subject (pro)noun. Clitics to the verb are the subject and object pronominal clitics and the relative clitic (ɪ-). Certain auxiliaries form a phonological word together with the verbal stem. Affixes and clitics to adjectives comprise the concords, subject pronominal clitics and the relative clitic.

Nominal affixes are the noun class prefix, the persona prefix (ʒ-) and the plural suffix (-ŋʒn). The prepositional elements ɪ- ‘in’, nɔ- ‘on, at’, tɔ- ‘up on, up at’, ʔɔ- ‘at’ and ɲ- ‘with, by, (away) from’ are adnominal clitics, as is connexive C-ɔ- ‘of’ (where C stands for concord). The locative focus pro-clitic **cɪk-** can precede a locative prepositional proclitic (PPC).

Other word categories are, or can be, morphologically complex as well: modifiers such as pronominal possessors and demonstratives contain a concord that marks agreement with the noun they modify;

the independent pronouns contain the persona prefix; absolute prepositions contain a prepositional proclitic; adverbs can involve reduplication; and question words may have the suffix **-ta**.

Some enclitic particles are not restricted to a certain word category. The question clitics **-i**, **-a** and **-ε** (chapter 20.2) and the discourse clitics **-a**, **-ti**, **-mé** and **-na** (chapter 17.2) are attached at phrase or clause level.

The observations in this chapter are primarily based on the speech of one speaker, John Shakir (JS), who was born in the valley settlement **Ṭṛṭi**. Some additional remarks are made on the basis of the speech of Nafisa Abdullai (NaA) from **Ṭṛṛəmaṭṣṇ**, and Nimeri Alemin (NiA) from **Ṭəumân**, both uphill settlements. Nimeri Alemin speaks with more lenition, assimilation and elision than Nafisa Abdullai, both within phonological words and across word boundaries. The speech of John Shakir can be placed somewhere in between. According to JS the differences between the speech of NaA and NiA represent general differences between the speech of inhabitants of **Ṭṛṛəmaṭṣṇ** on the one hand, and **Ṭəumân** and **Ṭaṛu** on the other hand. Inhabitants of **Ṭəumân** and **Ṭaṛu** typically speak very fast, while several of the speakers from **Ṭṛṛəmaṭṣṇ** speak somewhat slower and more articulated. It appears that there is no stereotypical picture of the speech of **Ṭṛṭi**, possibly due to its more heterogeneous population: Lumun people from different uphill places have settled in **Ṭṛṭi**.

In this chapter I have added several phonetic transcriptions, which aim to approximate actual pronunciations of the segments. Pitch is indicated on these transcriptions by an acute accent (high pitch), circumflex accent (falling pitch) or macron (slightly raised pitch). The slightly raised pitch corresponds to a rising toneme in prepausal position (see chapter 3). Low pitch is left unmarked in these phonetic transcriptions.

2.1. Consonants

The consonant phonemes of Lumun are presented in the following table. The parentheses around **ŋ^w** indicate its marginal status.

Table 4 Consonant phonemes

	<i>bilabial</i>	<i>dental</i>	<i>alveolar</i>	<i>retro- flex</i>	<i>palatal</i>	<i>velar</i>	<i>labialized velar</i>
obstruents	p	t̪	t		c	k	k ^w
nasals	m		n		ɲ	ŋ	(ŋ ^w)
rhotics			r	ɽ			
lateral			l				
approx- imant							w

An overview of the phonetic consonants follows here. Sounds which are infrequent are presented between parentheses. Some very incidental sounds are not included in the table, but will be mentioned in this chapter. Not explicitly mentioned in the table are unreleased t [t̚] and k [k̚]. Notably, Lumun lacks voiceless fricatives.

Table 5 Phonetic consonants

	<i>bilabial</i>	<i>dental</i>	<i>alveolar</i>	<i>retroflex</i>	<i>palatal</i>	<i>velar</i>	<i>labialized velar</i>
voiceless plosives	p	t̪	t		c	k	k ^w
voiced plosives	b	d̪	d		ɟ	g	g ^w
voiced fricatives	β	ð			j		
approx- imants					(j)	ɰ	ɰ ^w w
nasals	m, m:	ɳ	n, n:		ɲ, (ɲ:)	ŋ, (ŋ:)	(ŋ ^w)
rhotics			ɾ, ɾ, ɾ:	ɽ			
lateral			l, l:				

2.1.1. The phonemes **p**, **t̚**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kʷ**

The phonemes **p**, **t̚**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kʷ** each represent a series of allophones which are fully conditioned by their position in the isolated word and, word-medially, by adjacent sounds. Table 6 presents the realizations in different positions in the isolated word, table 7 the realizations in additional environments that occur across word boundaries. The parentheses around the realization of the phoneme **t̚** in word-final position indicate that the phoneme is rare in that position.

Table 6 Allophones and distribution of **p**, **t̚**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kʷ** in isolated words

	/p/	/t̚/	/t/	/c/	/k/	/kʷ/
word-initial and as geminate	[p]	[t̚]	[t]	[c]	[k]	[kʷ]
word-final		([t̚])	[tʰ]		[kʰ]	
after a nasal	[b]	[d̪]	[d]	[j]	[g]	[gʷ]
between vowels	[β]	[ð]	[ɾ]	[j]	[ɰ]	[ɰʷ]
before a nasal			[N]*		[N]*	

*This occurs only before a morpheme boundary, in practice before a suffix or enclitic particle. In such cases **t** and **k** fully assimilate to the nasal. The resulting geminate is then shortened. Before the clitics **-na** and **-mé** (see 17.2.2 and 17.2.4), however, **t** and **k** become nasal, but retain their place of articulation. Some examples follow later in this section.

Table 7 Realization of **p**, **t̚**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kʷ** in additional environments in connected speech across word boundaries

	/p/	/t̚/	/t/	/c/	/k/	/kʷ/
before certain nasal-initial words			[ɾ]		[ɰ]	
after l or r	[β]	[ð]	[ɾ], [r]	[j]	[ɰ]	[ɰʷ]

Articulation of dental and alveolar stops

The difference between [t̪] and [t], [t̪ʰ] and [tʰ], and [d̪] and [d], respectively, is a difference of both the active articulator and the target area. [t̪], [t̪ʰ] and [d̪] are lamino-dental: they are articulated with the blade of the tongue touching the teeth but not becoming visible, whereas [t], [tʰ] and [d] are apico-alveolar: articulated with the tip of the tongue touching the alveolar ridge.

For ease of reference, I refer to the phoneme series **p, t̪, t, c, k** and **kʷ** as the ‘obstruent phonemes’, though some of the intervocalic allophones are not obstruents.

Obstruent phonemes in word-initial position

The following series substantiate the phonemic status of **p, t̪, t, c, k** and **kʷ**¹⁴, and illustrate their pronunciation as voiceless stops in initial position of isolated words.

paman	[paman]	‘tree (sp.)’
ṭamít	[ṭamítʰ]	‘healing’
tamot	[tamotʰ]	‘rat (sp.)’
caman	[caman]	‘fruit of paman-tree’
kamór	[kamór]	‘sand’
kwanôk	[kʷanôkʰ]	‘moon’

A further series shows that **kw** is different from a sequence **ku** or **ku**:

kwa	‘chaff’
kuâ	‘digging tool (k.o.)’ (plural: uâ)
kuá	‘trees (sp.); sticks for beating’ (singular: puá)
kuá	‘fruit of <i>pua</i> -tree’ (plural: uá)
kua	‘strand of hair’ (plural: tua)

¹⁴ I use **kw** (geminated: **kkw**) for the labialized velar oral consonant in the orthography.

Obstruent phoneme in word-final position

Obstruents in final position of isolated words are pronounced unreleased. They are restricted to **t** and **k** in words of Lumun origin.

cít	[cít̚]	‘eye’
cĩk	[cĩk̚]	‘place(s)’

Unreleased **p** and **t̚** sometimes occur word-finally in loans. Final **t̚** corresponds to different sounds in the source words.

ɔcâp	[ɔjâp̚]	‘friend’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>ṣaḥīb</i>)
aləpaccôṭ̚	[alʰβacôṭ̚]	‘jackal’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>al-baʿshoob</i>)
múccuṭ̚	[múcuṭ̚]	‘comb’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>mushuṭ</i>)
môṭ̚	[môṭ̚]	‘bananas’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>mooz</i>)
aləpıríṭ̚	[alʰβıríṭ̚]	‘prayer mat’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>al-birish</i>)

Obstruent phoneme after a nasal

After a nasal, the phonemes **p**, **t̚**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kʷ** are realized as voiced stops. These clusters are always homorganic:

ṭumpîl	[ṭumbîl]	‘rainbow’
ɔnṭê	[ɔndê]	‘wash’
ɔcinto	[ɔjindo]	‘wrestle’
kɪncɛ	[kɪɲɛ]	‘nose’
cɪɲkɪ	[cɪɲgi]	‘sun’
ṭuɲkwat	[ṭuɲgʷat̚]	‘sheep’

The same applies across a word-internal morpheme boundary and across word boundaries in connected speech: nasal and voiced stop are homorganic clusters.

Some examples follow here with an obstruent phoneme after the (moraic) prepositional proclitic (PPC) **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’. The PPC assimilates for its place of articulation to the following stop:

n-tacók	[n-dajókʰ]	‘on foot’ (lit.: with the legs) (< ń- + tacók)
ɲ-caón	[ɲ-jaón]	‘with the finger’ (< ń- + caón)

Also across word boundaries it is the preceding nasal that, if necessary, adapts its place of articulation to the following obstruent (third example):

təllɔn tɛɛt	[tʰl:ɔn dɛɛtʰ]	‘the caterpillar (sp.) has gone’
kəmaráj kɔpɔl	[kʰmaráj ɡɔβɔl]	‘the shield of the person’
cakókɔ ɕm	[cakókɔ ɟm]	‘my calabash (k.o.)’

I analyse root-internal sequences of a nasal and a stop as consonant sequences, not as prenasalization. Evidence for this is that there are no morpheme-initial nasal-and-stop sequences, for which reason syllable-initial nasal and stops are not expected either.¹⁵ Word-initial nasal and stops sequences do occur (some examples were given above), but they result from attachment of a nasal morpheme (**ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’, or a nasal personal subject pronoun clitic). Such sequences are realized differently by different speakers. In the example below, some tend to pronounce a very short vowel **ɪ** [ɪ] before the nasal, others a sequence **mb**, again others pronounce the sequence very much as a single unit.

m-paík	[ˈmbaíkʰ] [mbaíkʰ] [ᵐbaíkʰ]	‘I am’
---------------	-----------------------------	--------

If root-internal nasal and stop clusters were typically preceded by a long vowel, this would traditionally have been seen as pointing towards prenasalization (causing compensatory lengthening) rather than towards an analysis as nasal and stop sequence (but see Downing 2005 for an alternative view). In Lumun, however, long vowels are not attested before nasal and stop clusters – on the

¹⁵ I rarely use the notion ‘syllable’ since it plays no part in my analysis. I nevertheless did some syllabification exercises with some consultants, but these had inconsistent outcomes, also with one and the same speaker. Outcomes would sometimes go against syllabification principles: a few times a break was made between a consonant and a following vowel. JS tended to syllabify a nasal and stop sequence as an onset-cluster, both word-initially and word-medially.

contrary, the nasal of a nasal and stop sequence in some cases functions as the nucleus of the syllable that precedes the stop:

cʊrən̩tʊk [cʊr^an̩ðʊk^ˀ], [cʊr^an̩ðʊk^ˀ] ‘small bell’

Obstruent phoneme between vowels

Between vowels, non-geminated **p**, **t**, **c**, **k** and **kw** are phonetically realized as weakly articulated voiced fricatives ([β], [ð], [ɹ]) and approximants [w] and [ɰ^w].

kapik	[kaβik ^ˀ]	‘rain’
ɔt̪ɔ	[ɔðɔ]	‘pull’
tacɔ	[taɹɔ]	‘grass’
ike	[iɰɛ]	‘giraffe’
ɔkwɔ	[ɔɰ ^w ɔ]	‘blow’

The friction of especially [ɹ] is very light, almost absent, still there is clearly obstruction.

Intervocalic realization as voiced fricatives or approximants is also evidenced across morpheme and word boundaries. Some examples with the prepositional proclitic **i-** ‘in’:

i-parantán	[i-βarandán]	‘in the calabash (k.o.)’
i-cakkɔŋ	[i-ɹakɔŋ]	‘in the calabash (k.o.)’
i-kwɔk	[i-ɰ ^w ɔk ^ˀ]	‘in the shoe’

Some examples with the enclitic question particle **-i**:

aləpaccúɰ-i	[al ^a βacúð-i]	‘a jackal?’
tuk-ĩ	[tūɰ-i]	‘a dog?’

Processes across morpheme-boundaries show that word-internally the phoneme **t** is realized as **r** between vowels. Note that, in the spelling, I use **r** for the intervocalic allophone of **t**.

tué	[tué]	‘river’
i-rué	[i-rué]	‘in the river’
kĩt	[kĩt̚]	‘wild chicken’
kĩr-ĩ	[kĩr-ĩ]	‘a wild chicken?’

In the speech of JS, t and r are neutralized between (full) vowels. In that environment both are realized as [ɾ]. For NaA, however, this seems to be different (see further in 2.1.5 about rhotics).

Root-internal geminates

There are also root-internal voiceless stops between vowels. They are analysed as geminates. Some examples:

kappəɾĩ	[kap̚ˈɾĩ]	‘spoon’
caɽɽak	[caɽak̚]	‘bowl’
tuttû	[tutû]	‘dung’
cakkôŋ	[cakôŋ]	‘calabash (k.o.)’
kukkwâ	[kok̚ˈwâ]	‘tool for threshing sorghum’

Evidence for an analysis as geminates comes from behaviour across morpheme boundaries, as exemplified below.

Adjacency of two identical or different obstruent phonemes across a morpheme boundary

Adjacency of two t’s or of two k’s results in a voiceless stop. The sound is underlyingly a geminate, but is pronounced short.

kwímmát tón	[k̚ˈwím̚ːá tón]	(< kwímmat tón)	‘s/he saw us’
kaɽok kîn	[kað̚u kîn]		‘my spear’

Since **p**, **t̚**, **c** and **k̚** do not occur word-finally (with a few exceptions for **p** and **t̚**) the adjacencies **p-p**, **t̚-t̚**, **c-c** and **k̚-k̚** are not attested across morpheme boundaries.

Adjacencies of **t** or **k** and another obstruent phoneme across a word-internal morpheme boundary or a word boundary in connected speech are realized as short voiceless stops. As a rule, such stops are articulated at the place of articulation of the second composing phoneme. Word-internally, I write adjacent obstruent phonemes as geminates.

t + p > pp

mpɪmmát paʊn [mbɪm:á paʊn] ‘I saw a rat’

t + t̪ > tt̪

ɪtt̪aɪk̪ (< **ýt- ɬaɪk̪**) [ɪtt̪aɪk̪] ‘you and I are’

t + c > cc

cəkəccəkət (< **cəkət cəkət**) [cəpəcəpət] ‘quickly’

t + k > kk

mpɪmmák kɪn (< **mpɪmmât kɪn**) [mbɪm:á kɪn] ‘I saw them’

t + kw > kkʷ

mpɪmmát kwa [mbɪm:á kʷa] ‘I saw the chaff’

k + p > pp

mpaɪk̪ pæj̯ [mbaɪ paj̯] ‘I am going’

k + t̪ > tt̪

ɬakkəʊt̪-ɬákkəʊk̪ (< **ɬakkəʊk̪ ɬákkəʊk̪**)
[ɬak̪ʊt̪-ɬák̪ʊk̪] ‘butterfly’

k + t > tt

cɪt-tókɪt (< **cík- təkɪt**) [cɪ-tókɪt] ‘firstly, at first’

k + c > cc

cɪk caɪk cíɾma [cɪ caɪ cíɾma] ‘it is getting dark’

Upon attachment of the phrasal enclitic **-tɪ** ‘you know’ (see also 17.2.3) a specific morphophonological rule applies. It is now the

place of articulation of the first composing phoneme that is dominant:

k + t > kk

m-p-əká.t cɪk a-n-ɟcat cɪk-kɪ (< **cɪk + tɪ**)
 1-C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-1-lie_down:DEPINCOMPL VREF-you_know

I was lying down, you know

Geminates in word-initial position

Geminates also occur in word-initial position, but result then from concatenation of two morphemes: a common noun pronominal clitic and a concord. While in the following sentence **p** of **pəŋəʔé** and **k** of **kəpá** are realized as [β] and [w] respectively, the initial consonant of **ppárəkó** ‘he (the cat) will eat’ is realized as [p]. For this reason I write double **p**:

pəlla p-əŋəʔ.é itti p-p-á.ɾəkó kəpá
 cat C-like:COMPL that PRO-C-eat:INCOMPL meat

the cat wants to eat meat

Obstruent phoneme before a nasal

Across a morpheme boundary, an obstruent phoneme can precede a nasal. With a few exceptions, such sequences are pronounced as nasals which are articulated at the place of articulation of the nasal. Though geminates underlyingly, they are pronounced short. That they are underlyingly geminated is evidenced by the fact that the initial velar of the morpheme **-ŋɔ̃n** (the plural marker of nouns with the persona prefix, discussed in 4.10.3) is not elided. If a preceding **t** or **k** would have been completely elided and **ŋ** would be a singleton, it would undergo elision itself (see also under 2.1.3). Since word-internal intervocalic length of **ŋ** is attested (though rarely) I write **ŋ** as a singleton within the word:

၁ပု-၇၇ (< ၁ပု၇-၇၇ < **၁ပု** -၇၇) ‘servants, masters’
၁ခခခခခခခ-၇၇ (< ၁ခခခခခခခ၇-၇၇ < **၁ခခခခခခခ** -၇၇) ‘Hunchback
 and his companions’

A word-internal case that, in analogy to sequences **t-၇** and **k-၇**, can be regarded as full assimilation of an obstruent phoneme to a nasal across a morpheme boundary follows here. Here too, the resulting geminated nasal is pronounced short. Since there is an intervocalic length contrast for **n** (see 2.1.3), the resulting nasal is represented as a singleton.

ငါ-နဝ-ခုတ်တံ (**ငါ**- **နဝ**- **ခုတ်တံ**) ‘(right) at the meeting circle’

Across word boundaries full assimilations of **t** or **k** to a following nasal followed by shortening of the nasal when the nasal-initial element is a noun (first and second example below), a pronoun (ex. 3), a question word (ex. 4), the concord **n-** (ex. 5), the prepositional proclitic **နဝ-** ‘on, at’ attached to a common noun (ex. 6-7), or the absolute preposition **နာ** ‘on, at’ (ex. 8):

m-p-immá.t **məṭṭət** [mbɪm:á məṭṭət̚]
 1-C-see:COMPL stars
 I saw the stars

m-p-immá.t **ṇura** [mbɪm:á ṇura]
 1-C-see:COMPL bulls
 I saw the bulls

m-p-immá.t **ṇón** [mbɪm:á ṇón]
 1-C-see:COMPL O2A
 I saw you (PL)

၇-kw-ခလိ၇.တ **၇၇-တ** [၇ᵍᵂခလိ၇.တ ၇၇.တ]
 2-C-run_for:COMP what-QW
 why did you run?

နက **န-ခ-ဝ** [န နဝ]
 waterplaces C-of-people
 the waterplaces of the people

a-kw-ákkakat **nɔ-ppǎn** [auʷákāuā nɔpān]
 CONJ-3-come:DEPPRFV on-room

and s/he came into the room (the speaker is in the room)

m-p-ímmát-ɔk **nɔ-cɔɔɔɔ** [mbim:ádɔ̃ nɔjɔɔɔɔ]
 1-C-see_at:COMPL-O3 on-mountain

I saw him/her on the mountain

tuɔɔt **t-á.rəttakɔt** **nán** [tár^ətauɔ nán]
 food C-be_added:INCOMPL on:ABS

the food will be added to it

What happens to **t** or **k** followed by **m**, **n** or **ɲ** could actually also be regarded as elision of **t** or **k** before **m**, **n** or **ɲ**. As explained above, this is not possible for **t** or **k** followed by **ɲ**. In analogy to the latter case, I regard all these cases as involving full assimilation followed by shortening. There is, moreover, one case in which (possible) **t**-nasal sequences tend to be realized with some length. It concerns the construction **at-C-ut** (or **át-C-út**) + C-numeral ‘both’, ‘all three’ (etc.) (see 10.4.2). Since some length tends to be pronounced, I write geminates:

namut án-n-ún-néɔ́ ‘both rats (sp.)’

t and k realized as [r] and [ɰ] before n

t and **k** are, however, realized differently before a word that starts with (an allomorph of) the prepositional clitic **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’, before **ná** ‘where’, and before **nɔ-** ‘on, at’ when it is attached to a (pro)noun or question word that has the persona prefix **ɔ-**. In these environments **t** and **k** are realized respectively as trill [r] and [ɰ]. What causes these different realizations is not clear.

t and k before ń- ‘with, by, (away) from’

Examples follow here with **t** realized as [r] before **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’. In the first to third examples **t** is (part of) a verbal

inflection marker, in the last example **k** is the final consonant of an object pronominal clitic.

a-kw-ákkakat n-óʔupa [aʔ^wákauʔar nóʔupa]
 CONJ-3-come:DEPPRFV with-spirits
 and s/he came with the spirits

a-kw-ákkakat n-tacók [aʔ^wákauʔar ndajókʔ]
 CONJ-3-come:DEPPRFV with-legs
 and s/he came on foot

a-kw-ákkakat n-nə-ppān [aʔ^wákāuʔar nōpān]
 CONJ-3-come:DEPPRFV with-on-room
 and s/he came out of the room (the speaker is outside the room)

ollé p-əkiccé.r-ək n-tuān [ɔl:é βəʔicéɾɔ̃ʔ n̄dōān]
 husband C-chase:COMPL-O3 with-home
 the husband has chased her out of the house

Before the locative relative ná ‘where’

Examples of **t** before **ná** ‘where’ follow here. It is unclear how **ná** should be analysed, as discussed in 11.3.

ant-əkwaríkət na [andəʔ^wáɾɪʔər na]
 can:DEPINCOMPL-recall:DEPINCOMPL where:REL

ŋ-kw-ənəkkét.é kúrrōŋ
 2-C-put_down:COMPL stick
 please recall where you have put your stick

m-p-a.nékə kəret na-kakkâ [kʰɾɛr nauʔakâ]
 1-C-take:INCOMPL cloth where:REL.PERS-Kakka
 I will take the cloth to where Kakka is

Before nə- ‘on, at’ when attached to a noun or pronoun with the persona prefix ʒ- or to the question word ʒt̪ta ‘who’:

maɪt m-a.ɪk m-ɛkkót n-a-kukkô [mekór nauʔokô]
 beans C-be:PR C-enough on-PERS-Kukku
 the beans are enough for Kukku

maɪt m-a.ɪk m-ɛkkót n-a-nîɲ [mekór nanîɲ]
 beans C-be:PR C-enough on-PERS-1A
 the beans are enough for us

maɪt m-a.ɪk m-ɛkkót n-á-t̪ta [mekór náʔta]
 beans C-be:PR C-enough on-PERS-who:QW
 for whom are the beans enough?

By contrast, there is assimilation and shortening of the resulting geminate when **t** and **k** precede **nɔ-** ‘on, at’ or the absolute preposition **nán** ‘on, at’. Examples of this were given earlier in this section. What brings about the difference is not clear.

Obstruent phoneme preceded by a lateral or rhotic: realization as voiced fricative/approximant

After **l** or **r** obstruent phonemes undergo lenition in the same way as between vowels. Evidence comes from across word boundaries. In word-final position **l** and **r** are attested. A very short schwa may be inserted between the lateral or rhotic and the following voiced fricative/approximant, except in a sequence **r-t**, which is realized as a (slightly longer, but not clearly long) trill (last example below).

pul p-ɛ̃.t [pul ^(ə)βɛ̃t̪]
 person C-go:COMPL
 the person has left

kaɽər k-ápe [kaɽər ^(ə)ʔáβɛ]
 road C-wide
 the road is wide

tər t-ɔ-kəpá [tər ɔʔəβá]
 appetite C-of-meat
 appetite for meat

Obstruent phoneme followed by l

In connected speech an obstruent phoneme is fully assimilated to **l** across a word boundary. Like nasals resulting from an obstruent-nasal sequence, the resulting lateral is realized short:

lɔŋkwat lɛɬ [lɔŋg^wa lɛɬ^ɿ] ‘the sheep (PL) have gone’
lɪcək lɛɬ [lɪco lɛɬ^ɿ] ‘the goats have gone’

Full assimilation of **k** before **l** is also attested in the following reduplication, again **l** is realized short. Since there is an intervocalic length contrast for **l**, the resulting lateral is represented as a singleton:

lakkərɔlakkərɔk (< **lakkərɔk-lakkərɔk**) ‘butterflies’

/t/ is, however, realized as a trill before **l** as allomorph before an **l**-initial noun of **ń-** ‘with, by (away) from’, as in the example below. The sequence of **l**’s can be realized here with a little length, but not necessarily so.

a-kw-ákkakat l-lɪcək [aɥ^wákawɔr lɪjók^ɿ]

CONJ-3-come:DEPPRFV with-goats

and s/he came with the goats

Obstruent phoneme followed by w

Across a word boundary, a final phoneme **t** or **k** can be followed by **w**. In connected speech **t** and **k** are then realized as between vowels and **w** is deleted at the surface:

ɪmɪt w-ɪn [imɪr ɪn]

goat C-POSS1

my goat

wək w-ɔ-ɔl [wɔɥ ɔl]

shoes C-of-people

the shoes of the people

Word-internally these sequences are very rare. A sequence **t-w** occurs in the reduplicated form of the adjective **c-ûkwîṭ** ‘long’ when the concord is **w**:

arí **w-ûkwîr-ûkwîṭ** [wûw^wírwûw^wîṭ¹] (< **wûkwîṭ wûkwîṭ**)
 nails c-long-(c).long
 the nails are long

2.1.2. Remarks on **k^w**

*Variation **k^w** ~ **k** after a high back vowel (**u** or **ʊ**)*

In word-medial position there is neutralization between **k^w** and **k** after **ʊ** or **u**, irrespective of whether the velar consonant is realized as a voiceless stop (when it is geminated), a voiced stop (after a nasal), or an approximant (between vowels). Some speakers pronounce the labialized velar, others the non-labialized. NaA used the variants with **k^w**, NiA the variants with **k**. JS tended to use the variants with **k**, but would, upon reflection, often prefer **k^w**. Some examples:

porókô	vs.	porúkwô	‘friend’
orúkwô	vs.	orúkwô	‘hide’
tókia	vs.	túkwia	‘head pad’ (for carrying heavy things)
ókka	vs.	úkkwa	‘become old’ (of people and animals)
otúrukke	vs.	otúrukke	‘swallow’
tonkat	vs.	tonkwat	‘sheep’
tonke	vs.	tonkwe	‘liver’

The same is found in a borrowed word:

cókkar vs. **cókkwar** ‘sugar’ (< Sud. Ar. *sukkar*)

Some Pluractional verbs are formed through insertion of **ukk** or **ukkw** before the final or last vowel (see chapter 13):

apo ‘fall’ **apukkwô** or **apukk(w)ô** ‘fall with several bumps’

An exception is the adjective **-ûkwîṭ** ‘long, tall, deep’. Though the labialized velar is preceded by **u**, there is no alternative pronunciation without labialization.

Only in a few cases **kw** and **kkw** are root or stem-internally preceded by another vowel than **u** or **u**. In these cases no alternative pronunciation with a non-labialized velar is available (unless in the incidental case that the labialized velar is followed by **u** or **u**, see further below). Examples:

cəkwâ	‘breath’
cəkwónə	‘produce’
akwa	‘okay’
aɪkkwət	‘drive (animals) in different direction’
(also: aɪkkwət or aɪkkət)	‘drive (animals) in different direction’
cəkkwə	‘stir to solve lumps’

In the following words, with the vowel **ə** preceding, **kkw** and **kk** are contrastive:

cəkkwə	‘hit’	cəkkə	‘pass’
cəkkwət	‘kill’ ¹⁶	cəkkət	‘do, make’

There seem to be no cases of **ŋkw** preceded root-internally by another vowel than **u** or **u**. The vowel **ɪ** precedes **ŋkw** in **ŋkwêl** ‘in the hunting party’ and **ŋkwâk** ‘in the beer’, but these words are contractions of **ɪ-** ‘in’ and **kəmel** ‘hunting party’ and **ŋəpak** ‘beer’ (see chapter 4.4).

¹⁶ In the speech of NiA there was lenition also in the words **cəkkwə** ‘hit’ and **cəkkwət** ‘kill’. They were pronounced as [cʷβə] and [cʷβət] respectively, with very weakly articulated ʷβ, whereas they were pronounced as [cʷkə] and [cʷkət] by NaA and JS. No information is available about the pronunciation by NiA of other words with **kkʷ** between vowels.

k^w before a high back vowel (u or ʊ)

For some speakers there is a phonological restriction against a labialized velar consonant preceding ʊ or u, but not for all. JS and NiA did not produce sequences **k^w-ʊ** or **k^w-u**, and JS rejected the combination, but in the speech of NaA it is attested. There is, for example, speaker variation in the pronunciation of ʊ or u-initial verbs preceded by the 2nd person singular pronoun clitic + concord (**ŋ-kw-**), the third person pronoun clitic (**kw-**), and the third person pronoun clitic + concord (**kkw-**):

ŋ-kw-úmmə	vs. ŋ-k-úmmə	‘you will take’
a-kw-úrəkə	vs. a-k-úrəkə	‘and/while s/he gets up’
k-kw-úrəkə	vs. k-k-úrəkə	‘s/he will get up’

Variation was also found in a few lexical items:

əkúrət	vs. ək^wúrət	‘move up’
akúccɿ	vs. ak^wúccɿ	‘money’ (< Sud. Ar. <i>al-guruush</i>)
kucúl	vs. kwucúl	‘back’

Origins of k^w

k^w has different origins in different words. In nouns, **k^w** as a noun class prefix may originate from reanalysis of a proto-Talodi plural noun class prefix **w** before **ɔ** as part of the stem, and, in a less consistent manner, before the vowels **a**, **ɪ** and **ɛ** (see chapter 4.3.1).

In words with stem-internal **k^w** preceding ʊ or u, such as **purukwô** ‘friend’ (see above), the labialization of **k** may historically be a continuation of the preceding ʊ or u. This is suggested by the relatively few cases with other stem-internal preceding vowels, while (seemingly) all cases of non-final (**ŋ**)**k**(**k**) preceded by ʊ or u allow for a labialized pronunciation (though not all speakers actually do this).

k^w incidentally arises from phenomena across morpheme boundaries. The 2nd person singular pronoun clitic **ŋ** + concord **p** combine to

ŋkw (see chapter 6.2.1). A labialized velar can also arise from prefixation of the prepositional clitics **ɾ-**, **nɔ-**, **tɔ-** or **ʔɔ-** to a noun with initial **k** and a labial consonant as onset of its second syllable, for example: **ɪkkwɔ̃n** ‘in the field’ (< **ɪ** + **kəpɔ̃n**), and **ŋkwɛ̃l** ‘in the hunting party’ (< **ɪ** + **kəmə̃l**) (see chapter 4.4 for a list of nouns that are contracted upon attachment of a PPC).

Other cases of labialization

The other obstruent phonemes do not occur labialized, or only rarely. **tʷ** is attested as a variant of **tɔ** in just two items, at least one of which is probably not originally Lumun.

ittuǎŋ ~ **ittwǎŋ** very (also **ittiǎŋ**)
attoak ~ **attwak** all, whole (probably a loan from Tocho)

2.1.3. The phonemes **m**, **n**, **ɲ** and **ŋ**

The distribution of **m**, **n**, **ɲ** and **ŋ** is presented in table 8. Parentheses signify that attestations in a certain position are rare. As with the obstruents, only the alveolar and velar phonemes occur word-finally in originally Lumun words.

Table 8 Distribution of nasal phonemes in words

	m	n	ɲ	ŋ
word-initial	+	+	+	+
word-final	(+)	+	–	+
before an obstruent phoneme	+	+	+	+
between vowels	+	+	+	+

Word-initial position

Series which substantiate the nasal phonemes and illustrate their distribution follow here. All nasals are found in initial position:

məpôk	‘arrows’
nəɽi	‘cobras’
ɲəpǎɾ	‘partridges’
ɲɔɾɛ	‘laziness’

Initial **ɲ** is elided after a vowel. This can be seen across word-internal morpheme boundaries as well as, in connected speech, across word boundaries:

ɔkukkú-ɲn	(< ɔkukkô + -ɲn)	‘Kukku and his companions’
akka-ɲn / aka-ɲn	(< akkă + ɲn)	‘why?’
a-úra ...	(< á- + ɲura)	‘and the bull ...’
lɪpɪl ló-ura	(< lɔ- + ɲura)	‘the horns of the bull’
ɲura ɲɛɛt	[ɲura ɛɛtʰ]	‘the bull has gone’

Initial **ɲ** is not elided when preceded by a nasal or obstruent phoneme. It is pronounced short, but considered underlyingly geminated, as explained in 2.1.1. Because there is a word-internal length contrast of **ɲ** (though rarely attested, see 2.1.3), the resulting nasal is written as a singleton:

ɔcɔ-ɲn	[ɔjɔ-ɲn]	‘John and his companions’
(< ɔcɔɲ-ɲn < ɔcɔn + -ɲn)		
ɲɪttɪpɪt ɲn	[ɲɪtɪβɪ ɲn]	‘my billy goat’
mpɪmmát ɲura	[mbɪm:á ɲura]	‘I saw the bull’

Initial **m**, **n** and **ɲ** are not elided between vowels. For example:

noɽupa nɛɛt	[noɽupa nɛɛtʰ]	‘the lizards (sp.) have gone’
--------------------	----------------	-------------------------------

Word-final position

Word-final nasals are restricted to **n** and **ɲ**:

kaɾan	‘place’
kanáɲ	‘wind’

Final **m** just occurs in a few loans, for example:

kálam ‘pen’ (< Sud. Ar. *galam*)

Unlike initial **ŋ**, final **ŋ** is not deleted between vowels:

ɔkumáŋ-i [ɔuɔumáŋ-i] (< **ɔkumâŋ** + **-i**) ‘(is/was it) Kumaŋ?’
ɔkumáŋ émpí [ɔuɔumáŋ émbí] ‘this Kumaŋ’

A nasal before an obstruent phoneme

All nasals can precede a phoneme **p**, **t̪**, **t**, **c**, **k** or **kw**. Such clusters, whether root-internal, word-internal across morpheme-boundaries or across word boundaries in connected speech, are realized as a homorganic nasal + a voiced stop:

cɪŋtâŋ [cɪŋdâŋ] ‘bird (sp.)’
m-pôl [mbôl] ‘with the person’ (< **ń-** + **pul**)
parantaŋ pîn [parandam bîn] ‘my gourd’

Assimilation of the nasal for place of articulation to the following stop can also be seen in nouns with reduplication:

pɪɾɪmam-píɾɪman [pɪɾɪmambíɾɪman] ‘spider’
cɪaŋ-cɪan [cɪaŋɲɪan] ‘seed (sp.)’
kəɾɪŋ-kəɾɪn [kʰɪŋgʰɪn] ‘musical instrument (k.o.)’
takkun-tákkun [takundákun] ‘mosquito’

Between vowels

Between vowels, all nasals are attested:

ɪama [ɪama] ‘be(come) hungry’
ana [ana] ‘and’
aŋɔ [aŋɔ] ‘open’
ɔŋɔt [ɔŋɔt] ‘like, want, love’

A labialized velar nasal

Between vowels [ŋ^w]¹⁷ is attested in three verbs (as well as in some of their derivations): **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** ‘keep’, **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** ‘sing’ and **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** ‘kill (PLUR)’. The verbs with velar nasal form near-minimal pairs with the following verb:

ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ [ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ] ‘like, want, love’

In table 4, I have therefore mentioned ŋ^w as a phoneme, but one with marginal status.

One word may seem to have [ŋ^w] as initial sound: the singular of **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** /**ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** ‘milk’ ([ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ], [ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ], [ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ]). However, between vowels **ᵛ** remains, so that a sequence **ᵛ-ᵛ** is the better analysis:

ᵛ-ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ ‘in the milk’ (< **ᵛ** + **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ**)

Moreover, **ᵛᵛᵛᵛᵛ** is pronounced with a L and H tone, irrespective of whether the initial consonant sounds like a labialized velar nasal. L + H tones are not attested on nouns with a single vowel. Also for this reason it is better to analyse the initial consonant as **ᵛ**, not **ᵛᵛ**.

Other labialized nasals are not attested.

Geminated nasals

There is root-internal intervocalic nasal length contrast for **m** and **n** as evidenced in some (near) minimal pairs. In such pairs, when pronounced next to each other, the length differences were clear. There may be root-internal length also for **ᵛ** and **ᵛ** (not **ᵛᵛ**) as well. In general, however, it seems that length is not necessarily realized. Length decisions were often difficult to make. A geminate was chosen if it was possible to hold the nasal a little longer and when speakers

¹⁷ I use **ᵛᵛ** for the labialized velar nasal consonant in the orthography.

judged that the word fitted in better with words with a clearly long nasal than with words with a clearly short nasal.¹⁸

Some examples of root-internal long nasals follow here. They are contrasted with word with short nasals, whether root-internally or across a morpheme boundary.

Short versus long m

ɔmmê	‘move asida’ (bring to mouth or pour on a plate)
ɔmê	‘tattoo’ (verb)
imma	‘see’
i-má	‘in heads’
ime	‘wash’
c-ímmjɪn	‘heavy’
ɪmɪt	‘goat’
ɔmmo	‘take, pick (up)’ (one item)
ɔcúmɔ	‘take, pick (up) one by one’ (scattered items)

Short versus long n

ɔnne	‘help put a load on the head several times’
ɔnê	‘help put a load on the head’
ɔnné	‘your mother’
ɔnâ	‘bring’
ɔnna	‘habitually bring’
ɔnnân	‘(his/her) mother’
kunnûr	‘fruit of <i>punnur</i> -tree’
kunú	‘ear’
cannán	‘very’
kanáj	‘wind’

¹⁸ Decisions are in most cases based on the speech and judgements of JS.

Short versus long ɲ

Whether or not there is an intervocalic length distinction for ɲ in roots was particularly difficult to establish, also because there are not many cases of intervocalic ɲ, whether singletons or geminates. In unpublished wordlists¹⁹, the words for ‘shoulder blade’, ‘wound’ and ‘singer’ are written with double ɲ, but contrasting them with similar words with short ɲ did not yield a length difference, except perhaps in the word ‘singer’.

cɲâ	‘shoulder blade’
-ɲâ	‘secrete itching fluid (poison)’
mɲâ	‘shoulder blades’
mɲâ	‘speed’
kɲɪ	‘wound’
pɲɪl	‘snake’
? pɲɲît	‘singer’
kɲɪt	‘rib’

In the adverb **ɲɲəɲɲ** ‘totally’ length of the palatal nasal ɲ is (probably) a matter of expressivity. ɲ can furthermore be pronounced with some length in the spatial demonstratives **ɲɲɪ** ‘this, these’ (near speaker), **ɲɲəɲɪk** ‘this, that, these, those’ (near addressee) and **ɲɲəɲê** ‘that, those’ (away from the speaker and the addressee). In these words, however, the long nasal is not root-internal but goes across a morpheme boundary (**ɲɲɪ** is an assimilation product with format **ɛn-C-í**, where the concord (C) is ɲ; **ɲɲəɲɪk** has the format **ɛn-C-əɲɪk**, and **ɲɲəɲê** the format **ɛn-C-əɲê** (see chapter 8.1)). Some nasal length can also be realized in **ɲɲ-ɲ-ɲɲ-ɲɲɪ** ‘both’ modifying a noun of the ɲ-class, and other modifiers based on the format **at-C-ɔt-C-numeral** (**át-C-út-C-numeral**) (see 10.4.2).

¹⁹ Kuku et al. (2006) and Lumun wordlist 25 February 2004.

Short versus long ɲ

There seems to be no root-internal length contrast of ɲ between vowels. In **anɲəna** ‘very’ the velar nasal has (or can have) length, but, like in **anɲəɲɲ** ‘totally’, nasal length is (probably) due to expressivity. As discussed earlier, geminates caused by adjacency of an obstruent phoneme and a velar nasal do not result in nasals that are realized long (though underlyingly geminates). Moreover, in an item such as **ɔpaɲɔn** ‘siblings’ (< **ɔpáɲ** + **-ɲɔn**), too, the velar nasal across the morpheme boundary is realized short.

It is, however, possible to realize length of adjacent velar nasals across a word-internal morpheme boundary in the demonstratives **en-ɲ-í** ‘this, these’ (near speaker), **en-ɲ-ərík** ‘this, that, these, those’ (near addressee) and **en-ɲ-ərê** ‘that, those’ (away from the speaker and the addressee). Notably, **at-C-út-C-numeral** (**át-C-út-C-numeral**) (see 10.4.2) is not attested with the concord ɲ since this concord does not occur on plural nouns.

Word-initial nasal length

There is nasal length in word-initial position, due to attachment of the prepositional clitic **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’. In these cases length tends to be realized, especially in isolated words.

m-máɲɲak	‘with bowls’
n-naɲám	‘with books’
ɲ-ɲaɲɲɔkkɔl	‘with calabashes (k.o.)’
ɲ-ɲaɲɲɔkkɔl	‘with a calabash (k.o.)’

Some speakers realize a short vowel **ɪ** before the clitic instead:

m-máɲɲak	[m:áɲakʰ], [ˈmáɲakʰ]	‘with bowls’
ɲ-ɲɪn	[ɲ:ɪn], [ˈɲɪn]	‘with, by’ (absolute preposition, see 16.6)

By contrast, a combination of a nasal common noun pronominal clitic (see 6.3) + concord (see 5.1), i.e. PRO-C, is pronounced without

length. In the first example below the common noun pronominal clitic **n-** pronominalizes, for example, **namut** ‘rats (sp.)’. The velar nasal in the second example is realized without length as well. At the word boundary I write the underlying form there (with a doubled velar nasal), in order to avoid the suggestion that the velar nasal can be deleted after a preceding vowel-final word.

n-ḡṛəkó.t [nḡṛ^hʷót^h]

PRO.C-eat:COMPL

they (the rats, sp.) have eaten it

ʊkʊl w-ḡnekó.t ḡṛɪ ána ḡ-ḡ-ímmɪn

child

C-take:COMPL

water

and

PRO-C-heavy

the child carried the water and it was heavy

Nasals preceded by l or r

In connected speech, **ḡ** is typically elided after **l** or **r** across a word boundary. The other nasals can be elided in this position as well.

mʊpúl mɪn	[mʊβúl mɪn], [mʊβúl ɪn]	‘my hats’
naɾaŋkal nɪn	[naɾaŋgal nɪn], [naɾaŋgal ɪn]	‘my beds’
ɲʊkʊl ɲɪn	[ɲʊʋʊl ɲɪn], [ɲʊʋʊl ɪn]	‘my children’
ḡʊcʊl ḡɪn	[ḡʊcʊl ɪn]	‘my sauce’
mɔɾér mɪn	[mɔɾér mɪn], [mɔɾér ɪn]	‘my young female goats/cows’
nɔr naɪk	[nɔr naɪk ^h], [nɔr aɪk ^h]	‘there is appetite’
ḡar ḡaɪk	[ḡar aɪk ^h]	‘there is mud’

Nasal after an obstruent phoneme

In the section on obstruent phonemes it was shown that, as a rule, a nasal causes full assimilation of a preceding obstruent phoneme, after which the geminated nasal is realized short. However, upon attachment of the enclitic discourse particles **-na** and **-mé** (see 17.2.2 and 17.2.4), a preceding obstruent phoneme assimilates only partially to the nasal: it becomes nasal but retains its place of articulation in the result. In both cases the resulting nasal is

pronounced short. Since there is word-internal length contrast of **n** and **ŋ**, I write the nasals as singletons.

ĩĩk.ĩ **kĩ-nâ** (< **kĩt -na**)
 tie:IMP wild_chicken-ALLOW

okay, but (then) tie the wild chicken (first)! (for example in response to “let’s go to the shop!”)

ĩĩk.ĩ **ṭakəɽɔ-ŋâ** (< **ṭakəɽók -na**)
 tie:IMP chicken-ALLOW

okay, but (then) tie the chicken (first)! (for example in response to “let’s go to the shop”)

ana **ɔ-rɪt** **ṭ-a.réko** **ŋóré** **ŋ-ótté-i-ŋé** (< **ŋóttéik -mé**)
 and PERS-12 C-work:INCOMPL work C-little-VREF-PROP

okay, shall we do a little work?

Nasal before l

Word-internally, no sequences of nasal + **l** are attested. Upon prefixation of **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ to an **l**-initial noun, the nasal assimilates to **l**. The lateral can be pronounced with some length.

l-lôn ‘with words’ (< **ń-** + **lôn**)

In the example below, the final nasals (**n** and **ŋ**) of the first and second word tend to be elided before the following **l**:

lôn **l-aŋ** **l-ɔpərɔt** [lɔ la lɔβːrɔtː]
 words C-POSS2 C-good

your words are good

2.1.4. The lateral phoneme **l**

l is articulated with the tip of the tongue against the alveolar ridge. The table gives its distribution in isolated words:

Table 9 Distribution of **l** in isolated words

	l
word-initial	+
word-final	+
between vowels	+

l occurs contrastively in word-initial and word-final position:

lɔn ‘words, matters, mouths’

ɬɔn ‘mouth’

cɪl ‘grain of sorghum’

cɪt ‘eye’

Geminated l

Root-internally there are length differences, but it was often difficult to decide, also for the speakers, between single and geminated **l**. Geminated **l** can be pronounced short, but can also be held a little longer; it appears to be more common between vowels than short **l**.

Some words with short **l**:

cələk ‘neck’

cakkəlɔk ‘calabash (k.o.)’

kəlɔk ‘first stage of what becomes a fruit’

kulɔra ‘shelter for goat’

kwalɪlɪn ‘centipede’

ɔcɔla ‘become tasteless’

aləkɔt ‘surpass, defeat’

apɛɾɪlakɔ ‘hang (intr., from the hands)’

Some words with geminated **l**:

pəlla ‘cat’

calle ‘ball’

kəllân ‘old woman’

kɪllôk	‘skin of sugarcane’
təllapôk	‘frog’
cəllakkér	‘roof skeleton’
cəɾellé	‘hip’
cəɾəllăn	‘calf (part of leg)’
cəɾəllôpa	‘sorghum stem’
ella	‘be absent’
əllô	‘run’

Word-initially there is geminated **l**, resulting from attachment of the prepositional proclitic **ń-** ‘with, by (away) from’ (realized as **l**) before an **l**-initial noun, or from the common-noun pronominal proclitic **l** followed by concord **l**. Geminated **l** resulting from attachment of **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ can be pronounced with some length. It contrasts with short **l** in word initial position:

l-lɪcók	‘with the goats’
lɪcók	‘goats’

Geminated **l** resulting from attachment of the common-noun pronominal proclitic **l** + concord **l** is pronounced short. Without antecedent, pronominal **l** is understood to refer to **lən** ‘words, matters’:

l-ɔpərôt (< **l-l-ɔpərôt**) [lɔβːrôt] ‘it is good’

In other cases, too, underlying gemination across a morpheme boundary does not lead to the realization of length. The first example has a common noun pronominal proclitic (for example referring to **lən** ‘words, matters’) and concord:

lɪpɪl lîn [lipi lîn] ‘my horns (musical instrument)’

A case in which length may (but needs not) be pronounced is demonstrative **əllí** ‘these’, in which the second **l** is the concord, while the first **l** is underlyingly **n** (the frame is **en-C-í**).

In two lexemes, **l** becomes **ɽ**, or can become **ɽ**, in intervocalic position across a morpheme boundary:

lɛccɪt ‘threshing floor’
ɪ-ɽɛccɪt ‘on the threshing floor’
tɔ-ɽɛccɪt ‘on the edge of the threshing floor’

lɔn ‘words, matters’
nɔ-lɔn ~ nɔ-ɽɔn ‘about matters’

In the word ‘put down’ there is free variation between **ɽ**, **l** and **n**:

ɽɛ́kket ~ ɔ́kket ~ nɛ́kket ‘put down’

In the verb ‘close’ **l** varies with **n**:

ɔlukkwa ~ ɔnukkwa ‘close’

l is robust when adjacent to another consonant. Examples were given under obstruent phonemes (2.1.1) and nasals (2.1.3). Also when adjacent to a rhotic, **l** does not change, rather a very short schwa may be inserted:

lar l-ɪn [lar^(ə)lɪn] ‘my storage net’

2.1.5. The rhotics phonemes **r** and **ɽ**

Table 10 and 11 present the distribution and realization of the rhotics. The phoneme **t** is included because it has rhotic allophones. As exemplified in section 2.1.1 the rhotic allophone of **t** before certain nasal morphemes across a word boundary is different from the intervocalic allophone of **t** (table 11).

Table 10 Rhotics: distribution and realization in isolated words

	/r/	/ɽ/	/t/
word-initial	–	–	[t]
word-final	[r] ~ [r:]	–	[tʰ]
between vowels	[ɾ], [r]	[ɽ]	[ɾ]

Table 11 Rhotics: realization across a morpheme or word boundary

	r	ɾ	t
before certain nasal morphemes	[r]	–	[r]

Geminated rhotics

Word-medially **r** can be geminated. It is then realized as a long trill.

There is no geminated retroflex flap. **ɾ** tends to geminate to **ll**, but gemination to **rr** is also attested. This can be seen in Pluractional verbs involving gemination, or partial reduplication and gemination (see also 13.1):

arɔ cik	‘sleep, spend night’	alle cik	‘habitually sleep, habitually spend night’
urɛ	‘graze (animals)’	urɛlle	‘habitually graze (animals)’
irɛ	‘say’	irille	‘habitually say’
ɔkəɾɔ	‘bite’	ɔkəɾelle	‘habitually bite’
ɔɾɔtta	‘be eaten’	ɔrrɔtta	‘be eaten (pl. subj. participants)’

Word-initial position

Rhotics do not occur in initial position in isolated words. A rhotic is always preceded by a vowel, if only a very short schwa:

ərét	[ʔrét]	‘cloths’
ərrɔ	[ʔr:ɔ]	‘push’
ərɔ	[ʔɾa]	‘refuse’

Word-initially there seems to be one exception to the restriction that **r** does not occur in initial position, since there is a word with an initial long trill:

rrəppe ‘illness caused by somebody who has twins’

However, this word appears to be underlyingly **t**-initial, since it takes **t**-concord:

rrəppe **t-ɔ-kəllán** **t-ɔkítak** [rɪəpɛ tɔwʰlɪán dɔwɪðakʰ]
 illness(k.o.) c-of-old_woman c-bad

the illness of the old woman is bad

For comparison, words with initial **ə** have the concord **w-** of vowel-initial nouns:

ərɛt w-ɔ-kakkâ ‘the cloths of Kakka’ [ʔɛɛɪ wɔkâkâ]

Word-final position

In word-final position only **r** is attested. In isolation the final rhotic can alternatively be pronounced long:

kaɟər [kaðər], [kaðər:]

Rhotics between vowels

Between vowels all rhotics occur. Some words contrasting **r** and **r:** intervocalically follow here:

kara	‘tick’	karră	‘lie’
kəmarâŋ	‘shield’	karran	‘wall’
curocúro	‘fruit (k.o.)’	arrô	‘Lumun people’
ciri	‘wrist’	cirrit	‘tick (sp.)’
ɔrâ	‘cultivate’	orra	‘habitually cultivate’
korê	‘left side’	korret	‘line’

However, there are differences between the speech of JS and NaA. For NaA there was a contrast between intervocalic [ɾ] and [r] in certain words in which JS did not perceive a contrast. In these words JS tended to pronounce [ɾ].

Table 12 Pronunciation of intervocalic rhotics

NaA		JS	
[ɾ]	carók ‘belly, stomach’	[ɾ]	carók ‘belly, stomach’
	ɟura ‘bull’		ɟura ‘bull’
	pira ‘tree’		pira ‘tree’

[r]	ɲorak ‘monkey (sp.)’	[r]	ɲorak ‘monkey (sp.)’
	kɪrék ‘hoe’		kɪrék ‘hoe’
	pɛrǔ ‘tree (sp.)’		pɛrǔ ‘tree (sp.)’

In the writing in this book, I do not represent the intervocalic rhotic contrast [r] - [r] of NaA. The contrast was generally difficult to distinguish for me (both often sounded like a short trill to me) but appears to be supported by the following Pluractionals which involve gemination. The first case has the phoneme **r**, the second case, apparently, the intervocalic allophone of **t** ([r]). For JS the **r**’s in **ɔrâ** ‘cultivate’ and in **ɔkéɾɔ** ‘trade’ are not different. Whether or not they are different for NaA I do not know.

ɔrâ ‘cultivate’ **ɔrrɛ** ‘habitually cultivate’
ɔkéɾɔ ‘trade’ **ɔkéttɛ** ‘trade (several objects)’

Notably, an intervocalic contrast between tap and trill as found in the speech of NaA is also reported for the closely related language Dagik (Vanderelst, personal communication). In the speech of NiA, like in the speech of JS, the contrast appears to be absent.

JS, however, does have a root-internal intervocalic trill which is not, or at least not clearly, a geminate. These cases have in common that they are preceded and/or followed by schwa. In slow speech, the schwas are more audible and the rhotic is no longer clearly a trill (as in the alternative phonetic transcription of the second and third example below):

kurəʈut [kurəʈutʰ] ‘bed plank (k.o.)’
ɔkkápəɾəttakɔ [ɔkáβɾtaʊɔ], [ɔkaβʳtaʊɔ] ‘return’
pəré [pɾé], [pʳɾé] ‘monitor lizard’

In these cases it seems that the moraicity of schwa can (partly) be transferred to **r**. This does not happen in **carák** ‘belly, stomach’, a word with schwa as its last vowel and no schwa preceding **r**: here the rhotic is only pronounced as a tap.

*Realization of **r** across a morpheme boundary*

It is recalled here that, in connected speech, an obstruent phoneme is realized as a voiced fricative/approximant after **r**, while **r** is realized as short trill and a transitory schwa is inserted:

kaɽər **k-ápe** [kað̣ʳ-əʷáβɛ]
 road c-wide
 the road is wide

Upon attachment of a (full) vowel to a word with final **r**, **r** is realized as a tap in the speech of JS²⁰:

kaɽər-î [kað̣ər-î] ‘the road?’

Flap

The retroflex flap **ɽ** has a very limited distribution. It occurs root-internally between vowels. Some words in order to substantiate phonemic status of **ɽ** are given below. **ɽ** is contrasted with **l**, **ɭ**, and **r**.

C-əɽɛk ‘some’
cələk ‘neck’
kəɽát ‘door’
kəréɽ ‘cloth’

ɽ is sometimes interchangeable with **r**:

ɲɪɽé ~ **ɲɪré** ‘young girls’ (but in SG only **ɪɽé** ‘young girl’)
ɔcáɽɔ ~ **ɔcárɔ** ‘peel’

²⁰ There may be differences between speakers in the realization of final **r** before an enclitic vowel. I have, however, no information about the pronunciation of NaA and NiA in such cases.

2.1.6. The phoneme **w**

The distribution of **w** is presented in the table below. **w** occurs predominantly in word-initial position. In word-final position it is not attested. Except in some loans, it does not occur root-medially. At a morpheme boundary, its behaviour depends on its morphological status. As a concord (see chapter 5.1), **w** is typically elided between vowels at a word-internal morpheme boundary, just like **w** as a common noun subject pronominal clitic (chapter 6.3). As a noun class prefix, however, some speakers (among whom JS) retain **w** between vowels at a word-internal morpheme boundary, while others delete it.

The table below gives the distribution of **w** and its occurrence at a morpheme boundary upon attachment of a vowel-final prefix or clitic.

Table 13 Distribution of **w** and occurrence after a vowel-final prefix or clitic

	<i>word-initial</i>	<i>word-internally between vowels</i>	<i>word-final</i>
w	+	<p>–: not in roots, except in some loans</p> <p>+ /–: as noun class prefix after a vowel at a morpheme boundary: not elided by some speakers, for others elision is possible</p> <p>–/(+): as a common noun subject pronominal clitic after a vowel at a morpheme boundary: commonly elided</p> <p>–/(+): as a concord after a vowel at a morpheme boundary: commonly elided</p>	–

Word-initial position

The following contrastive series substantiate the phonemic status of **w**. Some of the nouns with initial **w** have an alternative form without it (more examples are provided in chapter 4.3.1 on nouns). **w** as a noun class prefix can be pronounced as a consonantal glide, but also very vowel-like, as in the speech of NaA. Moreover, a word such as **wék** tends to be whistled as bimoraic (LH), though not necessarily so. Even in the speech of NaA, however, there remains a difference between a vowel-like realization of the class-prefix **w** (phonetically represented as a vowel in superscript) and a full vowel **u** (or **u**) as found in verbal stems or nominal roots. **w** as a concord (or a pronominal clitic) is pronounced as a consonantal glide.

uɛt	[uɛtʰ]	‘make accept’	
wét	[wétʰ] ~ [ʷétʰ]	‘bamboo circles of roof’	
wék	[wékʰ] ~ [ʷékʰ]	‘leg’	
uɛ	[uɛ]	‘undress’	
wê	[wê] ~ [ʷê]	‘calabash(es) or pot(s) for fermenting flour and water’	
pé	[pé]	‘gum tree’	
uá	[uá]	‘fruits of <i>pua</i> -tree’	
waɿ	[wāɿ] ~ [ʷāɿ]	‘cow’	
wanôk	[wanôkʰ] ~ [ʷanôkʰ]	‘moons’	(also anôk)
w-aîk	[waîkʰ]	‘C-is/are’	
p-aîk	[paîkʰ]	‘C-is/are’	
uɔ	[uɔ]	‘descend’	
w-ɔ	[wɔ]	‘C-of’	
wɔk	[wɔkʰ] ~ [ʷɔkʰ]	‘shoes’	
pók	[pókʰ]	‘foam’	

Root-internal intervocalic w

Root-internal **w** is only attested in a few loans from Arabic:

aláwa	‘sweets’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>halaawa</i>)
alawîr	‘bush (sp.)’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>al-ʔawiir</i> ‘the stupid’)
aṭṭáwa	‘medicine’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>ad-dawa</i>)

w after a vowel or nasal across a word-internal morpheme boundary

As a noun class prefix **w** is not elided in intervocalic position across a morpheme boundary by some speakers:

ɪ-waɪ̯ / ɪ-waɪ̯	‘in the cow’
ɪ-wét	‘between the bamboo circles of the roof’
cɪrɪ cɔ-wék	‘the ankle (lit.: the joint of the leg)’

Reportedly, however, other speakers would elide noun class prefix **w** between vowels, for example:

ɪ-aɪ̯ / ɪ-aɪ̯	‘in the cow’
-----------------------------	--------------

Some **w**-initial nouns have an alternative form without **w**. In such nouns, **w** is commonly absent when word-internally preceded by a vowel, but not necessarily:

ɪ-allîr / ɪ-allîr	‘in the gazelle’
ɪ-wallîr / ɪ-wallîr	‘in the gazelle’

The nouns **waɪ̯** ‘cow’, **wét** ‘bamboo circles of roof’ and **wék** ‘leg’ do not have an alternative form without **w**. Upon prefixation of **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ to these nouns, **w** fully assimilates, resulting in a nasal which can be pronounced with some length:

n-naɪ̯ / n-náɪ̯	‘with the cow’
n-nék	‘with the leg’

The pronoun clitic **w-** is commonly elided word-internally between vowels, unless in careful speech:

aʊn w-ɔká.t cɪk áɾəkɔ kəpá (< a-w-ɔ́ɾəkɔ)
 rats C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ.(PRO-)eat:DEPINCOMPL meat
 the rats were eating meat

The concord **w-** is commonly elided word-internally between vowels, though in carefully articulated speech it may be pronounced:

aʊn ɪ-ɛɔ̃.t (< ɪ-w-ɛɔ̃t)
 rats RES-(C-)go:COMPL
 the rats which have gone

*Noun class prefix **w** and concord **w** across word boundaries*

In the speech of JS, **w** as a noun class prefix remains unaffected by a preceding vowel across a word boundary (first example below) and causes a preceding **t** or **k** to elide in connected speech (second example below):

mpakáɬa wai ‘I will look at/after the cow’
mpɪmmát wék ‘I saw the leg’ [mbɪm:á wékʰ]

Reportedly, in the speech of others, **t** before **w** may be realized as [ɾ] while **w** is deleted:

mpɪmmát wék ‘I saw the leg’ [mbɪm:ár ékʰ]

As a concord, **w** tends to be elided in connected speech across a word boundary after a vowel, as well as after **n**, **ŋ**, **l** and **r**:

wai w-aát	[wai aátʰ]	‘the cow has come’
wan w-ɔkakkâ	[wan ɔɰakâ]	‘the hair of Kakka’
ʊnɔ̃ŋ w-ɛɾá	[ʊnɔ̃ŋ ɛɾá]	‘two walls’
ʊl w-ɛɾá	[ʊl ɛɾá]	‘two persons’
aɾər w-ɛɾá	[aɾər ɛɾá]	‘two roads’

In connected speech, the concord **w** causes a preceding **t** to be realized as its intervocalic allophone [ɾ] and a preceding **k** to be

realized as its intervocalic allophone [w]. After [r] **w** is elided, whereas after [u] it can be elided but not necessarily so:

it	w-a.ɪk	w-ímma	[ɪr aɪw wím:a], [ɪr aɪw ím:a]
wild_chickens	C-be:PR	C-see:INCOMPL	

the wild chickens are seeing it

In general, elision of the concord **w** across the word boundary is common, but does not seem to be obligatory for the speech to sound natural.

Geminated w

Geminated **w** is not attested in roots, but can result, across a morpheme boundary, from a combination of common-noun pronominal **w** and concord **w**. The sequence is realized short. There is no elision between vowels, apparently not even before an **u**- or **u**-initial stem.

ukul	w-ɔŋɔ.é	itti	w-úkkwə	[ʊkʊl ɔŋɔðe iti wók ^w ə]
child	C-like:COMPL	that	PRO.C-dance:INCOMPL	

the child wants to dance

Two different w's?

The different intervocalic behaviour of the noun class prefix **w-** on the one hand, and the common noun subject pronominal clitic **w-** and concord **w-** on the other hand, suggests that they do not have the same phonological status. **w** as a noun class prefix can perhaps be interpreted as the realization of a vowel **u** or **u** that was considered part of the nominal root in a preceding stage, and became reanalysed (again) as a consonantal prefix (compare chapter 4.3.1). **w** as a concord patterns with the other concords, which are all consonants. The behaviour of **w** as a noun class prefix would be largely in line with the behaviour of high back vowels, which do not elide under the influence of a preceding sound, while the behaviour of **w** as a concord would be more in line with the behaviour of consonants, several of which are susceptible to (partial) assimilation or elision

(and particularly **ŋ** between vowels). However, a noun with an initial vowel would not undergo a change from prefixation of **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’, but a noun with initial **w** does. As shown above, **w** assimilates to proclitic **ń-** ‘with, by, (away, from)’. How the differences can be explained would need further investigation.

2.1.7. The palatal glide [j]

The word for ‘my mother’ has two variants: with [ɰ] and with [j]. The latter realization is spelled as <ɪ>. In this case, [j] is a further lenition of the intervocalic allophone of **c** ([ɰ]).

ɰcáca	[ɰjája]	‘my mother’
ɰíáia	[ɰjája]	‘my mother’

[j] is in some cases the realization of a vowel. In a sequence of three vowels **aeɰ**, **ɛ** is realized as [j], though in careful speech it can be realized as **ɛ**. The verb in the first example below is related to the noun **ŋaɛ** ‘urine’. The second example is the (irregular) Incomplete TAM of the verb **ɛŋ** ‘go’.

ɰŋáɛŋ	[ɰŋájɰ]	‘urinate’
m-p-aɛŋ	[mbajɰ]	‘I will go’

2.1.8. Rare sounds

Sibilants and voiceless fricatives do not belong to the regular sound inventory of Lumun. NiA nevertheless pronounced [s] in the word ‘green’:

kəɾɛt	k-íccí	[kící], [kísí]
cloth	c-green	
the cloth is green		

Sibilants are also found in some words used for chasing away or calling animals. An example is **síla**, which is used for calling a dog. A few more examples with sibilants used for the calling or chasing away of specific animals can be found in chapter 17.3. There is

furthermore an animal call with [ɿ] (**ʃɛn**, for calling a pig), and a word with [h] (**hau**) for chasing away a dog. [θ] occurs in a sound symbolic word expressing the sudden appearance of something, **attôθ**.

2.1.9. Consonant clusters

As mentioned earlier, Lumun has nasal-stop clusters:

mp [mb], **nt** [nd], **nt** [nd], **ɲc** [ɲj], **ŋk** [ŋg] and **ŋkw** [ŋg^w]

Nasal-stop clusters occur word-initially and word-medially. A word-medial example:

kɪpɛ ‘nose’

In word-initial position they result from attachment of one of the nasal proclitics **ń**- ‘with, by, (away) from’, **ń**- ‘I’, **ŋ**- ‘you (SG)’, **ń**- ‘you (PL)’ or **ń**- ‘they’ to a word with an initial obstruent phoneme. These nasals can be moraic. Some speakers tend to pronounce a short **ɪ** [ɪ] before the cluster, others realize it rather like a prenasalized consonant, particularly when there is no tonal difference between the proclitic and the following mora, as in the first example below. Phonetic approximations accompany the examples below.

m-p-immâ.t [ˈmbɪm:âːt̚], [mbɪm:âːt̚], [ˈmbɪm:âːt̚]

1-C-see:COMPL

I saw (it)

m-pôl [mbôl], [ˈmbôl]

with-person

with the person

Seeming consonant clusters: separated by ə

In other cases, consonants sequences may sound like a cluster, but I analyse them as separated by schwa because they always involve a tone-bearing unit, as appears from tone whistling. Schwa is

sometimes audible, sometimes hardly so. The following types of near-clusters occur word-initially. Preceding a geminated rhotic, lateral or nasal, the moraicity of ə can be transferred to this rhotic, lateral or nasal.

obstruent and lateral:

pəlla	[pʰl:a], [pɭ:a]	‘cat’
kəllân	[kʰl:ân], [kɭ:ân]	‘old woman’

obstruent and rhotic:

pəɽɪn	[pʰɽɪn], [pɽɪn]	‘finally’
kəɽét	[kʰɽétʰ], [kɽétʰ]	‘cloth’

obstruent and nasal:

pənân	[pʰnân]	‘woman without children’
kəmɛl	[kʰmɛl]	‘hunting party’

nasal and rhotic:

ɲəɽĩ	[ɲʰɽĩ], [ɲɽĩ]	‘water’
-------------	---------------	---------

nasal and lateral:

mələmɛla	[mʰləmʰla]	‘a little’
ɲəlləkôr	[ɲʰl:əkôr], [ɲɭ:əkôr]	‘sorghum (k.o.)’

Tone movements also show that these consonants do not form consonant clusters, but are separated by ə. Upon prefixation of **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ a High tone is realized on the first mora of a word to which it is attached, unless the second mora has itself a High tone. Upon prefixation of **nɔ-** ‘on, at’ or **ɪ-** ‘in’ a High tone is realized on the second mora, unless there is a third mora which itself has a High tone. The example below shows that **pr** is not a consonant cluster, but contains a moraic element.

pəɾɛ	[p ^ə ɾɛ], [pɾɛ]	‘monitor lizard’
mpəɾɛ	[mp ^ə ɾɛ]	‘with the monitor lizard’
nəpəɾɛ	[nəp ^ə ɾɛ], [nəpɾɛ]	‘on the monitor lizard’

There are some further near consonant clusters that occur in word-medial position. In some of these cases, the moraicity of schwa may be transferred to the preceding **l** or rhotic, which is not necessarily geminated. In some cases schwa is more audible than in others. Some of these words with near consonant clusters are Arabic loans which include the article **al-**.

lateral and voiceless stop:

ɔlákket	[ɔl ^ə ketˀ]	‘put down’
aləppéra	[al ^ə péra], [alpéra]	‘flag’ (< Sud. Ar. <i>al-beerag</i>)

rhotic and voiceless stop:

ɔrrétta	[ɔrː ^ə ta], [ɔɾːta]	‘be eaten (plural subject)’
----------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------

lateral and voiced fricative or approximant:

aləpaccôṭ	[al ^ə βacôṭˀ], [alβacôṭˀ]	‘jackal’ (< Sud. Ar. <i>al-baʿshoob</i>)
aləkaɾɛ	[al ^ə ɰaɾɛ], [alɰaɾɛ]	‘old coin of ten piasters’

rhotic and voiced fricative or approximant:

ɔɾəkô	[ɔɾ ^ə ɰô]	‘eat’
--------------	----------------------	-------

lateral and nasal:

aləmóntu	[al ^ə móndu], [almóndu]	‘gun’ < Sud. Ar. <i>al-bundugiyya</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

rhotic and nasal:

məɾəmər	[məɾ ^ə mər], [mərmər]	‘eight’
cəɾəntuk	[cəɾ ^ə ndukˀ], [cəɾndukˀ]	‘small bell’

rhotic and lateral:

corəllópa [cor^hl:óβa], [corl:óβa] ‘sorghum stem’

2.2. Vowels

Lumun has eight vowel phonemes: **ɨ**, **ɪ**, **u**, **ʊ**, **ɛ**, **ɔ**, **a**, **ə**.²¹

2.2.1. Contrastive series

Minimal pairs and near minimal pairs provide evidence for the contrastive status of **ɨ**, **ɪ**, **ɛ**, **a**, **ɔ**, **ʊ** and **u**.

ɨ versus **ɪ**

kɨt	[kɨt ^h]	‘eyes’
kɪt	[kɪt ^h]	‘wild chicken’

ɨɪkɔ	[ɨɪuɔ]	‘tie’
ɪɪkɔ	[ɪɪuɔ]	‘enter’

ɔkɨɔ	[ɔuɪɔ]	‘drive together (of cattle)’
ɔkɪɔ	[ɔuɪɔ]	‘cut’

u versus **ʊ**

kua	[kua]	‘strand of hair’
kuâ	[kuâ]	‘digging tool’

ɲuɾû	[ɲuɾû]	‘asida’
ɲuɾʊ	[ɲuɾʊ]	‘dirt’

uno	[uno]	‘pour’
ʊno	[ʊno]	‘build’

²¹ Kutsch Lojenga also analysed eight vowel phonemes (unpublished notes of 2004).

ε versus ɪ, ʝ and ɔ

cêṇ	[cêṇ]	‘palm fruit’
cîn	[cîn]	‘egg’
cîṇ	[cîṇ]	‘thigh’
εḏ̣	[εḏ̣]	‘go’
ɪɔ	[ɪɔ]	‘die’
ʝɔ	[ʝɔ]	‘set fire to’
cεɾêṇ	[cεɾêṇ]	‘middle of body’
cɔɾḏṇ	[cɔɾḏṇ]	‘mountain, hill’

ɔ versus ʊ

kəpɔṇ	[kəpɔṇ]	‘farming field’
k-ɔpún	[kɔpún]	‘bitter’
ɔrâ	[ɔrâ]	‘cultivate’
ʊra	[ʊra]	‘escape’

a versus ε and ɔ

măṇ	[māṇ]	‘house’
mên	[mên]	‘palm fruits’
ʊra	[ʊra]	‘escape’
ʊrε	[ʊrε]	‘forget’
ṭār	[ṭār]	‘net for storage’
tɔr	[tɔr]	‘appetite’
ɔllâ	[ɔl:â]	‘wipe away’
ɔllô	[ɔl:ô]	‘run’

Contrastive series involving ə

The vowel ə is contrasted with i, ɪ, u, ʊ, a, ɛ, ɔ and zero in the examples below. ə is often realized very short and is often co-articulated with an adjacent vowel (more details are given in 2.2.3). ə contrasts with zero only word-initially, but not before a rhotic sound, because rhotics do not occur word-initially.

ərɾɔ	[ʔɾɔ]	‘shoot’
ɪrrɔ	[irɔ]	‘jump’
ɲəɾĩ	[ɲʔɾĩ]	‘water’
ɲilĩ	[ɲilĩ]	‘leadership’
cəmmɔ́ɔn	[cʔm:ɔ́ɔn]	‘caterpillar (sp.)’
cummûn	[cum:ûn]	‘owl’
cəpú	[cʔβú]	‘hole in the ground’
cupû	[cuβû]	‘fruit of pupû-tree’
capú	[caβú]	‘ground’
əpa	[ʔβa]	large bowl for preparing beer
paa	[pa:]	grapevine
pəré	[pʔré]	‘monitor lizard’
peré	[peré]	‘chest’
əɬén	[əðén]	‘wild felines (sp.)’
ɔɬén	[ɔðén]	‘baskets (k.o.)’
kəɾan	[kʔɾan]	‘name’
kaɾan	[kaɾan]	‘place’
ɬəɾák	[ɬʔɾák]	‘rope’
ɬəɾák	[ɬʔɾák]	‘war’

2.2.2. ATR (Advanced tongue root)

In minimal pairs the difference between **ɔ** and **u** and particularly between **ɪ** and **ɨ** is clearly distinguishable. In their production in minimal pairs, JS perceives a clear difference as well, describing the articulation of **ɨ** and **u** as involving a ‘kind of pushing from the throat’ and ‘tension in the head’, in general requiring some special effort as compared to the articulation of **ɪ** and **ɔ**. The same contrast exists between the allophonic variants of **ɛ** and **ɔ̃**: [ɛ] and [ɔ̃] on the one hand, and [e] and [o] on the other hand. This suggests a kind of tense/lax opposition, with **ɨ**, **u**, [e] and [o] having a tense articulation, and **ɪ**, **ɔ**, [ɛ] and [ɔ̃].

There are, furthermore, some vowel harmony effects that are typical for advanced tongue root (ATR) systems. As shown in this chapter, roots contain only vowels from one set, while at least in some affixes, **ɪ**, **ɔ**, **ɛ** and **ɔ̃** tend to be raised, at least a little, towards **ɨ**, **u**, [e] and [o] by **ɨ** or **u** in the root. This is precisely compatible with a so-called 8-vowel 2IU- ATR harmony system (Casali 2008). In Lumun the vowel **a** is not involved in vowel harmony, which is attested in some other 7 or 8-vowel 2IU languages as well. **ə** is a special case since it is realized in different ways in different environments, due to co-articulation.

The vowel harmony effects point towards advanced tongue root (+ATR) articulations of **ɨ** and **u**, and [e] and [o], though there seems to be no clear association between +ATR and ‘tense’, and –ATR and ‘lax’ (Ladefoged & Maddieson 1996); in some Nilotic languages there is even rather the opposite association (Tucker 1970). In western Nilotic languages there is, moreover, an association of +ATR with breathy voice (Hall & Creider 1998, p. 47-48), which is not found in Lumun.

How the high and mid vowels are precisely articulated in Lumun remains somewhat unclear, but it seems accurate to describe them in terms of ATR.

However, except in ATR-minimal pairs, the contrast seems to be on its way out. For several words, though articulated laxer rather than tensed, it was difficult to decide whether the vowels would best be qualified as –ATR or as +ATR. They seemed kind of “in-between”: +ATR as compared to clear –ATR examples, but –ATR as compared to clear +ATR examples. In addition, judgments could also be inconsistent, not only between speakers, but also by one and the same speaker. Cases which were not really clear but which I decided to represent as +ATR, because they seemed to be articulated more towards +ATR than towards –ATR include the following:

kucúl ‘back’, **mucúk** ‘ashes’, **cərúk** ‘opening’, **kunú** ‘ear’, **kunû** ‘scorpion’, C-**ullúk** ‘only, just’, C-**ərúk** ‘only, just’, **cuccû** ‘bead’, **waĭ** ‘cow’ and C-**ɔŋĭ** ‘black’.

2.2.3. Phonetic realizations of ə

The vowel ə (schwa) is characterized by its variety in surface appearances. Its length varies from ultra-short to normal vowel-length, its quality from a schwa-like central vowel to the colour of a vowel in an adjacent syllable, often the following.

length of ə

ə can often be realized as ultra-short, so that consonants surrounding it nearly form a consonant cluster (see 2.1.9). It was also shown that the moraicity of ə can be realized on an adjacent lateral, rhotic or nasal. Between a voiceless plosive and a rhotic the vowel tends to be less audible than between a voiced fricative/approximant and a rhotic. Compare:

kappəɾi	[kap'ɾi], [kapɾi],	‘spoon’	L.L.H
kapəɾal	[kaβ³ɾal]	‘apron’	L.L.L

In initial position it is short but clearly audible:

ərit	[ʔritʔ]	‘granaries’
əɾan	[ʔɾan]	‘names’

In a closed final syllable, ə often sounds like a full vowel, particularly when the final consonant is an obstruent:

carək	[carəkʰ]	‘belly, stomach’
cakət	[caʊətʰ]	‘toe’ (also: cakát [caʊátʰ])

quality of ə

In the absence of other vowels, ə is realized as a central mid vowel:

təpək	[təβəkʰ]	‘forked stick’
əttəŋ	[ʔtəŋ]	‘again’
təmmək	[tʔm:əkʰ]	‘bark of tree’

ə also has a central quality if it occurs in a root-final syllable. In such cases, root-internally preceding vowels are, if not ə as well, a or ɔ:

cakət	[caʊətʰ]	‘toe’
carək	[carəkʰ]	‘belly, stomach’
kaɾən	[kaɾən]	‘place’
kaɾər	[kaðər]	‘road’
cəɾər	[cəɾər]	‘young goat’

When preceded by a syllable containing u or ʊ, ə adopts the quality of this preceding vowel:

kuɾəɽɪ	[kuɾ ^ʊ ɽɪ]	‘leaf of <i>pupu</i> -tree’
kuɾəɽa	[kuɾ ^ʊ ɽa]	‘bamboo needle’
ʊɾəlle	[ʊɾ ^ʊ lɛ]	‘habitually graze (animals)’

If not preceded by u or ʊ, ə adapts to the vowel in the stem-internal following syllable when this is high vowel (i, ɪ, u, ʊ):

p-ərɪk	[p ⁱ ɪkʰ]	‘big, important’
ɲarəkkuk	[ɲar ^ʊ kukʰ]	‘baby’

In case of a following mid-vowel (ɛ, ɔ), ə can take on the quality of this vowel, but also be realized as a central vowel:

ərɔ	[ʔr:ɔ], [ʔr:ɔ]	‘shoot’
ərét	[ʔrétʰ], [ʔrétʰ]	‘cloths’

With **a** in the stem-internal following syllable, **ə** is realized as a central vowel:

əlla	[ʔl:a]	‘cats’
-------------	--------	--------

When the following syllable contains a vowel sequence, **ə** tends to adapt to the second vowel of the sequence, though not necessarily always:

cəmməʊn	[cʰm:ʊn]	‘caterpillar (sp.)’
ɔpʰəllɛ	[ɔpʰl:ɛ], [ɔpʰl:ɛ]	‘frighten’
ɔkʰɛɾɔt	[ɔkʰɾɔtʰ], [ɔkʰɾɔtʰ]	‘squeeze’

2.2.4. Distribution of **ə**

The distribution of **ə** is different from the distribution of the other vowels. It is absent from monomoraic words, does not occur word-finally and is not part of root-internal vowel sequences. No sequences **kwə** are attested.

Another observation is that many longer words (four or more morae) contain a schwa. It seems that, in longer words, vowel reduction is at play. Vowel reduction can be witnessed in derivations with a combination of the Reciprocal suffix **-arɔ** and the Benefactive suffix **(ɪ)nɛ**. The initial vowel of the Benefactive suffix, realized as **ɪ** when attached to a verb with final or last vowel **ɔ**, is now reduced to **ə**:

ɔkkɔt ‘do, make’ + **arɔ** + **nɛ** > **ɔkkárənɛt** ‘do for e.o., make for e.o.’

A case which suggests reduction is the verb **ɔkʰɛɾa** ‘look at’ vs. its Imperative **kʰa** ‘look!’.

In (indirect) loans from Arabic which are borrowed together with the Arabic article *al*, schwa is an inserted vowel solving a consonant

cluster that is not allowed. This means that schwa is inserted between **l** and any following consonant, except when this is another **l**. For example:

aləkkóppa ‘basket’ (< Sud. Arabic *al-guffa*)

aləmóntu ‘gun’ (< Sud. Arabic *al-bundugiyya*)

2.2.5. Co-occurrence restrictions of vowels in roots

The same vowels can co-occur in a root, but there are some restrictions to the co-occurrence of different vowels. Root-internally **ĩ** and **u** can co-occur, and **ɪ** and **ʊ** (irrespective of which vowel comes first), but not **ĩ** and **ɪ**, **ĩ** and **ʊ**, **u** and **ʊ**, or **u** and **ɪ** (irrespective of which vowel comes first). The vowels **a** and **ə** can co-occur with all other vowels (**ĩ**, **ɪ**, **u**, **ʊ**, **ɛ** and **ɔ**), but in the case of **ə** this is not vice versa: the high vowels and **ɛ** do not precede **ə** root-internally. [e] and [o] do not occur in roots unless **ĩ** or **u** is present in the root as well.

Combinations of vowels in roots with two morae are presented in the table below. The first vowels are set out on the vertical axis, the second on the horizontal axis. (-) means that a combination was not attested, but that this does not seem structural, occurrences would in principle be possible.

Table 14 Vowel combinations in lexical roots

	ĩ	ɪ	u	ʊ	ɔ	ɛ	a	ə
ĩ	+	-	(-)	-	+	+	+	-
ɪ	-	+	-	+	+	+	+	-
u	+	-	+	-	+	+	+	-
ʊ	-	+	-	+	+	+	+	-
ɔ	+	+	(-)	+	+	+	+	+
ɛ	(-)	+	+	+	+	+	+	-
a	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
ə	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+

2.2.6. Harmony effects across morpheme boundaries

ɛ, ɔ and ɪ in affixes tend to (somewhat) harmonize with a +ATR lexical root, being realized as, or towards, [e], [o] and [i] respectively. No cases are attested of a +ATR lexical root and ʊ in an affix. **a** in an affix is not affected by a +ATR lexical root. As far as **ə** occurs in affixes, it is typically realized very short, such as in the allomorph **-ənɛ** of the Benefactive suffix **-ɪnɛ** (see 14.1). As far as there would be some colouring of **ə** this will be determined by an adjacent vowel, irrespective of its ATR-quality.

Some examples of verb stems follow here. They consist of a root and final vowel. The final vowel is –ATR by default, but harmonizes with a +ATR value of the verbal root:

ɔrékɔ	[ɔréɥɔ]	‘work’
ɪɪkɔ	[ɪɪɥɔ]	‘enter’
ɪɪɪkɔ	[ɪɪɪɥɔ]	‘tie’
ɪɛ	[ɪɛ]	‘say’
ɪɛ	[ɪɛ]	‘thresh’

Harmonization of affix vowels has in particular been observed in derivational suffixes, for example in Causative **-ɪɛ**:

ɪɪk-ɪɛ	[ɪɪɪɥɛ]	‘make enter’
ɪɪɪk-ɪɛ	[ɪɪɪɪɥɛ]	‘make tie’
ʊn-ɪɛ	[ʊnɪɛ]	‘make build’
un-ɪɛ	[unɪɛ]	‘make pour’

The Passive morpheme **-ak** does not block harmonization of the final vowel, nor of the vowels of the Benefactive suffix **-(ɪ)nɛ**. The derivations below are based respectively on **ʊnɔ** ‘build’ and **unɔ** ‘pour’:

ʊn-akɔ	[ʊnaɥɔ]	‘be built’
ʊn-ak-ɪnɛ	[ʊnaɥɪnɛ]	‘be built for’
un-akɔ	[unaɥɔ]	‘be poured’
un-ak-ɪnɛ	[unaɥɪnɛ]	‘be poured for’

Verbal inflectional suffixes tend to have variable realization. There can be (some) harmonization to +ATR root vowels, but not necessarily so. [ɪ], [i] and qualities in-between were found as realizations of the Imperative suffix -ɪ attached to a +ATR verbal root. The Completive suffix -ɛ of t-final verbs tended to be realized as [ɛ] irrespective of the ATR quality of the verbal root.

The adnominal prefix ɔ- (the persona prefix) and the plural suffix -ŋɔn tend to harmonize (somewhat) upon attachment to a +ATR element.

Clitics such as the prepositional proclitics, connexive (C-ɔ) and the restrictor (ɪ-) seem to undergo little or no change under influence of a +ATR lexical root. The same goes for the enclitic question marker (-ɪ) and the enclitic discourse markers -tɪ and -mɛ.

Two clitics have themselves +ATR vowels: the 1PL exclusive subject pronominal pro-clitic (ɪn-) and the 1PL exclusive object pronominal enclitic (-ɪn). Both do not influence the vowel(s) of the verbal roots or stems to which they are attached.

One verb has +ATR mid-vowels though neither ɪ nor u is present. This verb has a labialized velar (kw). The +ATR realization of ɔ in ‘fetch’ can be explained from the labialization being the realization of an underlying (+ATR) vowel u.

ɔkkwɔ̃	[ɔkwɔ̃]	‘hit’
ɔkkwɔ̃	[okwɔ̃]	‘fetch’

The picture of the Lumun vowel system is that of a +ATR root-dominant 8-vowel harmony system with ATR contrast only in the high vowels - but a system in which the ATR-factor is on the retreat. Though the contrast remains clear in minimal pairs, it was difficult in several other cases to decide upon the ATR-qualities of the vowels. Harmonizing effects were found, but could be weak in some cases, or also absent.

Like Lumun, the Talodi languages Tocho, Acheron and Dagik have 8-vowel systems with (ATR-)contrast in the high vowels (ɪ vs. ɨ and ʊ vs. ʉ), as did the probably extinct language Torona (Tocho: Kuku Alaki & Norton (2013); Acheron: Norton (2013); Dagik: Vanderelst (2013); Torona: Norton & Kuku Alaki (2015). Norton and Kuku Alaki remark that in Torona, like in Lumun, there is tendency for loss of the +ATR value in the high vowels (p. 103).

2.2.7. Vowel sequences

Long vowels: sequences of identical vowels

Root-internal long vowels are rare. The following nouns have a long vowel, which may have arisen from loss of a consonant (ŋ?) in between:

ŋaák/ɲaák	‘oil’
ɬaák/laák	‘sesame paste’
ŋɛɛ/ɲɛɛ	‘poison’
tuôn/nuôn	‘shovel (k.o.)’
paa/kaa	‘grape (plant sp.)’
caa/maa	‘fruit of <i>paa</i> ’

There is one case in a longer noun:

ɬuulí/luulí	‘hyena’
--------------------	---------

One adjective (possibly) has a long vowel:

c-ɛɛná	‘such, like this/that’
---------------	------------------------

In the case of **ɨɨ** ‘yes’ (answer to a polar question), length can be explained from avoidance of words that consist of just a single vowel.²²

²² Probably for the same reason, **ka** ‘body’ does not have a plural ***a** ‘bodies’ in the plural ∅ class.

Non-derived verbs with a long vowel are **ɛɛ** ‘stab, blow’ and **ɔɔ** ‘cry’. **ɔɔ** ‘cry’ can be analysed as consisting of a root (the first vowel) and a final vowel (the second) which is not part of the root, just like other verbs ending in **ɔ** (see 12.4.1). Some Pluractionals have a long initial vowel as compared to their non-Pluractional counterparts, for example:

ɔɔ ‘descend’ **ɔɔɔ** ‘habitually descend’

Vowel length generally results from two vowels coming together across a morpheme boundary. These vowels may have been the same in the first place, or one has assimilated to the other. In the following example a long vowel results from attachment of the Benefactive morpheme **-inɛ** which replaces the final vowel **ɔ**:

ɪ-ɔ ‘die’ **ɪ-inɛ** [ɪ:nɛ] ‘die for’

Long **a** is further attested in some inflected forms of the verb **ɔɔ** ‘come’. The Completive of **ɔɔ** with proclitic third person singular pronoun + concord forms a minimal pair with the noun ‘stranger’:

kkwáát ‘s/he has come’ **kwát** ‘stranger’

A morpheme that gives rise to a long vowel in a word is the irrealis marker **á**, which is attached between the concord and the —always vowel-initial— verb stem:

ɔl **w-á-aná.t** **ŋəpak**
people C-IRR-bring:COMPL beer

the people would have brought beer (but now they did not)

In combination with the Completive of ‘come’ an extra-long vowel results:

kkw-á-aát ‘s/he should have come’

Attachment of vowel-final proclitics may result in an (underlyingly) long vowel, as may attachment of vowel-initial enclitics. In the first

example, there is elision of noun-initial **ŋ** upon prefixation of **ɪ** ‘in’. I write double vowels in the cases below, though length is not necessarily realized.

ɪ-ɪkê (< **ɪ** + **ŋɪkê**)

in-flood

in the flood

pul **ɪ-p-ɔparí-ɪ** (< **ɪpɔparí** + **-ɪ**)

person

RES-C-female-Q

(is / was it) a woman?

Though there are actually a few cases of true minimal pairs in roots (**kaa** ‘grapes’ versus **ka** ‘body, bodies’; **caa/maa** ‘fruit(s) of *paa*’ versus **cá/má** ‘head(s)'), I do not consider long vowels as monophonemic units in Lumun. In the great majority of cases, long vowels can be analysed as a vowel sequence caused by adjacent morphemes, and an analysis of the long vowel as a sequence of two identical phonemes is therefore preferred.

Length of a sequence of identical vowels is often hardly or not audible unless in slow or carefully articulated speech. The vowels of some prefixes and suffixes tend to remain more audible than the vowel of other prefixes and suffixes, for which reason I write some sequences with a long vowel, and others with a short vowel.

Diphthongs: sequences of different vowels

Root-internal diphthongs are not frequent. The table below presents the cases attested in nouns, including borrowed nouns. The first vowels are set out on the vertical axis, the second on the horizontal axis. The attestations vary from 1 (**ai**, **ui**, **ei**, **ae**, **eo**, **ao**), to 10 (**ai**) and 16 (**ia**). The separate vowel qualities are largely retained.

Table 15 Diphthongs in nominal roots

	i	ɪ	u	ʊ	ɛ/[e]	ɔ/[o]	ə	a
i		–	–	–	ie	–	–	–
ɪ	–		–	–	ɪe	ɪɔ	–	ia

u	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	ua
o	–	oi	–	–	ue	–	–	oa
ε/[e]	–	ei	–	–	–	eo	–	–
ɔ/[o]	–	–	–	ou	–	–	–	–
ə	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
a	ai	ai	–	au	ae	ao	–	–

Examples:

ijε	kijé ‘cows’	iε	tukonkíεη ‘bee (sp., small)’
io	miǒ ‘spell’	ia	comian ‘bone’
ua	tua ‘hair (of animal)’	oi	ηoi ‘milk’
ue	tué ‘river’	oa	cuân ‘rat (sp.)’
ei	ɔpeí ‘child (of X)’	eo	teǒη ‘beard’
ou	təlloun ‘caterpillar (sp.)’	ai	waǐ ‘cow’
ai	kaiŋi ‘nail, claw, louse’	au	paun ‘rat’
ae	ŋaé ‘urine’	ao	paó ‘tree (sp.)’

Just as I analyse long vowels as sequences of identical vowels, I analyse diphthongs as sequences of different vowels.

2.2.8. Vowel sequences across morpheme boundaries

Across morpheme boundaries and in connected speech there can be coalescence between adjacent vowels. There are general coalescence tendencies, but if and how coalescence takes place depends on the morphemes involved. Coalesced vowels often result in a short vowel, but generally also allow for a pronunciation with some length. This also goes for adjacent same vowels.

In some cases there is little to no shortening. The vowel resulting from attachment of prepositional proclitic **i-** to an **i** (or **ij**) -initial noun typically retains length, as do vowels resulting from attachment of the question markers **-i**, **-a** and **-ε** (chapter 20.2) and the discourse marker **-a** (chapter 17.2.1). In those cases, I write a double vowel word-internally. In other cases, I write a single vowel word-internally, though realization with some length is generally possible.

Sequences **ɔ-ɛ**, **ɔ-a** and **a-ɔ** typically coalesce across a word-internal morpheme boundary as well as across a word boundary in connected speech, while sequences involving a high vowel (**i**, **u**, **ɪ**, **ʊ**) or schwa (**ə**) often (but not always) result in a diphthong. Some examples of coalescence as well of absence of coalescence will be given here, involving sequences **ɔ-a** and **a-ɔ**. Details are further found in the sections discussing the morphemes involved.

ɔ-a

Attachment of the connexive marker **C-ɔ** to an **a**-initial noun results in a vowel **a**. The vowel will generally be realized short, but can in careful speech be pronounced with some length.

karró **k-árrô** (< **k-ɔ** + **arrô**)

mother_tongue C-of.Lumun_people

the mother tongue of the Lumun people

The same happens with **nɔ** ‘on, at’ followed by an **a**-initial noun. The resulting vowel **a** tends to be pronounced with some length (see also 16.3.2).

ɔt̪t̪e **na-apê** (< **nɔ** + **apê**)

leave:IMP on-fish(PL)

leave the fish(PL) behind!

Also the persona prefix **ɔ-** before an **a**-initial noun results in (short) **a**:

ámra ‘Red’ (< **ɔ-** + **ámra**)

In connected speech verb-final **ɔ** followed by an **a**-initial noun is realized as **a**:

k-kw-á.ŋwó

3-C-kill.PLUR:INCOMPL

ápê

fish(PL)

[kwáŋ^w-áβê]

s/he catches fish (lit. s/he kills fish)

A word-internal sequence **ɔa** is, however, attested in the Past and Dependent Perfective of the verb **ɔɔ** ‘cry’:

... **akwɔ-at** ‘... and s/he cried’

Coalescence is absent upon attachment of the question particle **-a** and the discourse particle **-a**. An example of the latter follows here:

m-p-éí **p-á.éí-a**
 1-C-be_NEARSP C-go:INCOMPL-ATT

I am going!

In the word for the Lumun homeland coalescence of **ɔ** + **a** has resulted not in **a** but in **ɔ**:

tɔrrô (< **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’ + **arrô** ‘Lumun people’)

a-ɔ

a-ɔ becomes **a** upon attachment of the proclitic conjunctive particle **á** to a noun with initial **ɔ**:

... **a-laló** **ɔmentet** **ól** **ittí ...** (**á** + **ɔlaló**)
 CONJ-Laló tell.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL people that
 ... and Laló was always saying to people ...

When an **a**-final verb is followed by an **ɔ**-initial noun, irrespective of whether this **ɔ** is the persona prefix or belongs to the nominal root, **ɔ** results in connected speech:

m-p-a.ík **p-a.kétta** **ɔ-kokkú** **ɲ.ɲɲ** [pawét-ɔwɔkú]
 1-C-be:PR C-be_shaved:INCOMPL PERS-Kokku with:ABS

I am being shaved by Kokku

ɲ-kw-ímma **ɔcáɲ** [ɲgʷím:-ɔjáɲ]
 2-C-see:INCOMPL lizards

you will see the lizards

The sequence **aw** is attested in the verb **aw** ‘come’, which consist of a root **a** and final vowel **ɔ**.

Some further details of vowel coalescence across morpheme boundaries are found in the chapters and sections describing specific morphemes.

2.2.9. Nasalization

In some words the vowels are or can be nasalized. In the verbs **ɛɛ** ‘stab, blow’, **ɛɔ** ‘go’ and **ɔŋáɛɔ** ‘urinate’ the vowels can be pronounced nasalized, in certain TAMs of the verb ‘go’ this is even generally the case. When a word is pronounced nasalized, the nasalization spreads over the immediately preceding vowel(s). No or little nasalization seems to take place if the vowels are not in word-final position, as, for example in **ɛétta** ‘be stabbed’ and **mpeɛt** ‘I am gone’.

A noun which is nasalized is **miɔ̃** ‘spell’. **á̃** **ã** [ʔá̃ʔã] ‘no’ is also nasalized.

3. Tone

3.1. General facts

This first paragraph establishes some general facts of the Lumun tonal system: its tonemes, the tone-bearing unit, and the distribution of tones.

3.1.1. Four tonemes

Lumun can be analysed as having four tonemes: high (H), low (L), falling (HL) and rising (LH). These tones are contrastive in prepausal positions, cf. the following words. Low tone is unmarked. Notably, the words with a rising tone are not actually pronounced with a contour, but —as a whole— at a pitch that remains level (see 3.2.2). When in non-prepausal position it becomes clear that a high tone is underlyingly involved here (see 3.3.1).

L vs. H

kərək	‘farming field’	kərək	‘bellies’
ŋərə	‘work’	ŋərə́	‘honey’
kəpa	‘bowl (k.o.)’	kəpá	‘meat’
paʊn	‘rat’	maún	‘fingers’

L vs. HL

aʊn	‘rats’	aún	‘bees’
cɪpɪt	‘edge’	cɪpít	‘ant’
ʦollɛɾək	‘lightening’	ʦollɛɾák	‘lizard (sp.)’
ɔllɔ	‘step aside’	ɔlló	‘run’

L vs. LH

kʊɾɪ	‘family member’	kʊɾĩ	‘branch (of tree)’
ɛɛ	‘speak’	ɛɛ́	‘(just) like’
ʦʊɾan	‘theft’	ʦʊɾál	‘animal (sp., rodent?)’

H vs. HL

kunú	‘ear’	kunû	‘scorpion’
parí	‘wife’	parĩ	‘tree (sp.)’
aɾaŋkál	‘bed’	aɾaŋkâl	‘name-sharers’

H vs. LH

kít	‘eyes’	kít	‘wild chicken’
tók	‘waterplace’	tók	‘dog’
tírě	‘art of being a young woman’	tírě	‘saying (verbal noun)’
nán	‘on (it), at (it)’	măn	‘room, house’

HL vs. LH

tērēt	‘corn cob’	tērēt	‘talking about (verbal noun)’
cōrrā	‘needle of hedgehog’	karrā	‘lie’
pōcāŋ	‘lizard (sp.)’	cōrōŋ	‘mountain’
itūn	‘in the onion(s)’	itōn	‘together’

3.1.2. Tones on vowel sequences: counting morae

On diphthongs, it is possible to have more complex tonal contours, in which a low tone on the first part of the diphthong is followed by a falling tone, or by a rising tone, e.g.,

cūân	‘rat (sp.)’
cūâl	‘sack’
kuâ	‘digging tool’
kaôn	‘bee’
εō	‘go’
tūân	‘(at) home’
tēōŋ	‘beard’
tukră	‘head pad’
mīō	‘spell, disease’
waĭ	‘cow’
ittuōŋ / ittriāŋ	‘very (modifying C-ōrě ‘red’ or cōria ‘become red’)’

The words with a rising tone (always in final position) are not pronounced with a contour but at a slightly raised pitch that remains level.

There are also some examples of complex tonal contours on long vowels:

tuôn	‘cultivating tool’
εê	‘stab, blow’
ɔôk	‘s/he’
naâk	‘on him/her’

C-a-ẵr ‘muddy’ (< C-ɔ- ‘of’ + **ɲẵr** ‘mud’)

Words with a low-falling tone on a diphthong or long vowel can be opposed to words with a high-low tone on a diphthong or long vowel (the derivation between parentheses is explained further below):

kuâ	‘digging tool’
ɲkúa	‘with the strand of hair’ (< ɲ-kûa < ń- ‘with’ + kua ‘strand of hair’)

Words with a low-rising tone on a diphthong or long vowel can be opposed to words with low-high on a diphthong or long vowel:

C-a-ẵr	‘muddy’
ɲaák	‘oil’
waĩ	‘cow’
paí	‘tamarind tree’

The oppositions show that it is useful to take the mora, not the syllable as the unit on which a toneme —low, high, rising or falling— is realized. If the syllable were taken as the counting unit, **ɲkúa** could be regarded as having a falling tone realized on a syllable, but for words like **kuâ** a more complex LHL contour would have to be posited. Likewise could the tones on **ɲaák** and **paí** be regarded as realizations of the rising tone on a syllable, but then the tones on **C-a-ẵr** and **waĩ** (realized at a slightly raised level pitch) would have to be posited as single more complex tones. The mora as the counting unit offers the possibility of regarding the diphthong of **ɲkúa** as underlyingly falling + low (realized as high + low) and **kuâ** as low + falling. With the mora as counting unit **ɲaák** and **paí** are not seen as realizations of a rising tone on a long vowel or

diphthong, but as low + high, whereas **c-aǎr** and **waĩ** both have a low + rising tone.

The mora as the unit on which a toneme is realized raises the expectation that on a diphthong or long vowel also high-falling and high-rising sequences might be possible (contours on single morae are always in pre-pausal position). High-falling sequences indeed occur, but only due to tone bridge (tone-bridge will be discussed in 3.5, the tonal derivations between parentheses show the application of the Tone Shift Rule and the Contour Simplification Rule, see 3.3.1 and 3.3.2):

ca có-cuân ‘the head of the rat (sp.)’

(< ca có-cuân < ca cō-cuân < **cá** ‘head’ + **c-ɔ-** ‘of’ + **cuân** ‘rat (sp.)’)

High-rising sequences on a diphthong or long vowel are not attested.

Further arguments for the mora as counting unit

The tonal phenomena upon attachment of the prepositional proclitics **ɪ-** ‘in’, **nɔ-** ‘on, at’, **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’ and **ʈɔ-** ‘at’ provide a further argument for the mora as counting unit (or the unit of attachment for the toneme). Upon prefixation of **ɪ-** ‘in’, **nɔ-** ‘on, at’, **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’ and **ʈɔ-** ‘(down) at’ to a low-toned noun, the second mora of the noun becomes falling. If, however, the noun has only one mora, this mora becomes falling. If the noun has more than two morae, the falling tone on the second mora is simplified and realized as high (Contour Simplification Rule, see 3.3.2). Examples:

ɪ-kwâ (< **ɪ-** + **kwa** ‘chaff’) ‘in the chaff’

nɔ-pəllâ (< **nɔ-** + **pəlla** ‘cat’) ‘on the cat’

ɪ-naróŋkwaŋ (< **ɪ-naróŋkwaŋ** < **ɪ-** + **naróŋkwaŋ** ‘grasshoppers (sp.)’) ‘between the grasshoppers (sp.)’

Diphthongs count as two morae:

ɪ-ɬɪāk (< ɪ- + **ɬɪāk** ‘suffering’) ‘in suffering’
ɪ-aôn (< ɪ- + **aôn** ‘rats’) ‘among the rats’

Also the next example shows that the mora rather than the syllable is the carrier of tone. A word-final high tone becomes low in non-prepausal position and can reappear on the first mora of a following word (see the rules of Tone Shift and Contour Simplification, 3.3.1 and 3.3.2). The first noun in the example below has high-toned diphthong. When something follows, it is only the high tone on the last mora that becomes low (and reappears on the first mora of the following word):

kapíet k-ɔ̌-pul ‘the jaw of the person’
 (< kapíet k-ɔ̌-pul < **kapíét** ‘jaw’ + **c-ɔ̌** ‘of’ + **pul** ‘person’)

Mora-counting is, however, not without problems. Long vowels behave differently from diphthongs upon attachment of one of the prepositions **ɪ-** ‘in’, **nɔ̌-** ‘on, at’, **tɔ̌-** ‘up on, up at’ and **ɬɔ̌-** ‘(down) at’. They pattern with short vowels, and not with diphthongs, e.g.,

ɪ-cáa ‘in the grape’ (instead of ***ɪ-caâ**)
 (< ɪ-câa < ɪ- ‘in’ + **caa** ‘grape’)

ɪ-éé ‘in the poison’ (instead of ***ɪ-éê**)
 (< ɪ-éé < ɪ- ‘in’ + **ɳéé** ‘poison’)

And in (at least) one case of a diphthong, there are alternative tonal realizations:

ɪ-maît / ɪ-máit (< ɪ- ‘in’ + **mart** ‘beans’) ‘in the beans’

In some items with a low + falling or a low + rising tone on a long vowel or diphthong it is clear that this long vowel or diphthong comes from loss of a velar nasal between vowels belonging to adjacent morphemes. Examples are **ɔ̌-ɬk** ‘s/he’ (< **ɔ̌-** + **ɳɔ̌k**), **na-âk** ‘on him/her’ and **ɪ-aâk** ‘in him/her’, which apart from, respectively, the prepositional proclitic **nɔ̌-** ‘on, at’ and **ɪ-** ‘in’, contain the 3rd person singular formative **ɳɔ̌k** (see also the chapter on pronouns).

c-a-ẵr ‘muddy’, from **c-ɔ̃** ‘of’ + **ɲẵr** ‘mud’ is another example of loss of a velar nasal. **c-a-ẵr**, however, is not pronounced with a (complex) contour, but at a slightly raised pitch which remains level, and can also be pronounced with a short vowel (**c-ẵr**). In the case of **c-aĩk** ‘be’ the diphthong with low + falling tone comes from historical loss of an oral palatal between vowels (< **c-á** ‘be’ + the vague reference particle **cĩk**). **c-aĩk** ‘be’ and **cĩk** are discussed in chapters 12.7.1 and 15.2.1, respectively.

Long vowels in (real) roots are rare. And also in such cases, the long vowel may well stem from historical loss of a consonant (a velar nasal?) in between. In (real) roots the long vowel may function as a single tone bearing unit.

In view of the opposition on diphthongs and long vowels between H.L and L.HL patterns on the one hand, and L.H and L.LH patterns on the other hand, and in view of the occurrence of cases like **ɪ-ɬĩāk** ‘in suffering’ with the second low mora of a diphthong becoming falling, and **kapiet k-ɔ̃-pul** ‘the jaw of the person, with the high tone on the second mora of diphthong becoming low (and reappearing on the next word), the mora as counting unit offers an easier way to describe the tonal phenomena in the language than the syllable.

3.1.3. Tone on nasals

Proclitics that consist of only a nasal can carry a tone. These proclitics are the subject pronominal clitics **ń-** ‘I’, **ɲ-** ‘you (SG)’, **ń-** ‘you (PL)’ and **ɦ-** ‘they’, and the prepositional clitic **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’. In the examples below, the nasal proclitics are also marked for tone in case of a low tone (in the other examples in this book the nasal proclitics are only marked for tone when they have a high tone). Notably, the clitics with high tone of their own are realized low in context, due to Tone Shift (see 3.3.1); the clitic with falling tone is realized high in context due to Contour Simplification (see 3.3.2).

ṁ-p-a.îk

1-C-be:PR

I am

ṁ-t-ímma

2A-C-see:INCOMPL

you (PL) see (it)

ń-t-ímma

3A-C-see:INCOMPL

they see (it)

k-kw-á.at

3-C-come:COMPL

ṁ-pól

with-person

p-ɛn

C-DEM

s/he has come with that person

ṁ-p-a.kúɛ

1-C-start:INCOMPL

man

house

ǰi.cík

from_VREF

I will start building the house from the beginning

In the chapter on segmental phonology it was shown that a tone on the very short vowel ə may rather be realized on an adjacent (geminated) sonorant or on the nasal part of nasal and stop cluster.

3.1.4. Distribution in other than prepausal position

In other than prepausal position, the distribution of the tones is different. Contour tones are in principle not allowed on a non-prepausal short vowel (a single mora). When, due to phonological and morphological concatenations, a falling tone is expected to appear on a non-prepausal single mora, it is simplified; for more details see 3.3. Rising tones on a (underlyingly) single mora occur only in prepausal position.

On long vowels and diphthongs, contour tones are found in all positions. In other than word-final position these contours generally arise from a morpho-phonological process. Under the mora-approach, I do not analyse such tones as falling or rising tones on a long vowel or diphthong, but as resulting from the combination of two tonemes.

E.g., in the first example below the falling surface tone on the long vowel can be regarded as a sequence of a falling (realized as high) and a low tone underlyingly. The rising surface tone on the diphthong in the second example can be analysed as consisting of a low and a falling (realized as high) tone underlyingly:

ɔ̃t̥úlí ‘Hyena (as a nickname)’ (< ɔ̃t̥úlí < ɔ̃- + t̥úlí ‘hyena’)
ɔ̃né ‘go to’ (< ɔ̃ṇ ‘go’ + -né)

Long vowels that arise across morpheme boundaries are often shortened phonetically; under such circumstances a sequence of high and low can give rise to a falling tone on a phonetically short vowel. Thus, for example, when the proclitic subjunctive particle **â-** is attached to a following **a**-initial element, the result is a long vowel with a contour tone, which, consequently, tends to be pronounced shortened:

ámmá k-kw-áá.t á-ant-ɛṇ / ânt-ɛṇ (< â- ant-ɛṇ)

if 3-C-come:COMPL SUBJ-(2-)can:DEPINCOMPL-go:DEPINCOMPL

when she arrives, you can go

In fast speech, falling contours arising from morphological processes, can be simplified to a high tone on a short vowel. In the example above **ânt-ɛṇ** ‘you can go’ can also become **ánt-ɛṇ**.

Notably, also before other consonants than nasals (and the lateral) a falling tone on a short vowel can arise from morpheme attachment. **âcɔ̃** in the example below results from **â-** + **ɲ-** + **ɔ̃cɔ̃**.

â-cɔ̃ **muccú m-ɔ̃t̥ókkwakɔ̃.t cakərúk**

SUBJ-(2-)string:DEPINCOMPL beads C-be_coloured:COMPL also

you (must) also string beads of different colours (App. III, 16)

Similarly, when the proclitic conjunctive particle **ǎ-** becomes adjacent to another **a** (or to a vowel that assimilates to it) a long vowel with a rising contour tone may result. The long vowel tends to be pronounced shortened, in which case the rising contour may be simplified to high:

a-átərəpê / átərəpê ... ‘and the rabbit ...’
 (< a-átərəpê < **ǎ-** + **ɲatərəpê**)

A rising contour is further found on the verbal negation marker **ǎnn-**. Here, however, no rising toneme is involved. The element **ǎnn-** is a shortened form of **akónn-**, which itself is a shortened form of **akórennɔ**. Apparently, **ǎnn** is underlyingly a diphthong (**aónn**) with a low + high tone, but shortened phonetically. Notably, the rising tone on the shortened negation marker **ǎnn** cannot be simplified to just a high tone.






ukul **w-ǎnn-ólló**
 child C-NEG-run;DEPCOMPL
 the child did not run

3.2. The phonetic realization of the tones

This section gives an idea of the phonetic realization of the tones. The transcriptions between square parentheses are based on whistling by the consultants.

3.2.1. Prepausal low tone

A prepausal mora with low tone is pronounced with a slight downglide. Some words follow here which have this final downglide in prepausal position.

kat	‘grasshopper(s)’	[
pəlla	‘cat’	[
akkarɔ	‘call’	[
cumian	‘bone’	[
apəɽɪlakɔ	‘hang (with hands)’	[

When a high tone precedes a single prepausal low tone within the word, downglide is difficult to hear (first example below). It is more clearly audible in case of more prepausal low-toned morae preceded by a H-tone within the word (second example below).

mpímma pǎlla ‘I will see the cat’ [↘ _ _ _] or [↗ _ _ _]
mpímma ʔǎmǎccǎ ‘I will see the old man’ [↘ _ _ _ _] or [↗ _ _ _ _]

3.2.2. Rising tone on short (prepausal) vowels

A rising tone on a (underlyingly) single prepausal mora is never pronounced as rising. Unlike the falling tone in prepausal position, the rising contour cannot as a whole be realized on one mora: in prepausal position the high part of the contour remains unrealized (NB: in context it becomes clear that this tone involves a high part, see 3.3.1).

A couple of phonetic cues make the contrast between the rising and the low tone in prepausal position. In the first place, unlike in prepausal low tones, there is no downglide. In the second place, isolated nouns with a rising tone are, as a whole, realized at a slightly raised pitch as compared to all-low nouns. The differences are clearly audible in the following pairs (though the initial pitch difference, tends to be somewhat smaller than in the transcriptions below):

kat	‘grashopper’	[↗]
kǎt	‘wild chicken’	[↘]
pɛɽɔŋ	‘palm tree’	[↗ _]
cɔɽɔŋ	‘mountain’	[↘ _]
ʔǎmǎccǎ	‘old man’	[↗ _ _]
ʔǎmekǎ	‘scarification’	[↘ _ _]

The difference between rising and low tones is consistent when words are given in isolation. However, when such nouns occur in sentences (but still before a pause), it is often possible to pronounce the rising tone in the same way as a low tone, i.e. with low pitch and slight downglide. In isolation the words **ʔǎk** ‘dog’ and **kɛɽɪttǎŋ** ‘knife’ have a rising tone.

mpɛtɛt kəllán t̥ók ‘I will give the old woman the dog’ [— — — —]
mpɛtɛt kəllán tók ‘I will give the old woman the dog’ [— — — —]

kəɾɛt kaík nɔ-p̥ǔŋ ‘the cloth is on the rack’ [— — — —]
kəɾɛt kaík nɔ-puŋ ‘the cloth is on the rack’ [— — — —]

Also in the following cases, there are two possibilities for the realization of the rising tone in prepausal position: as a rising tone (there is a smaller pitch interval with the preceding high tone and no downglide) and as a low tone (there is a bigger pitch interval with the preceding high tone and some downglide). The noun **t̥ɔɾǎ** ‘cultivating’ has a rising tone in isolation, the proclitic connexive particle **kɔ** ‘of’ is realized high due to preceding **kɪɾɛk** ‘hoe’:

kɪɾɛk k-ɔ-t̥ɔɾǎ ‘a hoe for cultivating’ [— — — —]
kɪɾɛk k-ɔ-tɔɾa ‘a hoe for cultivating’ [— — — —]

The two realizations are equivalent in the sense that they raise no expectation of anything following, and that no specific emotion is conveyed. Nevertheless, it is well possible that in certain pragmatic contexts the one tends to be used rather than the other. Physical distance is also a factor that may be of influence. According to one of the consultants (JS), when speaking to somebody who is at a distance, the variant with the rising tone is more likely to be used than the variant with low-tone realization.

The exact conditions of the neutralization of low and rising tones in prepausal position are not clear, and would need further investigation.

When a word with a rising tone follows one or more all low words (or words realized as such), these low tones and the following word with rising tone are pronounced at the same pitch level. This pitch level is (often) not the level of an isolated low word (such as **pul** ‘person’ in the first example below) or of the initial mora of a word that is low + high in isolation (such as **aɾík** ‘come!’ in the second example), but the slightly raised pitch level of isolated words with a rising tone:

pul ɪ-p-ɪpukɪppök ‘a very white person’ [— — — —]
aɾɪk nəppän ‘come inside!’ [— — —]

cɪməntəri **c-aat** **n-ɬe-ttök** [— — — — —]
 hedgehog C-come:COMPL with-at-fenced_place_for_livestock
 the hedgehog came out of the animal shelter

3.2.3. High and falling tones

A falling tone is initiated at a somewhat lower pitch than a high tone (but at a higher pitch than an item with a rising tone). This can, for example, be observed in the following pairs:

cɪt	‘eye’	[[˥]]
cæn	‘palm fruit’	[[˥]]
kunú	‘ear’	[— [˥]]
kunû	‘scorpion’	[— [˥]]

3.2.4. Downdrift and downstep

Within a clause there can be some downdrift: a high tone following a low tone can be realized at a slightly lower pitch than a preceding high tone, and a low tone following a high tone at a slightly lower pitch than a preceding low tone. Word-internally this is possible as well. Downdrift effects tend to be light and do not continue over long stretches of speech.

In the following sentence there is some downdrift. The high tone on ‘four’ is realized at a slightly lower pitch than the preceding stretch of high tones, while ‘cows’ is realized a little lower than the initial low tone, and the low tones on ‘four’ a little lower than those on ‘cows’:

kəllán **éŋ-k-í** **k-ónó** **kɿɛ** **k-ɔcɔɾɪn** [- - - - - - -]
 old_woman DEM-C-NEARSP C-have cows C-four
 this old woman has four cows

There is no downstep in Lumun. A downstep effect might be expected in cases of a word-final falling contour tone which is directly followed by an item with an initial high or falling tone. In such cases, the contour tone becomes high (see the Contour Simplification Rule, 3.3.2), but it does not influence the pitch-level of the following high tone, which is on the same level. Some examples:

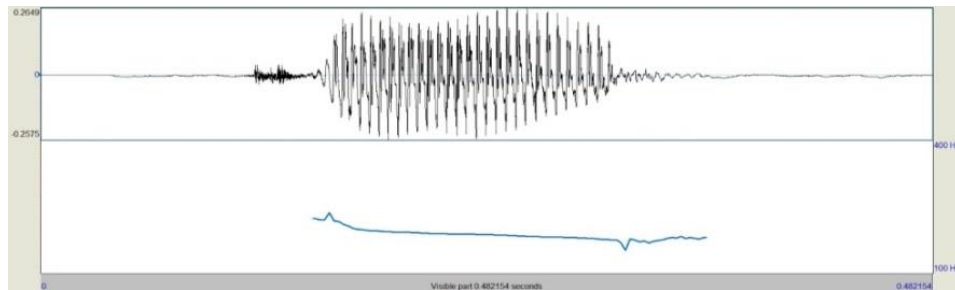
kəllán **k-ére** (< **kəllán kéré**) [- - -]
 old_woman C-speak
 the old woman will speak

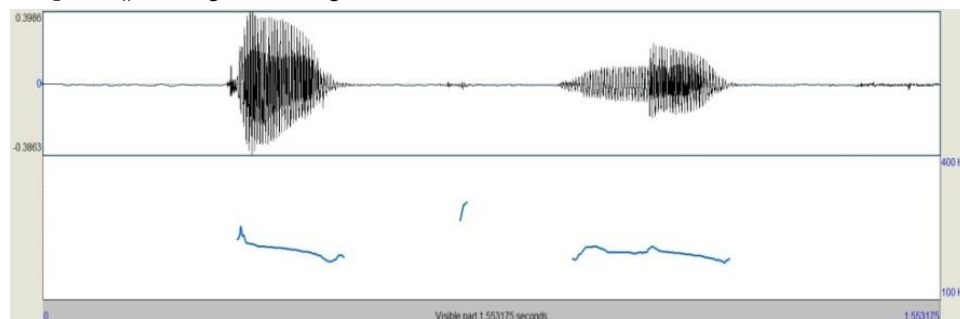
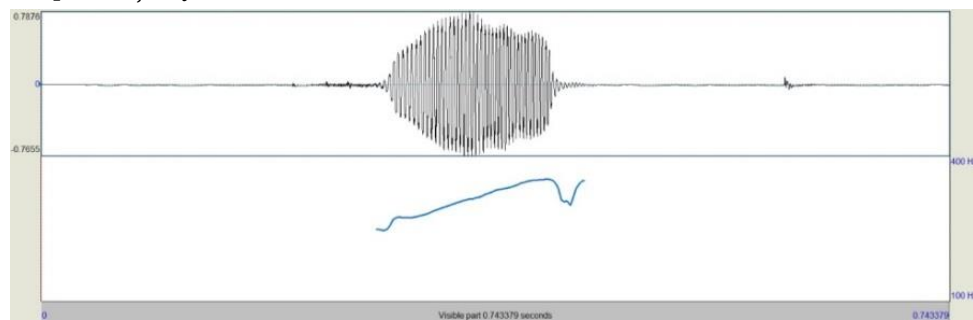
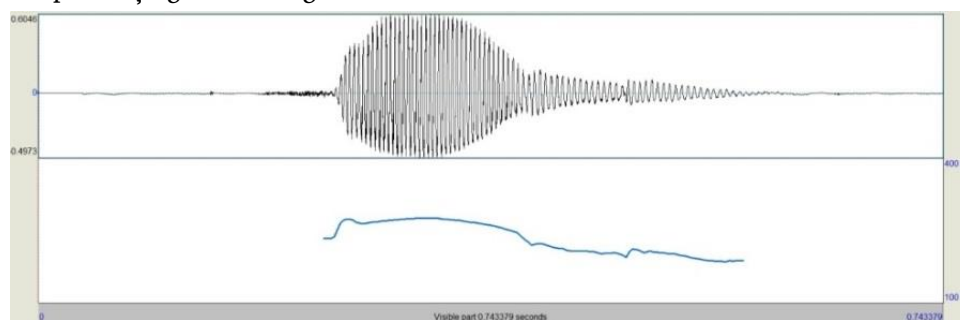
ɔ-kukku-ôn (< **ɔ-** + **kukku** + **-ôn**) [- - ˩]
 PERS-Kukku-PL
 Kukku and his group

3.2.5. Graphs of phonetic realisations

A few graphs showing phonetic realizations of the four tone patterns on monosyllabic nouns are presented here, as well as a clause. The nouns and the clause are produced by Nafisa Abdullai (at the time ca. 19 years old). In each picture, the second representation is set out on a vertical scale ranging from 100 to 400 Hz.

Graph 1. **kat** ‘grasshopper(s)’

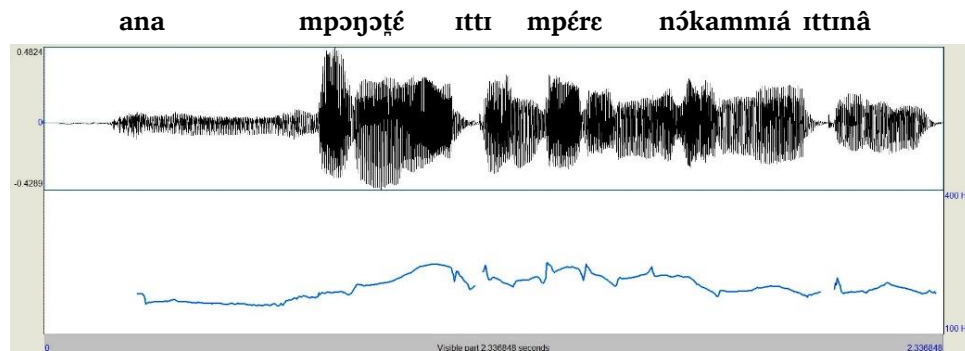


Graph 2. **tŭk** ‘dog’, **lŭk** ‘dogs’Graph 3. **cŭt** ‘eye’Graph 4. **cŭl** ‘grain of sorghum’

Graph 5. ‘and I like to talk about the singing whip like this’

ana mpɔŋɔtɛ itti mpére nɔ-kammιά ittinâ
 and I like that I talk on-singing_whip like_this

and I like to talk about the singing whip like this (App. II, 30)



3.3. Tone rules

There are a number of tone rules that apply within the sentence (or in a smaller domain before a pause).

3.3.1. Tone shift

Word-final high and rising tones in non-prepausal position undergo specific changes.

Tone Shift Rule: When a word with a (underlying) final high tone is followed by another word, the final high tone becomes low. The high tone reappears on the first mora of the following word if this mora is low (this can be called tone shift), leading to a HL contour. The same behaviour is found with the high part of a rising tone (as mentioned earlier, rising tones (on a single mora) only occur word-finally).

m-p-ɔɾəkɔ.t kât (**< mpɔɾəkɔt kat**)
 1-C-eat:COMPL grasshopper(s)

I have eaten grasshoppers

ṭ-ṭəṛəkə **kât** (< ṭəṛəkəḵ kat)
 NOM-eat grasshopper(s)
 eating grasshoppers

Certain grammatical words as well as words containing certain grammatical morphemes have a floating high tone. These words have a final low tone in isolation but bring a high tone to the first mora of a following word if this mora is low, leading to a HL contour. These words thus behave in accordance with the Tone Shift Rule. In non-prepausal position their final mora is realized low (as it would be, in these cases, in prepausal position as well), while their floating high tone appears on the first mora of the following word if this mora is underlyingly low, leading to a HL contour.

The following example with the Incompletive verb **mpakéṭa** ‘I will look’ illustrates the effect of application of the Tone Shift Rule. This verb, which is based on the verb **ṭkṭṭa** ‘look at/after’ (see 12.4 for the segmental and tonal shape of verbs), has a final low tone in isolation, but when followed by a low-toned word, it imposes a high tone on the first mora of that word, leading to a HL contour:

m-p-a.kéṭa **pôl** (< mpakéṭa H pol)
 1-C-look:INCOMPL person
 I will look at/after the person

An example is also the conjunction word **ana** ‘and’. In isolation it is pronounced as all-low, but a high tone appears on the first mora of a following low noun, leading to a HL contour:

papəkira **ana** **kât** (**papəkira ana H kat**)
 leopard and grasshopper
 the leopard and the grasshopper

3.3.2. Simplification of a falling (HL) contour

On a single mora, a falling contour only occurs in prepausal position (this can be different in case of shortened long vowels). The following tone rule applies:

Contour Simplification Rule: A falling contour (on a single mora) is realized as a high tone, except in prepausal position.

Contour Simplification applies after Tone Shift.

The Contour Simplification Rule predicts that there are no falling tones on short vowels in any but prepausal position. In isolation, the word **kəllân** ‘old woman’ has a final falling tone, **kwək** ‘shoe’ has a low tone. In context, the contour tone of **kəllân** becomes high:

m-p-ɛtɛt	kəllân	kwək
1-C-give:INCOMPL	old woman	shoe

I will give the old woman the shoe

The non-prepausal falling tone is realized as high, irrespective of the tones of the following item:

mpɛtɛt kəllân tɪ	‘I will give the old woman the thorn’
mpɛtɛt kəllân tɔk	‘I will give the old woman the dog’
mpɛtɛt kəllân cɛn	‘I will give the old woman the palm fruit’

Tone Shift leads to a HL contour on the first mora of the following word if this mora is low. If this mora is not in prepausal position, Contour Simplification applies. Some further examples follow here. The first two below involve the connexive proclitic C-ɔ- ‘of’ (see 7.1).

ca	c-ɔ-pəlla	(< ca cɔ-pul < cá cɔ- pəlla)
head	C-of-cat	

the head of the cat

kəɽɪttan	k-ɔ-pul	(< kəɽɪttan kɔ-pul < kəɽɪttǎn kɔ- pul)
knife	C-of-person	

the knife of the person

m-p-a.kəta	túttəruk	(< mpakəta H túttəruk)
1-C-look:INCOMPL	pig	

I will look at/after the pig

papəkira ana pəlla (papəkira ana H pəlla)
 leopard and cat
 the leopard and the cat

In the next example, the first word has two high tones, the first of which stays in place, while the last mora becomes low. The high tone of this last mora reappears on the initial mora of the next word:

aləpɪrɪt̩ w-ɔ-pul (< aləpɪrɪt̩ wɔ̌-pul < aləpɪrɪt̩ wɔ- pul)
 prayer_mat C-of-person
 the prayer mat of the person

Tone Shift applies first, then Contour Simplification. This is illustrated by the following example, which shows that a high tone derived from a falling contour does not shift further (irrespective of whether the falling tone belongs to the lexical item (first example below, with **pəɾemê** ‘Acheron person’) or is generated by the preceding item (second example below, with **pul** ‘person’.) In the first example only Contour Simplification applies, in the second first Tone Shift, then Contour Simplification).

m-p-étet pəɾemê kummok (< mpétet pəɾemê kummok)
 1-C-give:COMPL Acheron_person pot
 I have given the pot to the Acheron person

m-p-a.nékɪnə púl kummok (< mpanékɪnə H pul kummok)
 1-C-take_for:INCOMPL person pot
 I will take the pot to the person

3.3.3. More details on Tone Shift: Tone Reappearance sub-Rules

While the lowering of the non-prepausal final high or rising tone is general, its (re)appearance on the following word is only found in a subset of contexts. The high tone will reappear on the initial mora of a following word that is (underlyingly) all-low, irrespective of its length. Examples of this were given above. However, in certain cases in which the following word contains a (underlying) high or falling

tone, the high tone will not reappear. It will also not reappear if the following word contains a rising tone.

The circumstances will be specified in four Tone Reappearance sub-Rules.

sub-Rule 1: When the following mora is already high, there is no change to this word. In the examples below, **pəɽá** has a final high tone, **ɬök** ‘dog’ and **pucöŋ** ‘barren woman’ have a final rising tone in isolation. The nouns **wék** ‘leg’ and **kálam** ‘pen’ have an initial high tone in isolation.

mpɛɬet pəɽa wék ‘I will give the Tira person the leg’
mpɛɬet ɬök wék ‘I will give the dog the leg’

mpɛɬet pəɽa kálam ‘I will give the Tira person the pen’
mpɛɬet pucöŋ kálam ‘I will give the barren woman the pen’

sub-Rule 2: When the following word has an initial mora with a low tone, immediately followed by a vowel with a high tone or falling tone, it remains the same. The nouns in the examples have, in isolation, the following tones:

pəɽá ‘Tira person’, **pucöŋ** ‘barren woman’, **ɨmít** ‘goat’ and **apê** ‘fish’

mpɛɬet pəɽa ɨmít ‘I will give the Tira person the goat’
mpɛɬet pucöŋ ɨmít ‘I will give the barren woman the goat’

mpɛɬet pəɽa apê ‘I will give the Tira person the fish’
mpɛɬet pucöŋ apê ‘I will give the barren woman the fish’

sub-Rule 3: When the following word has a final or last vowel with a rising tone, this word remains the same, irrespective of the number of low-toned vowels in the word. The nouns in the examples have, in isolation, the following tones:

pəɽá ‘Tira person’, **pucöŋ** ‘barren woman’, **ɬök** ‘dog’, **kəɽittǎŋ** ‘knife’,
ɬennəkkettǎ ‘testing, test’

mpɛtɛt pəɾa t͡ʃök 'I will give the Tira person the dog'
mpɛtɛt pucɔŋ t͡ʃök 'I will give the barren woman the dog'

mpɛtɛt pəɾa kəɾjttǎŋ 'I will give the Tira person the knife'
mpɛtɛt pucɔŋ kəɾjttǎŋ 'I will give the barren woman the knife'

mpɛtɛt pəɾa t͡ɛnnəkkeɬtǎ 'I will give the Tira person the test'
mpɛtɛt pucɔŋ t͡ɛnnəkkeɬtǎ 'I will give the barren woman the test'

sub-Rule 4: When the following word starts in a number of vowels with a low tone and has a high tone or falling tone later on in the word, it depends on the word whether or not the first low becomes high (i.e. becomes a falling tone, after which the contour is simplified to high). In some words, the first mora becomes high when there is only one low mora separating it from the high or falling tone of the word itself, in other words, there must be two low morae in between.

All examples below are given with **pəɾá** 'Tira person', but could also be given with a noun with a rising tone such as **pucɔŋ** 'barren woman'. The second nouns are, in isolation, **t͡ʃoolí** 'hyena', **ŋɔmpəɾóŋ** 'calf (in sucking stage)' and **t͡ʃakəɾúk** 'chicken', all of which have 3 morae (a final high tone preceded by two low morae). Note that in the example with **t͡ʃakəɾúk** 'chicken', the first mora does not become high.

mpɛtɛt pəɾa t͡ʃoolí 'I will give the Tira person the hyena'
mpɛtɛt pəɾa ŋɔmpəɾóŋ 'I will give the Tira person the calf'
mpɛtɛt pəɾa t͡ʃakəɾúk 'I will give the Tira person the chicken'

Examples with **pɔɾɔpê** 'bird', **ŋatəɾəpê** 'rabbit' and **aləmóntu** 'gun' follow here. In the example with **pɔɾɔpê** 'bird', the first mora does not become high.

mpɛtɛt pəɾa pɔɾɔpê 'I will give the Tira person the bird'
mpɛtɛt pəɾa ŋatəɾəpê 'I will give the Tira person the rabbit'
mpɛtɛt pəɾa aləmóntu 'I will give the Tira person the gun'

There are a few exceptions to these rules. In the first place, counter to sub-Rule 2, **cittín** ‘bird (sp.)’ changes its initial tone into a falling contour.

mpɛtɛt pəɾa cɪttín ‘I will give the Tira person the *cittin*-bird’

As this also runs counter to Contour Simplification, one may assume that the underlying form of **cittín** is **cittín** with a long vowel. However, in this lexeme, the vowel is always pronounced short.

Another case running counter to sub-Rule 2 (but not to Contour Simplification) is **paɾák** ‘fly’, the initial low tone of which becomes high:

mpɛtɛt pəɾa páɾák ‘I will give the Tira person the fly’

The examples above involve nouns with a final high or rising tone. Examples with words with a floating high tone give precisely the same results, for example:

m-p-a.kəɬa **ɲómpəɾúŋ**
1-C-look:INCOMPL calf

I will look at/after the calf

mpakəɬa ɬúulí ‘I will look at/after the hyena’
mpakəɬa ɬakəɾúk ‘I will look at/after the chicken’
mpakəɬa pɔɾɔpê ‘I will look at/after the bird’

This includes the exceptions to the rules, such as:

mpakəɬa cɪttín ‘I will look at/after the *cittin*-bird’

When the sentences are further extended, final high, rising and falling tones undergo the same phonological development. Compare:

m-p-ɛtɛt **pəɾa** **wék**
1-C-give:INCOMPL Tira person leg

I will give the Tira person the leg

m-p-ɛtɛt	pəɾa	wɛk	w-ɔ-ɬakəɾók
1-C-give:INCOMPL	Tira_person	leg	C-of-chicken

I will give the Tira person the leg of the chicken

Repeated application of Tone Shift goes from left to right: first the final high tone of **pəɾá** is lowered and will not reappear on **wɛk** because that word has an (initial) high tone itself. Then the high tone of **wɛk** is lowered and realized as a falling tone on the connexive element **w-ɔ-**, after which the contour is simplified to a high tone.

3.4. Deviations from the tone rules

There are more tone changes that do not follow from the tone rules established above. Those that seem to be specific to certain morphological and morphosyntactic constellations will be treated in the respective chapters on morphology. Morphemes/words with specific tonal effects include the non-personal proclitic subject pronouns and the 3rd person singular and plural (3 and 3A) proclitic subject pronouns (chapter 6.2), four out of five prepositional proclitics (chapter 16.1), the 1st and 2nd person singular possessor (chapter 7.3.1) pronouns and the vague reference particle **ɕik** (chapter 15-2). Conjunctions display tonal properties that do not fully comply with the tone rules (chapter 18).

In general, in situations of vowel coalescence and shortening of an underlyingly long vowel, (non-prepausal) low + high, or high + low tone combinations can be simplified to a high tone; some examples of this with the conjunctive particle **á-** and the subjunctive particle **â-** are presented in chapter 18.2. Examples of this simplification can also be found in 7.1.1 on the connexive. The falling tone of the irrealis morpheme (**â**), on the other hand, cannot be simplified to a high tone in case of coalescence and shortening (chapter 12.8).

The deviating tonal behaviour of certain verb forms with a final falling contour is described here.

3.4.1. Deviation from Contour Simplification: lowering of a final falling tone

Against the expectation raised by Contour Simplification, namely that the high part of a falling contour always remains in place, there are falling tones in word-final position that are, in certain contexts, realized as low, not as high. One such example are the tense-aspect-mood forms (TAMs) of verbs of tone class IIB (i.e. of verbs with a final falling contour) which have a final falling contour, notably the Dependent Incompletive (the stem form itself) and the Incompletive (see chapter 12 for the tone patterns of verbal stems and verbal TAMs).

Examples follow here with the stems of the tone class IIB-verbs **ɔkkɔ̌t** ‘do, make’ and **ɔcɔ̌** ‘string’. When these verbs are followed by an all-low noun such as **lɔn** ‘words, matters’, their falling tone becomes high, as expected according to Contour Simplification:

ɔkkɔ̌t lɔn ‘to do things’
ɔcɔ̌ lɔn ‘to string things’

When the underlying falling tone is followed by an element with an initial high or falling tone or by an element with a high or falling tone on its second mora, the falling contour becomes low:

ɔkkɔ̌t lú	‘to make steam’	lú	‘steam’
ɔcɔ̌ mɛ̃n	‘to string palm fruits’	mɛ̃n	‘palm fruits’
ɔkkɔ̌t kə̃rét	‘to make a cloth’	kə̃rét	‘cloth’
ɔkkɔ̌t cuccô	‘to make a necklace’	cuccô	‘necklace’
ɔcɔ̌ mərə̃tɪ	‘to string goatskin bracelets’	mərə̃tɪ	‘goatskin bracelets’

If the following element has a high or falling tone on its third mora, the falling tone can become high or low. It becomes high here:

ɔkkɔ̌t kappə̃rí	‘to make a spoon’	kappə̃rí	‘spoon’
ɔkkɔ̌t ɲattəkôl	‘to make a gourd’	ɲattəkôl	‘gourd (k.o.)’

In the following example, **nẽ** becomes low:

n-ẽ

2A-go:DEPINCOMPL

n-ɔ-kakkâ

2A-PERS-Kakka

go with Kakka! (to plural addressee)

In case of a following word with a final rising contour, there are two options for the realization of the verb: the falling tone may become high or low. Recall that the utterances without a high tone realized on the verb, are entirely pronounced at a slightly raised pitch, i.e., the whole stretch is pronounced according to the phonetic realization of the final rising tone.

ɔkkɔ́t ʦík / ɔkkɔt ʦík

‘to make a fire’

ʦík ‘fire’**ɔkkɔ́t tukrǎ / ɔkkɔt tukrǎ**

‘to make a bracelet’

tukrǎ ‘bracelet’

These phrases allow for a third tonal realization: after a final high tone on the verb, the noun can be realized as all-low (see 3.2.2).

In case of a following underlyingly low + high word which is itself followed by another word so that the final high is realized as low, the verbal contour may be realized as high but also as low. The contour thus shows the same behaviour here as when it is followed by a word with a rising tone. Examples of this were the earlier given sentences with the verb **mpɛ́tɛ́t** ‘I will give’ followed by **pə́rǎ** ‘Tira person’ and an object noun. Though only one tonal realization was presented in the earlier given examples (the one deviating from Contour Simplification), there are actually two possibilities:

m-p-ɛ́tɛ́t / m-p-ɛ́tɛ́t

1-C-give:INCOMPL

pə́rǎ

Tira_person

wé́k

leg

I will give the Tira person the leg

The lowering of a falling tone that is found with verb forms with a final falling contour of tone class IIB does not occur in comparable tonal constellations involving two adjacent nouns. An earlier given example for Contour Simplification is repeated here. The contour of **mpɛ́tɛ́t** ‘I will give’ is lowered before the contour or **kə́llǎn** ‘old woman’ (which is realized as a high tone), but the contour of **kə́llǎn** is not lowered before the contour of **cɛ́n** ‘palm fruit’.

mpɛtɛt kəllán cɛn ‘I will give the old woman the palm fruit’

Lowering of a falling contour does not occur in verbs from other tone classes. The examples below have the Completive form **mpɪmmát** of the verb **ɪmma** ‘see’ of tone class I (see chapter 12.4.2 for the tone classes). The verb is followed by the nouns **lú** ‘steam’, **mɛn** ‘palm fruits’ and **kərét** ‘cloth’. The contour is simplified, leaving its high part in place, in accordance with tone Contour Simplification:

mpɪmmát lú	‘I saw the steam’
mpɪmmát mɛn	‘I saw the palm fruits’
mpɪmmát kərét	‘I saw the cloth’

Lowering of a final falling contour is, however, found in constructions with the Present of the verb **ɔkâ** ‘be’, C-**áɪk** (containing the formative **ɪk** (< **cɪk**)). Compare the following examples with the noun **kwɔk** ‘shoe’. In the fourth case, the prepositional proclitic **ɪ-** ‘in’ causes the contour to lower (see also 16.1).

kwɔk kaɪk	‘the shoe is present; there is a shoe’
kwɔk kaɪk karəɬa	‘where is the shoe?’
kwɔk kaɪk nɔ-wék	‘the shoe is on the foot’
kwɔk kaɪk ɪ-wék	‘the shoe is on the foot’

There are some other cases in which, against the expectation raised by Contour Simplification, word-final falling tones are realized as low in non-prepausal position, instead of as high. These include the 3rd person singular and plural (3 and 3A) personal subject pronouns if preceded by the clitic subjunctive particle **â-**: **â-** + **ɔk** > **áɔk** and **â-** + **ɔkɪn** > **áɪn**.

3.5. Tone bridge

In certain contexts, a stretch of low tones becomes high between an underlyingly falling or a non-final high tone and a later falling or non-final high tone, cf.

kəllán **k-á.ɾəkô** (< kəllán kaɾəkô < **kəllân** kaɾəkô)
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL
 the old woman will eat it

cullúkkúr **c-á.ɾəkô** (< **cullúkkur** caɾəkô)
 bird(sp.) C-eat:INCOMPL
 the bird (sp.) will eat it

kəllán **k-á.kəʈa** (< kəllán kakəʈa < **kəllân** kakəʈa)
 old_woman C-look:INCOMPL
 the old woman will look

cullúkkúr **c-á.kəʈa** (< **cullúkkur** cakəʈa)
 bird(sp.) C-look:INCOMPL
 the bird (sp.) will look

Tone bridge occurs less commonly before a final high tone. In the following case there is tone bridge between the underlyingly falling tone on C-ɔ- ‘of’ (received from **caɾĩ** ‘day’ and simplified to a high tone) and **kít** ‘eye’. The derivation between parentheses is given under the gloss line.

caɾĩ **c-ɔ-rɔ-kít**
 day C-of-up_on-eyes
 (< caɾĩ cɔ- tɔ- kít < caɾĩ cô- tɔ- kít < **caɾĩ** cɔ- tɔ- kít)
 the first day

A rising tone cannot function as the end of tone bridge:

kəpa **k-ɔ-nɔ-ɽĩk / k-ɔ-nɔ-ɽík**
 meat C-of-on-fire / C-of-on-fire
 (< kəpa kô- nɔ- ɽĩk < **kəpá** kɔ- nɔ- ɽĩk)
 boiled meat (lit.: meat of on the fire)

kəpa **k-ɔ-waɨ / k-ɔ-waɨ**
 meat C-of-cow
 (< kəpa kô waɨ < **kəpá** kɔ waɨ)
 the meat of a cow

There can be no tone bridge between two high/falling tones that occur in the same root. This is irrespective of whether both high/falling tones underlyingly belong to that root or one high tone (the initial one) comes from a preceding element. The latter is the case in the second example below: the high tone on ‘rabbit’ comes from **pəɾá** ‘Tira person’. Thus, the mora between the high tones in ‘lizard (sp.)’ cannot become high since they both belong to the root, nor can there be tone bridge on ‘rabbit’:

kapóɾɛntúŋ ‘lizard (sp.)’
mpɛtét/mpɛtɛt pəɾa ŋátəɾəpê ‘I will give the Tira person the rabbit’

There can, however, be tone bridge when one of the high/falling tones occurs on a clitic or affix. Question words with the suffix **-ta** allow for tone bridge. In the example below, **karəta** has received a high tone on its initial mora from **ń-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ and there is tone bridge:

ɔ-kín	t-aa.t	ŋ.ŋm	ŋ-káro-ta
PERS-3A	C-come:COMPL	with:ABS	with-where-QW

(< ŋkárəta < ŋkârəta < **ń-** karəta)
 from where did they come with it?

Tone bridge applies after the other tone rules. In certain constellations it is obligatory, in others optional, in again others impossible. The following cases suggest that, at least in some environments, the number of low morae between two high/falling tones plays a role. In the first example, tone bridge is obligatory, in the second it is impossible.

ŋkwɔnú pápé-i (< ŋkwɔnú papê -i) ‘do you have a fish?’
ŋkwɔnú pɔɾɔpé-i (< ŋkwɔnú pɔɾɔpê -i) ‘do you have a bird?’

The exact conditions under which tone bridge must, can or cannot be applied have not been fully clarified.

In the following, two common situations of tone bridge are studied, first tone bridge between a subject and an Incompletive verb; second in connexive constructions.

Tone bridge between subject nouns and verbs

A standard situation of tone bridge is found when a subject noun which itself has a final falling contour is followed by an Incompletive verb with a high tone on a non-initial vowel, as in the earlier mentioned examples:

kəllán **k-á.ɾəkô** (< kəllán kəɾəkô < **kəllân** kəɾəkô)
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL
 the old woman will eat it

kəllán **k-á.kəʈa** (< kəllán kakəʈa < **kəllân** kakəʈa)
 old_woman C-look:INCOMPL
 the old woman will look

The possibility of tone bridge depends on the aspectual form of the verb. There is no tone bridge when the verb is a Completive with a final falling contour (first example below) or a Past with a non-final high tone (second example below), nor when it is a Completive with a final high tone (third example below)

kəllán **k-əkəʈâ.t** (< **kəllân** kəkəʈât)
 old_woman C-look:COMPL
 the old woman has looked

kəllán **k-əkəʈá.kəʈe** (< **kəllân** kəkəʈákəʈe)
 old_woman C-look:PST
 the old woman looked

kəllán **k-ɾəkó.t** (< **kəllân** kəɾəkót)
 old_woman C-eaten:COMPL
 the old woman has eaten it

Tone bridge does, however, occur between a subject with a final falling contour and a Completive verb with a final falling contour

preceded by the ‘restrictor’ (see chapter 9). The high tone of the restrictor cannot reappear on the Completive verb **kəkəṭāt**.

kəllán í-k-ṣkəṭāt

old_woman RES-C-look:COMPL

(< kəllán ɪkəkəṭāt < kəllán í- kəkəṭāt < **kəllán í- kəkəṭāt**)

the old woman who has looked

Verb forms of tone class IIB and tone bridge

As discussed earlier, a non-prepausal final contour of verb forms of tone class IIB will be realized as high in certain circumstances and as low in others. It is realized as low in the first example, and as high in the second and third. There is tone bridge between the subject and the verb in the third example. Notably, verbs with an (underlying) final falling tone do not have a floating high tone.

m-p-a.ɾəkɔ

1-C-eat:INCOMPL

ṭurīt

food

(< **mpaɾəkɔ ṭurīt**)

I will eat the food

m-p-a.ɾəkɔ

1-C-eat:INCOMPL

pacɪkkɔt

mashed_groundnut_dish

(< **mpaɾəkɔ pacɪkkɔt**)

I will eat *pacɪkkɔt*

kəllán

old_woman

k-á.ɾəkɔ

C-eat:INCOMPL

pacɪkkɔt

mashed_groundnut_dish

(< kəllán kəɾəkɔ pacɪkkɔt < kəllán kəɾəkɔ pacɪkkɔt < **kəllán kəɾəkɔ pacɪkkɔt**)

the old woman will eat *pacɪkkɔt*

In the example below, where the verb has become all-low because of the process described under 3.4.1, tone bridge spans from the subject noun all the way to the object noun:

kəllán

old_woman

k-á.ɾəkɔ

C-eat:INCOMPL

ṭurīt

food

(< kəllán kəɾəkɔ ṭurīt < kəllán kəɾəkɔ ṭurīt < **kəllán kəɾəkɔ ṭurīt**)

the old woman will eat the food

This works also when the noun at the end has a final high tone:

kəllán k-á.ɾəkɔ kəpá
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL meat

(< kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá < kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá < **kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá**)
 the old woman will eat the meat

Tone bridge can even extend further, as will be exemplified using the expression **caɾɪ cíáɾɔ** ‘on which day’. In the first example below, the final high tone of **kəpá** ‘meat’ has become low, without causing a high tone on the following word because of Tone Reappearance sub-Rule 2 (the next word has itself a rising tone). As a result a long stretch of low tones appears. Note in the tonal derivation presented between parentheses, that in **caɾɪ cíáɾɔ** the final rising tone of **caɾɪ** ‘day’ has become low, and caused the heightening of the initial vowel of **cíáɾɔ** ‘which’, after which the two high tones formed a tone bridge: **cíáɾɔ**. The second example, with a low-toned subject is given for comparison.

kəllán k-á.ɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ c-íá-ɾɔ
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL meat day C-which-QW

(< , kəllán k-á.ɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < , kəllán k-á.ɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < , kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < , kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < **kəllán kəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ**)

on which day will the old woman eat meat?

ʊkʊl w-a.ɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ c-íá-ɾɔ
 child C-eat:INCOMPL meat day C-which-QW

(< ʊkʊl wəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < ʊkʊl wəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < ʊkʊl wəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ < **ʊkʊl wəɾəkɔ kəpá caɾɪ cíáɾɔ**)

on which day will the child eat meat?

The next case is given for comparison as well. The verb is not lowered before **maɪt** ‘beans’, so that there is no uninterrupted stretch of low tones between **kəllán** and **cíáɾɔ**. There is tone bridge, but not all the way to the question word.

kəllán k-á.ɾəkó mart caɾɪ c-íá-tâ
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL beans day C-which-QW

(< kəllán káɾəkó mart caɾɪ cíaɾâ < kəllán kaɾəkó mart caɾɪ cíaɾâ < kəllán kaɾəkó mart caɾɪ cíaɾâ < kəllán kaɾəkô mart caɾɪ cíaɾâ < **kəllán kaɾəkô mart caɾɪ cíaɾâ**)

on which day will the old woman eat beans?

In the examples above with tone bridge spanning over the verb, the verbs have lowered before they are bridged. The (underlying) final falling tone of a verb of tone class IIB can also function as the left boundary of a tone bridge, as in the next example:

ɬura-ɬúra ɬ-ɛ́ɔ.r-ín ɬɔ-unú
 insect(sp.)-REDUP C-go:COMPL-O1 at-ears

(< ɬɛ́ɔr-in ɬɔ-unú < ɬɛ́ɔr-in ɬɔ-unú < ɬɛ́ɔt -ín ɬɔ- unú)

a ɬuraɬura-insect went into my ear (lit.: went me at the ears)

Tone bridge in connexive constructions

In constructions with the connexive marker C-ɔ- ‘of’, tone bridge is applied when C-ɔ- has a high tone (always because of Tone Shift followed by Contour Simplification), while the following noun (the possessor) has a final falling contour or a non-final high tone.

kəpa k-ɔ-kəllán
 meat C-of-old_woman

(< kəpa kɔ-kəllán < kəpa kô-kəllán < **kəpá kɔ- kəllán**)

the meat of the old woman

kɪt k-ɔ-cúllúkkur
 eyes C-of-bird(sp.)

(< kit kɔ-cullúkkur < kit kô-cullúkkur < **kít kɔ- cullúkkur**)

the eyes of the bird (sp.)

Tone bridge does not apply when the possessor noun has a final high tone, e.g.,

kəpa k-ɔ-ɪmít (< kəpa kɔ-ɪmít < kəpá kɔ- ɪmít)
 meat C-of-goat
 the meat of the goat

In a construction where the connexive marker does not become underlyingly falling because it is preceded by a noun with an (underlying) final falling contour, there is no tone bridge between this underlying contour of the possessed noun and a final falling tone of the possessor noun:

tʊrít t-ɔ-kəllân (< tʊrít tɔ- kəllân)
 food C-of-old_woman
 the food of the old woman

cʊɾé c-ɔ-tún (< cʊɾé cɔ- tún)
 bulb C-of-onion
 the bulb of the onion

Cf. also the following examples. In the first case below, the connexive has not become underlyingly falling either, but is preceded by an all-low noun which is itself preceded by a verb with (underlyingly) a final falling contour. There is tone bridge spanning over the low noun and the connexive particle to the noun with final falling contour:

m-p-ɔnó tʰák t-ɔ-úrû
 1-C-have appetite C-of-asida
 (< mpɔnó tʰák tɔurû < mpɔnô tʰák tɔ- ɳurû)
 I long for asida

There is, however, no tone bridge when the final noun has a high tone:

m-p-ɔnó tʰák t-ɔ-kəpá (< mpɔnô tʰák tɔ- kəpá)
 1-C-have appetite C-of-meat
 I long for meat

There is also no tone bridge in the following case, in which the connexive has become high but is followed by a verbal noun with an underlying rising tone:

kírek k-ṣ-ṭ-ɔra mîl
hoe C-of-NOM-cultivate sorghum

(< kírek kṣ-ṭrǎ mîl < kírek kṣ-ṭrǎ mîl < **kírék kɔ- ṭrǎ mîl**)
a hoe for cultivating sorghum

The precise circumstances under which connexive constructions in larger contexts undergo, or do not undergo, tone bridge have not been clarified.

Optional tone bridge

In some contexts tone bridge is optional. Some examples follow here. Note that it concerns verbs with an underlyingly falling contour followed by more than one element: tone bridge spans from the high tone of the verb to the high tone of the second following element.

pul p-ɔkkínṭet ukul kurrṣṇ
pul p-ɔkkínṭét úkúl kúrrṣṇ
person C-do_for:COMPL child stick

the man has made a stick for the child

ɔ-nnán p-ɔnek.áṭe ukul a-kw-íɕe.kat cɪk ná-aɾaŋkál
ɔ-nnán p-ɔnek.áṭé úkúl á-kw-íɕe.kat cɪk ná-aɾaŋkál
PERS-mother C-take:PST child CONJ-3-lay_down:DEPPRFV VREF on-bed

the mother picked up the child and laid it down on the bed

In the following sentence there is obligatory tone bridge between the high tone of **pəpə́rót** (underlyingly **pəpə́rót**) and the falling contour of **papə́ttê** (realized as **pápóttê**), which is a contraction of **papu pə́ttê**. Tone bridge between **ŋkwə́təkkát** (underlyingly **ŋkwə́təkkát**) and **pəpə́rót** is optional. The more common variant in connected speech is with tone bridge.

attɪ	ŋ-kw-ɔ̌təkkǎ.t	p-ɔ̌pərɔ̌t	pá-p-ɔ̌ttê
attɪ	ŋ-kw-ɔ̌təkkǎ.t	p-ɔ̌pərɔ̌t	pá-p-ɔ̌ttê
I_hope_that	2-C-become:COMPL	C-good	thing-C-little

I hope you feel a little better?

When **papɔ̌ttê** is omitted and **pɔ̌pərɔ̌t** is in prepausal position, there cannot be tone bridge between **ŋkwɔ̌təkkǎt** and **pɔ̌pərɔ̌t**:

attɪ	ŋ-kw-ɔ̌təkkǎt	p-ɔ̌pərɔ̌t
I_hope_that	2-C-become:COMPL	C-good

I hope you feel better?

In some cases, tone bridge is a marked intonation, used for covering distance across a valley (people typically communicate over large distances, from one mountain slope to another, shouting with a particular, far-reaching voice). The following phrase (for an example as an answer to ‘where are you going’, or ‘what is going on’ is an example:

ɥɪpa	ɥ-ɔ̌-kukkó	ɔ̌-kín	ɔ̌-kakkâ	(distance covering)
ɥɪpa	ɥ-ɔ̌-kukkó	ɔ̌-kín	ɔ̌-kakkâ	
marriage	C-of-Kukku	PERS-3A	PERS-Kakka	

the marriage of Kukku and Kakka

3.6. Clause-final boundary tone with pragmatic function

In situations of clause chaining, a first clause can take a final high tone. This high tone is an intonational tone; it is independent from tonal properties of the clause-final element or its preceding element. It conveys that the sentence is not finished yet and creates an expectation that something interesting is going to follow in the next clause. It is typically followed by a small pause.

Clauses that start with the conjunction word **ámma** +H ‘if, when’ or **akka** +H ‘when, because’, or a compound conjunction containing **ámma** +H or **akka** +H, and that are followed by a clause starting with **ana** +H ‘and’, the conjunction particle **á** or the subjunctive particle **â**, creating a construction such as ‘if/when ..., then ...’, ‘as soon as ..., x must ...’ often take the boundary tone.

In the following sentence the word **mpántəkə́tak** ‘I can see him’, which has a final low tone in isolation, has a final high tone and precedes a small pause. **mənákka** ‘when, as soon as, even as’ is a compound conjunction of **məná** ‘even’ and **akkă** ‘when, because’.

mən.ákka	m-p-aa.t	i.ccík	k-óŋ	ittɪ
when	1-C-come:COMPL	near	C-POSS3	that
m-p-ánt-əkə́tá-k		ana	k-kw-írr.áɕe	
1-C-can:INCOMPL-look_at:DEPINCOMPL-O3		and	3-C-jump:PST	

when I had come near him so that I could see him, he jumped(written story)

In the next example with **akka**, there is a high tone on the 3SG object pronoun attached to the verb ‘turn’ that would otherwise not be there. This tone causes tone bridge over the entire verb. In isolation, the verb would be realized as **kkwópə́rə́ttərək** ‘s/he has turned him/her’.

akka	k-kw-ópə́rə́ttə́.r-ók
that	3-C-turn:COMPL-O3
ăccík.at	a-k-kw-ólłökkwó.t
CONJ.(2.)hear:DEPPRFV	CONJ-3-C-slip:COMPL

when he (the bird) turned him (to his other wing), you could hear that he (the tortoise) slipped (away) (App. IV, 126-127)

An example with an **ámma** + H clause and a clause-final high tone (on the anaphoric demonstrative **cən**, see 8.2) follows here. Note also that Contour Simplification was not applied to the word ‘rock’ (underlyingly **cưṛṛl**). This may have to do with the ability of **l** (and also the nasals) to carry part of the preceding tone.

ámma	á-kkó	nó-cưṛṛl	c-én
if	CONJ-(2-)reach:DEPINCOMPL	on-rock	C-DEM
ŋ-kw-aṭ-ɪət	cík	c-əkəṛíakəṭ.ɛ	
2-C-IT:INCOMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL	place	C-be_squeezed:COMPL	
á-ppə	tɪt	kaṭa	kaṭər k-én
SUBJ-(2-)pass:DEPINCOMPL	in:ABS	look:IMP	road C-DEM

when you reach that rock, you will find a narrow space, you must pass there, look, it is that road (i.e. the road you need to take) (fr. written text)

The clause final high tone is not part of these constructions *per se*. In the previous example, **cən** ‘that’ could also be realized with its own low tone. In the next sentence it is possible to realize **apɔ** ‘fall’ with a final high tone (and a pause), but a low realization of **apɔ** is actually somewhat more natural, since no expectation or “suspense” is involved. It is just a description of what happens under a certain circumstance:

ám má á-kápík apɔ a-kw-íkkɔ cík ɪ-kəɽúk k-ən
 if CONJ-3-rain fall:DEPINCOMPL CONJ-3-sit:DEPINCOMPL VREF in-sheltered_spot C-of:ABS
 when the rain falls, he sits in its shelter (in the shelter of a wall) (App. I, 18)

Other clause chaining constructions can also have this high tone. The final high tone on **púccók** ‘for some time’ in the example below is such a tone:

a-kw-ɔcca.kat ɲurú ɪ-carək púccók
 CONJ-3-scoop:DEPPRFV asida in-belly for_some_time
a-kw-ɔtəka.kat a-kw-ɔmɛ.kat ittĩ ...
 CONJ-3-become_satisfied:DEPPRFV CONJ-3-say:DEPPRFV that
 and he scooped the asida into his stomach for some time and he got satisfied and he said ... (App. IV, 29-30)

To the same effect the underlying final Falling tone on the last mora of the first **ákka** clause in the example below is realized as high before a small pause (i.e. **ɲurú** instead of **ɲurú**). In the second clause with **ákka** there is again a final high tone on **púccók**

akka k-kw-ɔɽəkɔ.t ɲurú
 that 3-C-eat:COMPL asida
akka ɔ-kín t-ɔɽəkɔ.t ɲurú púccók
 that PERS-3A C-eat:COMPL asida for_some_time
a-kw-ɔmɛ.kat-ɔk ittĩ ...
 CONJ-3-tell:DEPPRFV-O3 that

when he had been eating the asida, when they had been eating the asida for some time, he (the bird) said to him: ... (App. IV, 24-26)

3.7. Intonation effects in isolated nouns

Intonation effects exist in isolated nouns. If, in answer to a question, a single noun is uttered with annoyance or impatience its tones may be realized slightly differently. An all-low noun may be realized at level pitch (without final downglide) and a final high tone may be realized at a somewhat lower pitch than usual.

There also seem to be intonation effects depending on whether an utterance is an ‘out-of-the-blue’ remark or provides information that was solicited (typically an answer to a question). In the example below, a final high tone suggests that the information was solicited, a final low tone that it is a thetic remark.

ɔ-paŋ-k-ín	p-á-nín	t-á.ík	ín-áttút / ín-áttut
PERS-sibling-C-POSS1	C-be:PERS-1A	C-be:PR	1A-with_person
my brother is with me			

3.8. Tonal properties and representation of affixes, clitics, conjunctions and **cík**

Affixal and clitic elements can cause the same tonal changes (or the same lack of change) to their environment as nouns and other words. As already exemplified in this chapter, there are also clitic elements that have tonal implications different from the general ones, such as the prepositional proclitics **ɪ-**, **nɔ-**, **tɔ-**, and **tɔ-** and the 3rd person subject and non-human subject proclitics. It is difficult to give the citation form of such elements a satisfactory tonal representation. In some cases I have chosen not to represent tone on these items, though, unlike the orthography might suggest, these items do not behave as low-toned items, but do have tonal effects on their environment.

There are also affixes and clitics that seem to fit into the system set out by the tone rules, but nevertheless do not have an obvious tonal representation. This concerns prefixes and pro-clitics that bring a high tone to a next element, but being prefixal or pro-clitic, have no prepausal realization. It is precisely the prepausal realization of a

word that easily enables us to distinguish between a final high tone, a final rising tone, and a floating high tone.

Looking at other tonal properties of words with a final high tone, a final rising tone, or a floating high tone shows that the prepausal realization of these words is not their only difference. There is also a difference as to the capacity of words with these patterns to receive a high tone from a preceding element.

As can be seen from the examples given earlier in this chapter:

1. words with a rising tone cannot receive a high tone (unless through tone bridge), irrespective of their number of morae;
2. monomoraic words with a high tone cannot receive a high tone (unless through tone bridge), but longer words with a final high tone in principle can, even though many need a (lexically-determined) minimum space between their first mora (the potential receiver of a preceding high tone) and their own high tone;
3. words with a floating high tone can receive a high tone from a preceding element, though it is unclear if this also holds for monomoraic elements. Verbs, especially Dependent Incompletives and Dependent Perfectives of low-toned verbs, are the best model for this type of tone pattern since they have 1) a prepausal realization, 2) the floating high tone, 3) lack other tones that may influence their ability to receive a preceding tone. There are, however, no monomoraic verbs of this type. The only monomoraic verb is the copula (C-á), but the copula cannot occur in prepausal position, so that it is itself a 'problem' case with respect to its tonal representation. For the sake of distinguishing, and because it is certainly not unlikely, we will assume that, unlike monomoraic high and rising elements, a monomoraic element with floating high tone is able to receive a preceding high tone. This then excludes this tone pattern for the copula, since, unless through tone bridge, it cannot receive a high tone itself.

The tonal representation of a mono-moraic element without prepausal realization will thus be determined as follows:

1. Can it generate a high tone on a next element?
No: low tone; yes: high tone, floating high tone or rising tone
2. Can it receive a high tone itself?
No: rising or high tone; yes: low tone or floating high tone

This shows that for monomoraic items without prepausal realization and which are unable to receive a high tone, a choice between rising and high remains. In such cases I choose a representation as high, the advantage of which is perhaps that any suggestion of historical loss of a mora—which may be associated with a rising tone—is avoided. The persona prefix (*ǵ-*), the restrictor (*í-*) and prepositional proclitic *ń-* ‘with, by, (away) from’ are therefore represented with a high tone (as is the Present of ‘be’ (*C-á*)).

Conjunctions pose problems in a comparable way: though they are words and can thus be realized alone, in context they are never prepausal so that their isolated tonal realization is not actually trustworthy. Their typical tonal behaviour is to bring a high tone to a next element, while they tend to be realized in isolation with a low tone. Moreover, in some cases their own tonal realizations in context can be rather unpredictable. Though problems remain, I propose a tonal representation for most conjunction words (see chapter 18).

Some of the suffixes and enclitics are less problematic as to tonal representation since they have a prepausal realization and behave regularly. Some of the personal object clitics, however, display irregular behaviour. I nevertheless propose a tonal representation, to avoid confusion with L-toned elements (see chapter 6.4).

The 1SG and 2SG possessor pronouns and the so-called vague reference particle *ɕɪk* display tonal properties that deviate from the tone rules. I represent the 1SG and 2SG possessor pronouns as having two tonal alternatives, apparently in free variation, while showing at the same time that some unexpected tonal behaviour remains (see chapter 7.3.1). The irregular behaviour of *ɕɪk* does not allow for assignment of an underlying tone. Though its notation may suggest otherwise, I do not regard it as an item with low tone (chapter 15.2).

4. Nouns

This chapter presents the segmental shape and tone patterns of nouns and their morphological make-up. It describes the noun class system and discusses issues of number and meaning relating to the noun classes and noun class pairs. It deals with nominal derivation, complex nouns, descriptive constructions expressing nominal concepts, and nouns with the so-called ‘persona prefix’ and their plural formation.

4.1. Phonological shape

Nouns can start with all consonants that occur word-initially (i.e. all except the rhotics) and with any of the vowels. They can end with all consonants that can occur word-finally (i.e. **t**, **k**, **n** and **ŋ**) and with any of the vowels that can occur in that position (all except **ə**). In nouns borrowed from Arabic some further consonants are found word-finally (i.e. **p**, **t̪** and **m**).

Out of the 921 nouns in my database, 51 are monomoraic, more than half (490) bimoraic, 285 trimoraic, 85 have four morae and 10 five. Virtually all those with five morae either involve reduplication or are loans from Arabic. Vowels are commonly short (involving one mora), but there are also diphthongs and in a few cases long vowels (involving two morae). Nouns with a diphthong or long vowel are often monosyllabic. Disyllabic words with a diphthong mostly have the diphthong in the second syllable. Long vowels are not attested as second syllables, but there is one case with a long vowel in the first syllable (**tuoli** ‘hyena’). Longer nouns do not have diphthongs or long vowels, unless across a morpheme boundary due to reduplication. The shortest nouns consist of two segments, either CV or VC.

4.2. Tone patterns

For nouns in isolation, there is a strong tendency to have tonal contrasts only on the last vowel. All other vowels are low. In the tone pattern formulas, L^* represents the low vowels preceding the last one

that carries the tonal contrast (and * can be zero). These patterns are the four main tone patterns:

Final low tone (L*.L, also called all-low)

ka	‘body’	L
ukul	‘child’	L.L
cumian	‘bone’	L.L.L
kəṛəmekku	‘bat (sp.)’	L.L.L.L

Final high tone (L*.H)

cá	‘head’	H
capó	‘ground’	L.H
kappərí	‘spoon’	L.L.H
təṛkián	‘caterpillar larva’	L.L.L.H

Final rising tone (L*.LH)

ṭók	‘dog’	LH
cəṭṭṇ	‘hill’	L.LH
tukrā	‘head pad’	L.L.LH
ṭennekkettā	‘to be tested’	L.L.L.LH

Final falling tone (L*.HL)

ṭūn	‘onion’	HL
cūân	‘rat (sp.)’	L.HL
cəṭṭ	‘shell’	L.L.HL
pəṭṭəmpôṇ	‘plant (sp.)’	L.L.L.HL

Some words have a high tone on the pre-final vowel. This pattern can be represented as L*.L.H.L (where, as in the other patterns, * can be zero). Some examples:

cəṛəṭṭi	‘goatskin bracelet’	L.H.L
ṇaləṇṭṭṇ	‘k.o. basket (small size)’	L.H.L
tappəránu	‘worm (sp.)’	L.L.H.L
ṭaləṭṭikṭik	‘dodging behaviour’	L.L.H.L
ṇeṭṭiā	‘k.o. watery root’	L.L.H.L

Two more patterns are found on simple nouns of (presumably) Lumun origin: L.H.H and L.H.L.H. These patterns have only few attestations, respectively 11 and 5 (in my database).

L.H.H

cakkólók	‘gourd (k.o.)’
cumpóráŋ	‘monkey (sp.)’
kapíét	‘jaw’

L.H.L.H

cakkórupíl	‘bird (sp.)’
kapérentúŋ	‘lizard (sp.)’
kwáréttól	‘plant (edible sp.)’

One loan word from Arabic has this pattern as well:

alépirít	‘prayer mat’	(< Sud. Ar. <i>al-birish</i>)
-----------------	--------------	---------------------------------

Originally Lumun nouns with more than one vowel do not have a high tone on the first vowel. The following noun may (or may not) be borrowed from Tira:

H.L

ŋáppə	‘hunt’ ²³
--------------	----------------------

An initial high tone on a simple noun with more than one vowel is found in several Arabic loans. The tone mimics the stress placement in the Arabic item. Some examples:

páka	‘jerry can’	(< Sudanese Arabic <i>baagha</i>)
múccuŋ	‘comb’	(< Sudanese Arabic <i>mushuŋ</i>)
cérəŋel	‘bucket’	(< Sudanese Arabic <i>jerdal</i>)

²³ Tira has a verb **apə** ‘take’ and abstract nouns in its **ŋ**-class. (Schadeberg 2009, p. 21, 112).

4.3. Noun classes

Lumun has a fully functioning noun class system. Common nouns consist of a consonantal or \emptyset noun class prefix and a stem, and always belong to a noun class. Nouns with the so-called persona prefix are a special case (see section 4.10). Nouns most often occur in pairs, differing from each other only as to the noun class. Paired nouns typically signal singular versus plural reference, for example:

t̪-ŏk/l-ŏk ‘dog/-s’

Adjectives, including some numerals, demonstratives, possessor pronouns and the connexive agree with the noun class of the noun that they modify. There is also agreement between the subject noun and some but not all TAM-forms of verbs. The agreement markers on modifiers and verbs will be called concords. Concords are typically alliterative in Lumun; in most cases the concord is identical to the class prefix. The exception are the concords of vowel-initial nouns (with \emptyset prefix) and nouns with the class prefix **kw-**. These nouns have **w-** and **k-**concord, respectively.

An example to illustrate agreement between a noun (**lɔn** ‘words’) and its modifiers, and the subject marking on the verb follows here. Instances of the concord (**l-**) are underlined.

lɔn	<u>l</u>-aŋ	é<u>l</u>-<u>l</u>-í	<u>l</u>-á.kórrakɔt	ɪ-aʔám
words	C-POSS2	DEM-C-NEARSP	C-be_written_at:INCOMPL	in-book

these words of yours will be written in a book

I define Lumun noun classes in the first place on the basis of the concord they induce. In a few cases, basically singular or plural reference is used as an additional criterion to distinguish between noun classes. Occasional deviations of number reference (a noun of a singular class that functions on the plural side in an irregular class pair, or a noun of a plural class that functions on the singular side in an irregular class pair) are not interpreted as different noun classes.

A third criterion, which is used in some cases, is the prefix itself. It distinguishes between differently shaped prefixes which have the same concord and the same type of number reference (singular or plural). Such cases are considered subclasses of one and the same noun class. The singular noun classes are presented in table 16, the plural noun classes in table 17.

Table 16 Singular noun classes

<i>noun class</i>	<i>concord</i>	<i>prefix</i>	<i>example</i>
p	p-	p-	p-ira 'tree'
t̥	t̥-	t̥-	t̥-ɔ̌ɛk 'rope'
t	t-	t-	t-əŋək 'worm'
c	c-	c-	c-á 'head'
k, kw subclass k subclass kw	k- k-	k- kw-	k-əɾɔ̌l 'tortoise' kw-ɔ̌ɛl 'cheek'
ŋ	ŋ-	ŋ-	ŋ-at̩t̩k̩k̩ɔ̌l 'calabash (k.o.)'
∅, w subclass ∅ subclass w	w- w-	∅ w-	aɾám 'book' w-aɪ̌ 'cow'

Table 17 Plural noun classes

<i>noun class</i>	<i>concord</i>	<i>prefix</i>	<i>example</i>
k	k-	k-	k-ira 'trees'
m	m-	m-	m-á 'heads'
n	n-	n-	n-əŋək 'worms'
ɲ	ɲ-	ɲ-	ɲ-at̩t̩k̩k̩ɔ̌l 'calabashes (k.o.)'
l	l-	l-	l-ɔ̌ɛk 'ropes'
∅, w subclass ∅ subclass w	w- w-	∅ w-	əɾɔ̌l 'tortoises' wək 'shoes'

4.3.1. Classes consisting of two subclasses

*The singular **k**, **kw** class*

The examples below illustrate that nouns with initial **k** and nouns with initial **kw** (/k^w/, pronounced [k^w] in the isolated word) have the same concord. Both nouns have singular reference. On the basis of the first two criteria (concord and singular/plural reference) they belong to the same noun class:

kapórentɔŋ k-aát ‘the lizard (sp.) has come’
kwalílm k-aát ‘the centipede has come’

The labialization in the second case is part of the class prefix, as can be seen when the noun is put in another noun class in order to express the plural. The plural forms shows that the labialization of **k** is not part of the stem, but belongs to the class prefix:

k-apórentɔŋ/apórentɔŋ ‘lizard (sp.)/-s’
kw-alílm/alílm ‘centipede/-s’

My database has 24 singular or unpaired nouns with **kw** and ca. 175 with **k**. Both forms occur before a vowel **ɪ**, **ɛ** and **a**. **kw** is not attested before **ɪ**, but this is probably a coincidence because cases of singular **k** before an **ɪ**-initial root are also only few (just three). Otherwise, however, there are significant differences in the distribution of the subclasses. Unlike **k**, **kw** is not attested before **ə** and at least for some speakers (including JS) there is a phonological restriction against **kw** before **u** or **ʊ**. A variant **kwucúl** of **kucúl** ‘back’ is nevertheless attested (see also chapter 2.1.2). There is no phonological restriction against **k** preceding **ɔ** —there are, for example, nouns with initial stem vowel **ɔ** in the plural **k**-class—, but no cases of the singular subclass **k** before **ɔ** are attested in pairs, while there are seven cases of the subclass **kw** before an **ɔ** in pairs. Combinations attested in pairs of the subclasses **k** and **kw** and stem-initial vowels are listed here:

Table 18 Combinations of singular **k** and **kw** with initial stem vowels

<i>stem-initial vowel</i>	<i>subclass k</i>	<i>translation</i>	<i>subclass kw</i>	<i>translation</i>
ɪ	k-ɪcɪt	fruit of <i>picit</i> -tree		

ɪ	k-ɪnce	nose	kw-ira	small piece of wood or grass
u	k-unú	ear	(kwucúl)	back
ʊ	k-ʊɾĩ	branch		
ɛ	k-ɛɾʊ	black spot from burning	kw-ɛɾé	pointed stick
ɔ			kw-ɔk	shoe
ə	k-əré	cloth		
a	k-aɾʊk	goatskin bag	kw-aɾe	marking line on the ground

In unpaired nouns there is just one case of **k** before **ɔ** (**kɔrəkəkôr** ‘prison’) against two cases of **kw** before **ɔ** (**kwɔɾĩ** ‘residue of beer’ and **kwɔɾək** ‘guarding a field against animals’).

It is unclear how the lack of singular nouns with initial **kɔ** can be explained. Perhaps, in a historical ***k/*w**-pair²⁴, the plural class prefix ***w** was reanalysed before stem-initial **ɔ** as part of the stem, resulting in singular nouns with an initial sequence **k-wɔ** instead of **k-ɔ**, which was later on reanalysed as **kw-ɔ**. Subsequent loss of initial **w** in some of the plural nouns may have led to the current pairs which have **kw/∅**. The process may have happened also in plural ***w** class nouns with stem-initial **a**, **ɪ** and **ɛ**, but more incidentally so, especially in case of stem-initial **ɪ** and **ɛ**.²⁵

The singular ∅, w class

The next examples illustrate that nouns with initial **w** and vowel-initial nouns have the same concord. Both have singular reference. On the basis of the first two criteria (concord and singular/plural reference) they belong to the same noun class:

²⁴ A proto-Talodi pair ***g-/w-** was proposed by Schadeberg (1981b, 113).

²⁵ There are just two nouns with **kw** before **ɪ** and three with **kw** before **ɛ**. There are ten nouns of **kw** before **a**, however, two of these are unpaired.

waḵ w-aát	‘the cow has come’
ilí w-aát	‘the leader has come’

I consider nouns such as **ilí** as having a \emptyset prefix, because a \emptyset prefix paradigmatically relates to class prefixes (always consonants) of other nouns. The singular \emptyset subclass contains several loans (see 4.3.5). The nouns that are not (or not clearly) loans have plurals in different classes and some of the plurals are (partially) suppletive (see 4.3.5). The singular **w**-subclass has only two members, both have suppletive plurals:

waḵ/kíé	‘cow/-s’
wék/tacók	‘leg, foot/legs, feet’

In the case of **waḵ** and **wék**, it is not clear from the singular/plural opposition, nor from the concord (**w**-) what constitutes the class prefix and what the stem. However, because other initial consonants are always class prefixes, while nominal stems are always vowel-initial, I consider **w** as a class prefix. Notably, **wék** can alternatively be pronounced with an initial vowel: **uék**. It is then assigned to the singular \emptyset subclass.

*The plural \emptyset , **w** class*

Concords of the plural \emptyset , **w** class are illustrated here. **wǎn** ‘hair of a human’ is a plural noun with collective meaning. It occurs next to a singular noun denoting ‘a strand of hair’.

wan w-ipók	‘the hair is white, blond’
əret w-ipók	‘the cloths are white’

Plural nouns in the \emptyset subclass are considerably more numerous than plural nouns in the **w**-subclass.

Plurals with \emptyset , **w** pair up regularly with singulars in the **k**, **kw** class. As in both cases there is variation between a prefix with a labial element and a prefix without, it is interesting to see the distribution of the variants in the class pairs.

In the first place, singular **k** pairs up with plural \emptyset (numbers of attestations are given for all pairs in tables 19 and 20):

k/ \emptyset **k-apérɛntúŋ/apérɛntúŋ** ‘lizard (sp.)/-s’

kw corresponds both to **w** and to \emptyset in the plural:

kw/ \emptyset **kw-alíln/alíln** ‘centipede/-s’
kw/w **kw-ǎn/w-ǎn** ‘strand of human hair/human hair’

In addition, in some cases the plural noun fluctuates between being **w**-initial and vowel-initial:

kw/w ~ \emptyset **kw-anôk/w-anôk, anôk** ‘moon/-s’

It is lexically determined whether a plural comes in the \emptyset or **w**-subclass or in both. Nevertheless, the list below suggests that monomoraic nouns tend to come in the **w**-subclass (but there is **ɔk** as a variant of **wɔk** ‘shoes’).

kw-en/w-en	‘line of stones marking the boundary of a field’
kw-ét/w-ét	‘circle of roof skeleton’
kw-ǎn/w-ǎn	‘strand of human hair/hair (of human)’
kw-ira/w-ira, ira	‘small piece of wood or grass’
kw-ɔk/w-ɔk	‘shoe’
kw-ɔ́ɛ́tɔ́tɔ́l/w-ɔ́ɛ́tɔ́tɔ́l, ɔ́ɛ́tɔ́tɔ́l	‘k.o. vegetable’
kw-anôk/w-anôk, anôk	‘moon, month’
kw-ɛ́ɛ́/ɛ́ɛ́	‘pointed stick’
kw-ɔ́ɛ́k/ɔ́ɛ́k	‘black ant’
kw-ɔ́ɛ́n/ɔ́ɛ́n	‘piece of firewood/firewood’
kw-ɔ́ɛ́kwɔ́ɛ́/ɔ́ɛ́ɛ́	‘plant (sp., edible)’
kw-ɔ́ɛ́l/ɔ́ɛ́l	‘cheek’
kw-alíln/alíln	‘centipede’
kw-ame/ame	‘tendon’
kw-aɛ́/aɛ́	‘marking line on the ground’
kw-attára/attára	‘k.o. dance’

4.3.2. Noun class pairs²⁶

A singular noun class may form a pair with more than one plural noun class, and vice versa. A table of pairs with many members is given first, then a table of pairs with less than six members. The last column gives the number of pairs in my database. Pairs with (partially) suppletive stems have not been included, nor have cases in which there was doubt about the acceptability of a number-related counterpart.

Table 19 Noun class pairs with 6 or more members

<i>(sub)class pair</i>	<i>example</i>	<i>translation</i>	<i>#</i>
p/∅	p-ol/ol	person/-s	64
p/k	p-ira/k-ira	tree/-s	45
c/k	c-ít/k-ít	eye/-s	11
c/m	c-á/m-á	head/-s	163
l/l	l-ɔ́ɔ́k/l-ɔ́ɔ́k	rope/-s	85
t/n	t-əŋək/n-əŋək	worm/-s	70
∅/n	aṭám/n-aṭám	book/-s	18
k/∅	k-əɾɔ́l/əɾɔ́l	tortoise/-s	143
kw/∅	kw-anɔ́k/anɔ́k	moon/-s	12
kw/w	kw-anɔ́k/w-anɔ́k	moon/-s	6
ŋ/ɲ	ŋ-atṭɔ́kkɔ́l/ɲ-atṭɔ́kkɔ́l	k.o. calabash/-es	83
			700

Rarely occurring noun class pairs, with less than six attested cases, follow here. In a few cases a noun class that is associated with singular reference functions on the plural side in a pair, notably **p**, **l**, and **t**, and in one case a noun class that is associated with plural reference functions on the singular side (**l**).

Table 20 Noun class pairs with less than 6 members

<i>(sub) class pair</i>	<i>pair of nouns</i>	<i>translation</i>	<i>#</i>
p/l	p-erö/l-erö	tree (sp.)/-s	2

²⁶ The class pairs are also listed in Smits (2011).

	(PL also k-erö) p-əkí/t-əkí	ancestor, descendant/-s	
p/m	p-ətək/m-ətək p-ərǎ/m-ərǎ	stone/-s Tira person/-s	2
p/n	p-akkí/n-akkí	Nuba person from areas south-west of Lumun, across the plains (incl. Dagik, Katcha, Krongo)/-s	1
p/l	p-əmpərən/l-əmpərən	Moro person/-s	1
kw/p	kw-ian/p-ian	small piece of firewood/small firewood	1
k/t	k-upú/t-upú	piece, pole of bamboo /bamboo	3
kw/t	k-amur/t-amur	(grain of) sand/sand	1
	k-ullín/t-ullín kw-ɔcán/t-ɔcán	blade of grass (sp.)/grass (sp.) leaf of edible plant (sp.) /edible plant (sp.)	
k/t	k-ua/t-ua	strand of hair/hair	1
kw/t	kw-acɔ/t-acɔ	blade of grass/grass (generic)	1
k/n	k-ukkú/n-ukkú	unripe groundnut/-s	1
ŋ/t	ŋ-umǎr/t-umǎr	relative of father's side, enemy, murder ²⁷ /-s	1
l/n	l-ɔpǎr/n-ɔpǎr	partridge/-s	1
Ø/k	ike/k-ike	giraffe/-s	1
w/k	wallír²⁸/kallír	gazelle/-s	1
Ø/l	utturu/l-utturu	Otoro person/-s	1
Ø/n	ukul/n-ukul	child/children	1
			20

²⁷ The term refers to those relative(s) to whom a man owes revenge, i.e. for which one must kill and for which one must risk to be killed: this is the group of family members on the father's side. The term can also refer to the people on whom revenge must be carried out (the enemy). It can also denote 'revenge killing'.

²⁸ Also **allír**.

There are a few pairs in which the stems of the singular and plural nouns are not the same. In some cases the difference is very small, in others the stems are completely suppletive.

Table 21 (Partly) suppletive pairs

<i>(partly) suppletive pair</i>	<i>(sub)class pair</i>	<i>translation</i>
p-apu/aṛəpu	p/∅	thing/-s
c-arák/k-ərák	c/k	belly, stomach, /bellies, -s
c-ikít/m-əkít	c/m	heart/-s
c-əpú/m-úpú		hole in the ground
k-úpír/t-əpír	k/t	sorghum stock/-s
ɔpá/k-əpá	∅/k	piece of meat/meat ²⁹
w-aĩ/k-ǰé	w/k	cow/-s
imít/l-ǰcók	∅/l	goat/-s
w-ék/t-acók	w/t	leg, foot/-s, feet
ukón/n-aón	∅/n	hand/-s, forearm/-s
iré/n-iré (also regular: n-iré)	∅/n	adolescent girl/-s

Two more irregular pairs follow here:

cəmart/mart	‘bean/-s’
măñ/kəməñ	‘room/house, house/-s’

One possibility is that these are **m**-initial stems with have, respectively, a **cə** and a **∅** prefix, and a **∅** and a **kə**-prefix. However, the **m**-initial forms take **m**-concord, which means that **m** functions as a noun class prefix. Moreover, the semantics of ‘beans’ is typically associated with the (plural) noun class prefix **m**-, namely numerous roundish items. It seems much more likely that **cəmart**, denoting a single bean, is a case of a double prefix (**cə-m-art**). Also **kəməñ** may have a double prefix (**kə-m-əñ**) rather than a stem that vacillates between an **m**-initial and a vowel-initial form. **k**- is not only a singular prefix, but also a plural prefix in the **c-/k**- class, a class in

²⁹ **ɔpá/kəpá** can refer to the meat of both domestic and wild animals, but also to ‘game’: larger wild animals that are hunted for meat.

which some paired body parts are found. The notion of a unit consisting of composing parts may have played a role in the pair **mǎn/kəmón**. **kəmón** can refer to plural houses, but also to the constellation of buildings or rooms that together form the typical Lumun homestead.

4.3.3. Unpaired nouns

All prefixes, with the exception of **ɲ**, are found on unpaired nouns as well, and no other class prefixes than those found in the pairs are attested on unpaired nouns.

Some examples of unpaired nouns follow here. The number of attestations of unpaired nouns with a certain prefix is given in the last column. Locative nouns (with various prefixes) and unpaired nouns with the **t̥**-prefix that are derived from verbs and adjectives have not been counted. Denominal derivations in the **t̥**- and **k**-classes (abstractions and languages) have been included, as well as loans. Cases in which there was doubt or difference of opinion about the noun being unpaired have not been included.

Table 22 Unpaired nouns

<i>(sub)class</i>	<i>unpaired noun</i>	<i>translation</i>	<i>#</i>
p	porocê	fog	14
t̥	tiak	suffering	18
t	tî	(period(s) of) hunger	2
c	capó	ground	7
k	ka	body, bodies	15
kw	kwa	chaff	5
m	miṛǒk	bush, uncultivated land	10
n	nunṭú	fine-grained soil	6
ŋ	ŋilî	leadership	1
l	lccit	threshing floor(s)	3
w	wê	calabash(es) or pot(s) for fermenting flour and water	1
Ø	accái	tea	7
			89

For several unpaired nouns a singular/plural opposition is not particularly relevant in view of their semantics; an example of such a case is **porucê** ‘fog’. Some other cases are loans which have resisted singular or plural formation in another class (see section 4.9). In the case of **ka** ‘body’ absence of a noun ***a** ‘bodies’ could be explained from a phonological restriction: there are no nouns consisting of just a single vowel. In an incidental case, the noun is easily countable but lacks a singular/plural opposition. An example is **lomúttu** ‘bull(s) with very short horns’. A possible explanation is that this word with noun class prefix **l**, a prefix that is associated with plural reference, is a loan from an unidentified language that has resisted singular formation in the **ṭ**-class (the pair **ṭ**-/1- being associated with long shape).

There is no particular reason to regard the classes of unpaired nouns as different from those figuring in the pairs. In general, noun classes are able to host nouns with deviating number-related semantics, as will be exemplified in section 4.3.4.

In some cases there was doubt whether or not a number-related counterpart could be formed according to a certain class pair, and sometimes there was difference of opinion about this between speakers. In some cases a consultant said that it would in principle be possible to make a plural but that people did not use that form. Some examples follow here:

kənáj/ʔənáj ‘wind’
ḡəme/ʔḡəme ‘sound of crying, tear(s)’
ṭurīt/ʔṭurīt ‘food’

4.3.4. Nouns and number³⁰

Nouns in class pairs basically signal singular versus plural reference of the noun. In some cases the singular has an additional meaning that refers to an entity that contains plural units of the item:

³⁰ Nouns and number are more extensively discussed in Smits (2011).

cuccû/muccû ‘bead, necklace/beads, necklaces’

pəṭək/məṭək ‘stone, country/stones, countries’

In the next case, it is the plural that also denotes an object that contains plural units of the item:

kəriṅkəriṅ/əriməriṅ ‘bell/bells, musical instrument made of bells (row of bells on a bow)’

For some foodstuffs that consist of discrete items the plural is used to denote the foodstuff as a semantic collective, for others the singular. Some examples:

SG/PL, COLL

cîl/mîl ‘grain of sorghum/sorghum’

kaləppaṭúra/aləppaṭúra ‘tomato/tomatoes’

(< Sud. Ar. *al-banaḍoora*)

əpá/kəpá ‘piece of meat/meat’

(also: ‘animal hunted for meat/game’)

The case of ‘beans’ is recalled here (mentioned in 4.3.2), in which the singular noun class prefix **c** is attached before the plural prefix **m**-, with inserted **ə** to solve the disallowed consonant cluster:

cəmart/mart ‘bean/beans’

SG, COLL/PL

ṭûn/lûn ‘onion(s) (unit or collective)/onions (units or amounts)’

cokurî/mokurî ‘edible plant (sp., unit or collective)/edible plant (sp., units or amounts)’

kəpim/əpim ‘edible plant (generic, unit or collective)/ edible plants (units or amounts)’

The sentence below illustrates that some food items are referred to by the singular in a pair, others by the plural. In the following

examples, the class prefixes of these food items have been explicitly glossed as singular noun class (SGC) or plural noun class (PLC):

kεccók	k-ónó	aɾəpɔ	w-əppót	ámm.akka
market	C-have	things	C-many	like
ɬ-ún	ana	l-umú	ana	k-əpá
SGC-onion	and	PLC- <i>lumu</i> -roots	and	PLC-meat

the market has many things such as onions, *lumu*-roots and meat

In cases in which the singular not only refers to a single unit but also to the items as a group, the plural can denote not only a number of separate units, but also a number of amounts, and it can be used in order to refer to different kinds of the foodstuff.

In the following examples, the plural of ‘onion’ (**lún**) is preferred:

lún	m-muál	m-εɾá
onions	with-sacks	C-two

two sacks of onions

muál	m-εɾa	m-ó-lún
sacks	C-two	C-of-onions

two sacks of onions

lún	l-εɾa	tít
onions	C-two	in:ABS

the onions are of two kinds (or: there are two kinds of onions)

In the case of ‘sand’ both the singular and the plural can refer to ‘sand’ as a collective entity. The plural can also denote amounts of sand.

kamór/ɬamór ‘grain of sand, sand/sand, amounts or kinds of sand’

Nouns referring to cohesive substances (liquid, semi-liquid and mashed substances) are typically denoted by singulars. Some examples from different noun classes follow here. In the translations,

the mass noun-meanings are underlined. The plurals can refer to amounts of the mass, or different kinds of the mass.

cəkal ‘grain of sesame, sesame plant, sesame paste’

məkal ‘sesame (seeds or plants), amounts or kinds of sesame paste’

kappentína ‘groundnut, groundnut tree, groundnut paste /

appentína ‘groundnuts, groundnut trees, amounts or kinds of groundnut paste’

(Semi-)liquid substances very often come in the class pair **ŋ/p**. A plural can virtually always be formed and refers to amounts (portions) or different kinds of the substance.

ŋətĩ/ŋətĩ ‘water/amounts, kinds of water’

ŋucul/ŋucul ‘sauce/amounts, kinds of sauce’

ŋəpak/ŋəpak ‘beer/amounts, kinds of beer’

ŋuccôk, ŋiccôk/ŋuccôk, ŋiccôk ‘blood/amounts, kinds of blood’

ŋurû/ŋurû ‘asida/amounts, kinds of asida’

Nouns referring to non-cohesive substances with discrete small and roundish particles tend to come in the class pair **c/m**. The noun in the **c**-class refers to a single unit, the noun in the **m**-class to a larger amount (a non-cohesive mass).

cĩl/mĩl ‘sorghum seed, sorghum plant/sorghum (seeds or plants)’

cərə/mərə ‘seed/-s’

Unit/collective pairs are also found in the **k/∅** and in the **kw/∅** pairs, for example:

kakúccij/akúccij ‘coin/money’

kwəɽen/ɽen ‘piece of firewood/firewood’

In some of the class pairs with less than six members (table 20) the basically singular classes **p**, **t**, and **t** refer to non-cohesive masses or collectives with discrete particles, while a single unit comes in one of the subclasses **k** or **kw**. It seems that the singular subclasses **k** and

kwian/pian	‘small piece of firewood/small firewood’
kamór/ṭamór	‘grain of sand/sand’
kwaco/taco	‘blade of grass/grass’

<i>English expression</i>	<i>Lumun</i>	<i>class pair</i>
a bundle of firewood	ɔŋen	kwɔŋen/ɔŋen ‘piece of firewood/firewood’
a flock of goats	liɕɔk	ɿmɿt/liɕɔk ‘goat/-s’
a swarm of bees	aun	kaun/aun ‘bee/-s’

cunkut **c-ə-ul**
crowd C-of-people
a crowd of people

kuɬuk	k-ɔ-kjɛ
fenced_place_for_livestock	C-of-cows
a herd of cows (not necessarily within the fence)	

Abstract nouns in the **t**-class (most often but not always derived from verbs) are typically unpaired, but abstract nouns in other classes tend to have a singular/plural opposition. In the case of **npore**, ‘laziness’,

the singular noun is used when the abstraction is associated with just one person, the plural when it is associated with plural persons:

Ꭱ-ᓐᓐ	Ꭱ-ulluk	ᓐᎡ-Ꭱ-ᓐ	Ꭱ-ᓐ-kk-w-ᓐᓐ
SGC-laziness	C-only	DEM-C-NEARSP	C-COP-3-C-have

this is just laziness of his, hers (lit.: laziness only this is (which) s/he has)

Ꭱ-ᓐᓐ	Ꭱ-ulluk	ᓐᎡ-Ꭱ-ᓐ	Ꭱ-ᓐ-ᓐ-ᓐᓐ
PLC-laziness	C-only	DEM-C-NEARSP	C-COP-3A-C-have

this is just laziness of theirs (lit.: laziness only this is (which) they have)

In the case of **tər**, ‘appetite’, the singular and the plural noun are both possible when the abstraction is associated with just one person:

t-ᓐᓐ	t-ᓐkkwᓐᓐ-ᓐᓐ	ᓐᓐᓐ	m-p-ᓐ.ᓐᓐᓐ	kᓐᓐᓐ
SGC-appetite	C-kill:COMPL-O1	like	1-C-eat:INCOMPL	meat

I am craving for meat (lit.: appetite has killed me as if I will eat meat)

n-ᓐᓐ	n-ᓐkkwᓐᓐ-ᓐᓐ	ᓐᓐᓐ	m-p-ᓐ.ᓐᓐᓐ	kᓐᓐᓐ
PLC-appetite	C-kill:COMPL-O1	like	1-C-eat:INCOMPL	meat

I am craving for meat (lit.: appetite has killed me as if I will eat meat)

However, when the appetite is associated with more than one person, only the plural of ‘appetite’ can be used:

kᓐᓐᓐ	k-ᓐᓐᓐ	ᓐᓐ	n-ᓐᓐ
meat	C-make_obtain:INCOMPL	people	PLC-appetite

meat makes people have appetite (for it) (i.e. makes people want to eat it)

4.3.5. Noun class pairs and semantics

Certain semantic notions tend to be concentrated in specific class pairs. This section gives an overview of clusters of semantic content found in the frequently occurring class pairs. These semantic notions will be mentioned in italics and exemplified. All pairs except the strongly semantically specialized **p/k** class pair (trees and shrubs) contain items with miscellaneous semantics as well - examples of such items are provided also. Some special attention is given to nouns denoting people (including ethnonyms), animals, body parts,

and abstract nouns. The \emptyset/\mathbf{n} class pair lacks semantic clustering. Most of its members are loans, assigned to this pair on phonological grounds. The semantic clusters found in the Lumun pairs have clear similarities with those observed in Acheron (Norton 2000).

p/∅

people, miscellaneous

The pair contains several nouns denoting people, including generic **pul/ul** ‘person’ and the ethnonyms for the Lumun (**parrô/arrô**) and some neighbouring Nuba peoples (**pappó/appó** ‘Tocho’, **pəɾemê/əɾemê** ‘Acheron’). Other words for people in this class pair include: **puɾîṭ/uɾîṭ** ‘young man’, **puɕöŋ/uɕöŋ** ‘barren woman’, **pənân/enân** ‘adult woman without children’, **piak/iak** ‘orphan, poor person’, **pəɾan/əɾan** ‘name sharer’, **paɾəṭan/aɾəṭan** ‘wealthy person’, **pamít/amít** ‘traditional healer’, **piŋŋîṭ/iŋŋîṭ** ‘singer/composer’, **puɾokô/urukô** ‘friend’, **pəɾe/əɾe** ‘husband’, **parí/arí** ‘wife’, **puɾokôn/urukôn** ‘co-wife’. Kinship terms have the persona prefix **ɔ-** and form plurals through a process of suffixation: they are not members of a class pair, see section 4.10. The vocatives of these nouns, however, lack the **ɔ-**prefix and are in most cases **p-**initial.

The pair includes the general word for ‘thing’ **papu/apu**, which denotes objects but can also be used for animals, plants and fruits. It further contains several words for animals, including some generic animal terms: **papê/apê** ‘fish’, **puɾupê/uɾupê** ‘bird’, **paun/aun** ‘rat’ and **piŋil/iŋil** ‘snake’. Other animals include **pəɾəpêl/əɾəpêl** ‘ape (gorilla?)’, **pəlla/əlla** ‘cat’, **piṃən/iṃən** ‘porcupine’, **pəɾút/əɾút** ‘ostrich’, **pəcáŋ/əcáŋ** ‘lizard (sp.)’, **piɾimampíɾiman/iɾimaníɾiman** ‘spider’, **paɾák/aɾák** ‘fly’, some further insects and also some species of birds.

The class pair **p/∅** contains the (central) body parts **pəɾé/eré** ‘chest’ and **pəɾút/əɾút** ‘waist’. It also contains **puɾəṭôt/urəṭôt** ‘area between the buttocks’. It further has some miscellaneous items such as **pəɾit/ərit** ‘granary’, **pərrək/ərrək** ‘chair’, **pakkuk/akkuk** ‘hiccup’, **pərrən/ərrən** ‘stick (of shovel)’, **pűŋ/űŋ** ‘storage rack’, **pəṭén/əṭén**

‘k.o. basket’, **parantán/arantán** ‘k.o. calabash’, **paṭəkkara/aṭəkkara** ‘k.o. pumpkin’, **pərémpórêṇ/əréṇórêṇ** ‘lyre’ and **pəkkári/əkkári** ‘sorghum (sp.)’.

p/k

trees and shrubs

The class pair **p/k** is semantically strongly specialized. All words but one refer to species of woody plants (trees, shrubs) and it has the generic word for ‘tree’ **píra/kíra**. Some examples of species of trees and bushes are: **pəɾə/kəɾə** ‘tree (sp.)’, **pəɾəmó/kəɾəmó** ‘tree (sp.)’, **pakek/kakek** ‘bush (sp., poisonous, with bright pink flowers)’. Some more examples are given in 4.3.6. The only word in this pair with a somewhat different meaning is **puá/kuá** ‘stick, cane (used for beating)’, denoting an item cut from a shrub. Virtually all attested trees and shrubs come in this class. One tree, **p-erö**, can have its plural not only in the **k**-class but also in the **ṭ**-class (**k-erö** or **ṭ-erö**).

c/k

body parts

This class pair has only eleven members. Six denote body parts: **carək/kərək** ‘belly, stomach’, **çimmik/kimmik** ‘breast’, **cəmən/kəmən** ‘arm’, **cələk/kələk** ‘neck’, **çijit/kijit** ‘tooth’, **çit/kit** ‘eye’. The pair also contains **cəna/kəna** ‘grinding table’, **cé/ké** ‘stone for grinding’, and **cəruk/kəruk** (sometimes **cəruk/kəruk**) ‘opening, hole’. Similar to Acheron (Norton 2000), the word ‘opening, hole’ concerns openings or holes in structures such as a wall or a cloth, or in the ear, nose or lip, but not holes in the ground. The variant **cəruk** is used in the expression that refers to the anus: **cəruk cə-porəṭot**, lit. ‘hole of the area between the buttocks’). The pair furthermore has **cintāṇ/ kintāṇ** ‘bird(sp.)’ and **culó/kuló** ‘part of sorghum stock (without top) with sweet taste (like sugar cane)’.

c/m

round or roundish items, sometimes in combination with being numerous, miscellaneous

Round or roundish items include **cîn/mîn** ‘egg’, **calle/malle** ‘ball’, **ciriâ/miriâ** ‘bracelet’, **compóranj/mompóranj** ‘ring in the top of the roof’, **coṛokul/moṛokul** ‘gathering of people in a circle’, **cijṇki/mijṇki** ‘sun’, **cəllakkér/məllakkér** ‘skeleton of the roof’, **coṛol/moṛol** ‘big stone, rock’, **cattak/mattak** ‘middle size stone’. The general term ‘stone’ has its plural in the **m**-class, but the singular comes in the **p**-class (**pəṭək/məṭək**). Some round(ish) calabashes are found in this pair (**cakkəlók/makkəlók**, **cakkôṇ/makkôṇ**, **cattak/mattak**), but also a type of calabash with a long neck: **coṛu/moṛu**. This word is also used for ‘bottle’. The pair includes (roundish) fruits and seeds, and food stuffs that consist of numerous roundish items such as **cîl/mîl** ‘grain of sorghum’, **cəmart/mart** ‘bean’ (irregular pair, see 4.3.2, 4.3.4), **cəkal/məkal** ‘sesame’, **cəre/məre** ‘seed as stored for the next season’. It also has some edible plants and some kinds of roots. A non-food item which shares the notion of being roundish and numerous is **cəṭət/məṭət** ‘star, hail stone’.

Several body parts occur in this class pair, not all of them (clearly) sharing the property of roundness. They include **cá/má** ‘head’, **cikít/məkít** ‘heart’, **cəken/məken** ‘lower back’, **coṛê/moṛê** ‘buttock’, **carró/marró** ‘kidney’, **cómón/mómón** ‘womb’, **cijṛi/mijṛi** ‘vagina’, **coṛok/moṛok** ‘penis’, **cómian/mómian** ‘bone (generic)’, **cəṛěṇ/meṛěṇ** ‘chest bone’, **cijṇâ/mijṇâ** ‘shoulder blade’, **cəṭṭi/məṭṭi** ‘pelvic joint’, **capəröt/mapəröt** ‘knee cap’, **cəṛellé/məṛellé** ‘hip’, **cîn/mîn** ‘thigh’, **cəṛollän/məṛollän** ‘calf’, **caún/maún** ‘finger’.

This class pair contains some ethnonyms and nouns for people: **coṭṭô/muṭṭô** ‘Arab’, **cəṇké/məṇké** ‘Dinka’, **coṛumâ/moṛumâ** ‘person without a spouse’, **cəkəntă/məkəntă** ‘supporting girl (in initiation ceremonies)’. It also has some animals: some birds, some rat species, some insects, **compóranj/mompóranj** ‘monkey (sp.)’, **cipâ/mipâ** ‘feline (sp., lynx?)’ and **cimənterí/mimənterí** ‘hedgehog’. It also has the word for the needles of the hedgehog: **cərrâ/mərrâ**.

Miscellaneous items include: **cəṛṇj/məṛṇj** ‘mountain’, **caṛi/maṛi** ‘day, time’, **cəṛəntōṇj/məṛəntōṇj** ‘vertical pole in the roof’, and **cəpôk/məpôk** ‘arrow’.

ṭ/l

elongated objects, miscellaneous

Single **ṭ**-class: *disgusting things* (in some cases **ṭ/l** pair), *abstractions* (*relations between people, behaviour*)

The pair contains several words for elongated objects or items such as **ṭərək/lərək** ‘rope’, **ṭupərǔ/lupərǔ** ‘valley’, **ṭompıl/lompıl** ‘rainbow’, **ṭəka/ləka** ‘root (generic term), muscle’, **ṭəntərə/ləntərə** ‘type of calabash with a long neck’, **ṭıpıl/lıpıl** ‘horn (body part of animal), **ṭıpıl/lıpıl** ‘horn (musical instrument)’.

Body parts found here include **ṭollōŋ/lollōŋ** ‘throat’, **ṭurɛ/lurɛ** ‘tongue’, **ṭəŋket/ləŋket** ‘erected penis’, **ṭuttê/loṭtê** ‘navel, umbilical cord’, **ṭaṛumón/lạṛumón** ‘chin’, **ṭəŋkwe/ləŋkwe** ‘liver’, and **ṭən/lən** ‘mouth, word’. An elongated shape is not evident in all of them.

Animals include some with an elongated shape such as **ṭollōr/lollōr** ‘mudfish (sp.)’ (dangerous, potentially lethal animal, can be eaten) and **ṭollərək/lollərək** ‘lizard (sp., with stripes)’, but lizard species are also found in other class pairs. The pair contains several animals where elongated shape does not seem to play a role, including: **ṭəŋkwat/ləŋkwat** ‘sheep’, **ṭəróma/ləróma** ‘ram’, **ṭəpa/ləpa** ‘lion’ **ṭakkəṛutṭakkəṛok/lakkəṛullakkəṛok** ‘butterfly’, **ṭamóṭṭe/ṭamóṭṭe** ‘bat (sp.)’, **ṭakəṛók/lakəṛók** ‘chicken’, **ṭəkkəṭak/ləkkəṭak** ‘rooster’, **ṭök/lök** ‘dog’, **ṭuoḷí/luoḷí** ‘hyena (?, sp.)³¹.

The class pair has some nouns for people: **ṭəṃəccə/ləṃəccə** ‘old man’, **ṭəṃəṛé/ləṃəṛé** ‘transvestite’ and **ṭaṛə/laṛə** ‘one person of twins/twins’.

Miscellaneous items include **ṭík/lík** ‘fire’, **ṭipa/lipa** ‘marriage’, **ṭopot/lopot** ‘year’, **ṭərák/lərák** ‘war’, **ṭorupă /lorupă** ‘mixture of flour and water left to ferment (for the preparation of beer)’,

³¹ Possibly a hyena species, but less clearly so than **ŋaŋkôr**, which was described as a dog-like scavenger, spotted and with short hind legs.

ṭapəṭṭínak/lapəṭṭínak ‘mixture of water and ground groundnuts, resulting from cleaning the grinding table’, **ṭıran/lıran** ‘flour (k.o.)’.

Some words in the **ṭ**-class refer to ‘slimy, disgusting things’. At least some of them have sound symbolic value. **ṭəller** ‘egg yolk, chicken shit’ and **ṭəllâ** ‘slime from the lungs, lung disease’ (words lacking a singular/plural opposition) were described as **ṭəll** ‘yuck!, ich!’, an ideophonic word combined with a facial expression expressing a feeling of disgust. Other words referring to ‘slimy, disgusting things’ and involving long **l** are **ṭollâ** ‘messed-up food, food eaten in a dirty way’ and the earlier mentioned mudfish **ṭollör/lollör**. Though eaten and appreciated as a delicacy by some, many regard it as disgusting. Some slimy, disgusting things involve a rhotic sound: **ṭorrôt** ‘rotten smell’, **ṭırôt** ‘mould’, **ṭuṭör/luṭör** ‘stomach content’.

Apart from the ‘disgusting items’, there are some further (non-derived) unpaired nouns in the **ṭ**-class. Some of these refer to behaviour and emotions. Examples: **ṭokkĩ** ‘hiding in ambush’, **ṭarər** ‘behaviour and occupations associated with men’, **ṭərīt** ‘joy’, **ṭukonkôn** ‘trouble making’, **ṭaləkkıkık** ‘dodging behaviour’, **ṭarók** ‘working party of grown up people’, **ṭatóma** ‘ritual, traditional procedure’, **ṭokukkur** ‘dirt on top of water’.

The **ṭ**-class also contains some nouns that bear a relationship to kinship terms with the persona prefix (see 4.10). These nouns refer to the type of relationship or to people standing in a type of relationship, not to specific individuals. An example is **ṭəkí** ‘grandparent and grandchild (i.e. kind of relationship), ancestry, descendancy’. Further examples are given in 4.3.6. These nouns are basically unpaired, but may allow for the formation of a singular(!) in the **p**-class.³²

Verbs allow for the derivation of a verbal noun in the **ṭ**-class, as do several adjectives (see 4.6.1 and 4.6.3). Such nouns are unpaired.

³² See also Smits (2012).

t/n

grasses and wiry materials, miscellaneous

The pair contains the generic term **taṭa/naṭa** ‘leaf’ and a few grass species. It also has some words that relate to (wiry) plant materials: **təmmâk/nəmmâk** ‘bark’, **tuṅkwaṅ/nuṅkwaṅ** ‘dress made of bark’, **tarəṭta/narəṭta** ‘remaining fibres of sorghum (traditionally used for cleaning calabashes)’, **tiççît/nicçît** ‘husk of sesame’, **tṛca/nṛca** ‘(heap of) plant waste’, **təṅṅák/nəṅṅák** ‘fibres for chewing (of sugarcane or tobacco), also: ‘honeycomb’, **tuṇê/nuṇê** ‘bird’s nest’, **tuttû/nuttû** ‘dung’, **tə mama/nə mama** ‘material inside of a pumpkin’.

Some items seem to share a notion of hollow space: **tuṇú/nuṇú** ‘hole in the ground, grave’, **tṛṅ/nṛṅ** ‘space under the granary’.

Body parts include **təttək/nəttək** ‘placenta’, **teṛimak/neṛimak** ‘tooth gum’, **təmaṭé/nəmaṭé** ‘upper part of the foot’.

Terms for people are not attested in this pair. Animals found here include **tuttəruk/nuttəruk** ‘pig’, **təṅək/nəṅək** ‘worm (generic)’, **təlləón/nəlləón** ‘caterpillar (sp.)’, **təllapōk/nəllapōk** ‘frog (generic)’, **taṅkeṛəṅ/naṅkeṛəṅ** frog (sp.), **teṅki/neṅki** ‘eagle’, **təṛṛi/nəṛṛi** ‘cobra’, **təṛpă/nəṛpă** ‘lizard (sp.)’, **təmot/nəmot** ‘rat (sp.)’ and **takkontákkəṅ/nakkonnákkəṅ** ‘mosquito’.

Abstract nouns include **təṛê/nəṛê** ‘fear’, **təṛ/nəṛ** ‘appetite’, **təṛě/nəṛě** ‘stinginess’, **təmət/nəmət** ‘sexual desire’. **tṛ** ‘hunger, period(s) of hunger’ is an unpaired noun in the t-class.

Other words include **tuṛəṭ/nuṛəṭ** ‘upright edge of the grinding table’, **tutṭe/nuṭṭe** ‘cloud’, **tué/nué** ‘stream, river’, **tók/nók** ‘waterplace’, **tuṇet/nuṇet** ‘terrace (in agriculture)’, **təṛənék/nəṛənék** ‘shade’, **təme/nəme** ‘hook’, **tukia/nukia** ‘head pad (for carrying heavy loads on the head)’.

Ø/n

loans

This class pair contains mainly loans from Arabic that have been borrowed together with the definite article **al-** (see section 4.9).

Two items are probably loans from Tira: **ilî/nîlî** ‘leader’ and **urîl/norîl** ‘deaf person’. Tira has **eli/neli** ‘chief’ and the adjective **-urûril** ‘deaf, dumb (Schadeberg 2009, p. 109). Three further items in this pair are **irîlla/nirîlla** ‘person with both legs paralysed’, **umaṭṭân/nomaṭṭân** ‘elephant’ and **uren/nuren** ‘necklace’. They may be borrowings as well.

k/Ø

tools and instruments, language names, miscellaneous

Language names all come in this pair (see section 4.3.6). It has several tools and instruments including **kirék/irék** ‘hoe’, **kéré/éré** ‘tool for the removal of sorghum stocks’, **kaṭók/aṭók** ‘spear’, **kəṭṭāṭāṭ /əṭṭāṭāṭ** ‘knife’, **kappəṭṭi/appəṭṭi** ‘spoon’, **kummok/ummok** ‘pot’, **kapí/apí** ‘cooking pot’.

Body parts include **kucúl/ucúl** ‘back’, **kunú/unú** ‘ear’, **kɪncɛ/ɪncɛ** ‘nose’, **kuṭṭōt/utṭōt** ‘lip’, **kɪcɔ/ɪcɔ** ‘pubic area’, **kuŋku/uŋku** ‘knee’, **kuɲit/uɲit** ‘rib’, **kəɾɪkɪ/əɾɪkɪ** ‘upper arm’. Some animal body parts: **kuṛəccô/urəccô** ‘wing’, **kuṭṭɪk/utṭɪk** ‘tail’.

Animals tend to be lower species, including some insects for example **kara/ara** ‘tick’ and **kéré/éré** ‘bedbug’. The pair also includes **kapəṛɛntɔŋ/apəṛɛntɔŋ** ‘lizard (sp.)’, **kunû/unû** ‘scorpion’, **kəṛəmekku/əṛəmekku** ‘bat (sp.)’, **kəṛṭl/əṛṭl** ‘tortoise’, **kīt/īt** ‘wild chicken’.

Nouns for people are **kəllân/əllân** ‘old woman’, **kurê/urê** ‘left-handed person’ (also ‘left side’), **kɪcɔk/ɪcɔk** ‘person with one functioning eye’, **kɪmɪcɔ/ɪmɪcɔ** ‘person with one functioning leg’.

Food items include **kappentína/appentína** ‘groundnut’, **kepo/epo** ‘mushroom’, **kepin/epin** ‘edible plant (generic)’.

Miscellaneous items include **kərimī/ərimī** ‘large, flat stone’, **karran/arran** ‘wall’, **kəré/əré** ‘cloth’, **kapık/apık** ‘rain, God’, **kupé/upé** ‘song’, **kuṛâ/urâ** ‘open space for dancing, dancing party’.

kw/Ø and **kw/w**

miscellaneous, some body parts, some insects

The nouns in this pair were listed in section 4.3.1. Body parts are **kwăn/wăn** ‘strand of human hair’, **kwəṛɔl/əṛɔl** ‘cheek’ and **kwame/ame** ‘tendon’. Two insects are found in this pair: **kwəlílín/alílín** ‘centipede’ and **kwəṛék/əṛék** ‘black ant’. It also has the moon **kwanôk/(w)anôk**. No language names or nouns referring to persons are attested here.

ŋ/ɲ

liquids, young or small animals, small-sized items, intangibles, miscellaneous

Most liquids are found here: **ŋəṛí/ɲəṛí** ‘water’, **ŋôn/ɲôn** ‘dew’, **ŋacók/ɲacók** ‘mud’, bodily fluids such as **ŋuccôk/ɲuccôk** (also **ɲiccôk/ɲiccôk**) ‘blood’, **ŋottetta/ɲottetta** ‘sweat’, **ŋaé/ɲaé** ‘urine’, **ŋipərik/ɲipərik** ‘diarrhea’, **ŋök/ɲök** ‘saliva’, **ŋimmik/ɲimmik** ‘human milk’, and liquid food and beverages such as **ŋuí/ɲuí** ‘milk’, **ŋəpak/ɲəpak** ‘beer’, **ŋucol/ɲucol** ‘sauce’, **ŋəré/ɲəré** ‘honey’, **ŋaák/ɲaák** ‘oil’ and **ŋeɹía/ɲeɹía** ‘k.o. watery root (eaten raw)’. The pair contains **ŋurû/ɲurû** ‘asida’, the stiff sorghum porridge that constitutes the local staple food, and also **ŋatəṛê/ɲatəṛê** ‘brain’.

Several words, particularly with an initial sequence **ŋa-** (plural **ɲa-**), convey a notion of smallness. There is no doubt a connection to the diminutive morpheme **ŋa-** (see 4.5.1), but the words listed below lack a corresponding noun without **ŋa**.

ḡarəkkuk/ḡarəkkuk ³³	‘baby, young child’
ḡaṭuṛík/ḡaṭuṛík, ḡarəṭuṛík/ḡarəṭuṛík	‘piglet (with stripes)’
ḡalı/ḡalı	‘fish (sp., small size)’
ḡapəri/ḡapəri	‘ant (sp., small size)’
ḡarəkəttōḡ/ḡarəkəttōḡ	‘ant (sp., small size)’
ḡaṛəkâḡ/ḡaṛəkâḡ	‘bird (sp., small size)’
ḡaṭṭəṭṭápe/ḡaṭṭəṭṭápe	‘bird (sp., small size)’
ḡacəkkík/ḡacəkkík	‘lizard (sp., small size)’
ḡaṭṭəkkōl/ḡaṭṭəkkōl	‘k.o. calabash (small size)’
ḡaləntūḡ/ḡaləntūḡ	‘k.o. basket (small size)’
ḡaləmpərara/ḡaləmpərara	‘k.o. axe (small size)’
ḡalləcácca/ḡalləcácca	‘magician’s stick (short)’

Some words for young animals do not have an initial sequence **ḡa/ḡa**:

ḡumón/ḡumón	‘young goat’
ḡumpəṛtōḡ/ḡumpəṛtōḡ	‘calf at the stage of sucking’

Other animals in the **ḡ/ḡ** class pair (not all of them small) include: **ḡorăḡ/ḡorăḡ** ‘rat (sp.)’, **ḡaṭəṛəpê/ḡaṭəṛəpê** ‘rabbit’, **ḡorak/ḡorak** ‘monkey (sp.)’, **ḡaṅkôṛ/ḡaṅkôṛ** ‘hyena’ (sp., spotted), **ḡittipit/ḡittipit** ‘billy goat’, **ḡeṛḡkâ/ḡeṛḡkâ** ‘donkey’, **ḡura/ḡura** ‘bull’. Small-sized animals are also found in other class pairs.

The pair also has intangible/abstract nouns such as **ḡore/ḡore** ‘laziness’, **ḡəre/?ḡəre** ‘work’, **ḡorě/ḡorě** ‘joking, mockery’, **ḡica/ḡica** ‘dance (generic term)’, **ḡəme/?ḡəme** ‘cry, tear, sound (of animal)’, **ḡaramâ/ḡaramâ** ‘prayer’, **ḡáppə/ḡáppə** ‘hunt (of one person with dog or of small party)’³⁴ and the unpaired noun **ḡilî** ‘leadership’.

Miscellaneous items are relatively few in this pair, but include **ḡuṛu/ḡuṛu** ‘dirt’, **ḡentəra/ḡentəra** ‘drum’, **ḡumat/ḡumat** ‘thorny

³³ According to JS not an originally Lumun word.

³⁴ **ḡáppə/ḡáppə**, with its unusual tone pattern, may be borrowed from Tira, which has abstract nouns in the **ḡ**-class and a verb **apə** ‘take’ (Schadeberg 2009, p. 21, 112).

bush', **ɲomorra/ɲomorra** 'arm shield held, for protecting arm and head'.

Singular w and singular Ø

Edible animals

One more semantic cluster is worth mentioning, though the nouns are few, divided over the singular **w** and **Ø** classes, and have (suppletive) plurals in different classes. It concerns wild and domestic edible animals. Four of them have a plural in the **k**-class:

ɪmɪt/ɪcɔk 'goat/-s'
ɔmatɔn/nomatɔn 'elephant/-s'
ɪkɛ/kɪkɛ 'giraffe/-s'
ɔpá/kəpá 'piece of meat, animal hunted for meat/meat, game'
waɪ/kɪɛ 'cow/-s'
wallɪr, allɪr/kallɪr 'gazelle/-s'

This small group is interesting in view of Schadeberg's (1981b, p. 119) reconstruction of the items 'cow', 'goat' and 'meat' in a proto-Talodi class pair ***w/*g**, and his remark that Stevenson's (1957, p. 134-135) data suggest that there were still other (edible) animals in this class pair. Norton (2000) lists some cognate (edible) animals in the class pairs **w/g** and **w/n** of Acheron.

4.3.6. Class prefixes as derivational tools

Trees or shrubs and their fruits

Virtually all trees occur in the class pair **p/k**. Their fruits have the same root, but go to different noun classes. Many occur in the pair **c/m**, others in the pair **k/Ø** (the plural of the tree and the singular of the fruit are thus homonyms). One fruit comes in the pair **t/l** and one in **t/n**. The fruits in the class pair **c/m** are typically round or roundish, the one in the pair **t/l** has a longitudinal shape. The fruits in the pair **k/Ø** do not seem to share specific properties. The pair contains fruits that are small and numerous, but also bigger ones.

<i>tree (or shrub or woody vine)</i> ³⁵	<i>fruit</i>
pəɾɔt/kəɾɔt ‘baobab’	cəɾɔt/məɾɔt
pɔpô/kɔpô ‘tree (sp.)’	cɔpô/mɔpô
pəɾɔmpôŋ/kəɾɔmpôŋ ‘vine (sp.)’	cəɾɔmpôŋ/məɾɔmpôŋ
pɪtɪŋkɪl/kɪtɪŋkɪl ‘tree (sp.)’	cɪtɪŋkɪl/mɪtɪŋkɪl
pərut/kərut ‘tree (sp.)’	cərut/mərut
paman/kaman ‘tree (sp.)’	caman/maman
paí/kaí ‘tamarind’	ɬaí/laí
parəɬɛn/karəɬɛn ‘tree (sp.)’	karəɬɛn/arəɬɛn
punnûr/kunnûr ‘tree (sp.)’	kunnûr/unnûr
pɪçɪt/kɪçɪt ‘tree (sp.)’	kɪçɪt/ɪçɪt
puá/kuá ‘tree (sp.)’	kuá/uá
puɾɔpɔ/kuɾɔpɔ ‘tree (sp.)’	tuɾɔpɔ/nuɾɔpɔ

In the following case the word for the (edible) leaf has the same root as the word for the tree. The word for the leaf lacks a singular/plural opposition:

<i>tree</i>	<i>leaf</i>
pəɾɪât/kəɾɪât ‘tree (sp.)’	ɬəɾɪât

Another case in which tree (and fruit) and leaf are clearly related is the following:

pəɾɔt/kəɾɔt ‘baobab tree’	kɔɾɔt
----------------------------------	--------------

kɔɾɔt ‘leaf, leaves of baobab’ suggests a development from **kw-əɾɔt* or **kw-ɔɾɔt*.³⁶

Sometimes the word for the tree is used when reference is made to the whole of the fruits that are still on the tree, as in the second

³⁵ Some species that are translated as ‘tree (sp.)’ may rather be shrubs.

³⁶ Sequences **kwə** are not attested. A sequence **kwə** can alternatively be pronounced as **ku**.

example below. In the first example, in which the word for the fruit is used, reference is made to a specific fruit.

caman c-ṵṛe ána c-ṵkkakṵ
 caman_fruit C-red and C-be_drunk:INCOMPL

the caman-fruit is ripe and can be eaten

paman p-ṵṛe ána p-ṵkkakṵ
 paman_tree C-red and C-be_drunk:INCOMPL

the fruits of the paman-tree are ripe and can be eaten

People and abstractions in the ṭ-class

Some nouns that refer to people (mostly but not exclusively in the **p/Ø** class pair), and abstract nouns in the **ṭ**-class share the same roots. These abstract nouns are unpaired. Whether or not there is an abstraction next to a paired noun that refers to a kind of person is lexically determined. Attested cases:

ṛé/ṇṛé, ṇṛé ‘adolescent girl’
ṭṛé ‘behaviour and occupations associated with girls’
 (i.e. making oneself pretty, making one’s room look nice, etc.)

parí/arí ‘wife’
ṭarí ‘behaviour and occupations associated with women’
 (i.e. keeping the house clean, cooking food, etc.)

pamít/amít ‘traditional healer’
ṭamít ‘traditional healing’

paṛṭan/aṛṭan ‘rich person’
ṭaṛṭan ‘wealth’

puṛukṵ/ṁṛukṵ ‘friend’
ṭuṛukṵ ‘friendship’

ɸrak/ɪak	‘orphan, poor person’
ɸrak	‘suffering’

There are also cases of kinship and relational nouns that share their root with an abstract noun. Kinship and relational terms have the persona prefix **ɸ**- when denoting specific persons (unless in the vocative), and form plurals through suffixation instead of through change of noun class (see 4.10). In several kinship and relational nouns the class prefix **p** can be recognized. The same roots with the **ɸ**-prefix (instead of the **p**-prefix) refer to the kind of relationship. Nouns with the **ɸ**-prefix do not have the persona prefix **ɸ**-.

ɸəkí	‘grandparent and grandchild (i.e. kind of relationship in which people stand to each other), ancestry, descendance’
ɸ-pəkí (PL ɸ-pəkí-ɸn)	‘grandparent, grandchild, ancestor, descendant (i.e. a specific person)’

ɸɸé	‘in-laws of different generation (kind of relationship)’
ɸ-pɸé (PL ɸ-pɸé-ɸn)	‘in-law of different generation (specific person)’

ɸrɛn	‘maternal uncle and nephew or niece of maternal uncle (kind of relationship)’ ³⁷
ɸrɛn	‘maternal uncle, nephew or niece of maternal uncle (specific person)’

ɸɸɪn	‘in-laws of same generation (kind of relationship)’
ɸɸɪn	‘in-law of same generation (specific person)’

An example follows here with a kinship noun that refers to a specific person, then an example with the noun that refers to the relationship:

³⁷ In this case and the next, the difference in tone between the nouns in the **ɸ**-class and the **ɸ**-initial kinship terms reveal that the persona prefix **ɸ**, which brings a high tone, is present in the nouns denoting a specific person but absent from the noun denoting the relationship. The shared roots have an initial **ɸ** (as is apparent from the vocative forms) and low tones.

ᵛ-kín **ᵛ-pəkɪ** **p-ɪŋ-ŋôn**
 PERS-3A PERS-grandparent C-POSS1-PL

they are my grandparents

ᵛ-kín **ᵗəkí**
 PERS-3A grandparent_and_grandchild

they are grandparent and grandchild to each other

Peoples and languages

Languages are productively derived in the **k**-class, irrespective of the class pair of the ethnonym. The autonym of the Lumun comes in the **p/Ø** class pair, as do the ethnonyms for the immediate and linguistically closely related neighbours Tocho, Acheron and Torona. Other peoples come in other class pairs.

<i>person / people</i>	<i>language</i>	
parrô/arrô	karrô	‘Lumun, mother tongue’
	karrú k-árrô	‘mother tongue of the Lumun people’
pappó/appó	kappó	‘Tocho’
pəɽemê/əɽemê	kəɽemê	‘Acheron’
paɽɔnɔ/aɽɔnɔ	kaɽɔnɔ	‘Torona’
pəɽá/məɽá	kəɽá	‘Tira Lumun and Tira’
pəmpərən/ləmpərən	kəmpərən	‘Moro’
uᵗᵗuɽu/luᵗᵗuɽu	kuᵗᵗuɽu	‘Otoro’
pakkí/pakkí	kakkí	‘Nuba peoples south and south-west of the Lumun, across the plain (amongst others Dagik, Katcha, Krongo)’
ceŋké/məŋké	keŋké	‘Dinka’
cuᵗᵗô/muᵗᵗô	kuᵗᵗô	‘Arab Sudanese’

Other nominal roots occurring in more than one singular/plural pair, or in a singular/plural pair and as unpaired noun

Further examples of roots that occur in noun classes that change the meaning of the word in a way that is not number-related follow here.

c̥imm̥ik/k̥imm̥ik	‘breast’
ŋjimm̥ik/ŋjimm̥ik	‘human milk’
ṭaák/laák	‘sesame paste’ (after the oil has been pressed out)
ŋaák/ŋaák	‘oil/amounts, kinds of oil’ (not necessarily sesame oil)
ilī/nīlī	‘leader’
ŋlī	‘leadership’
kupú/úpú	‘hole in rock where water gathers’
tupú/nupú	‘hole in the ground, grave’
cəpú/mupú	‘hole in the ground (not big) to keep a small child safely in place, or for a large calabash of beer to stay upright’
capú	‘ground’
kapú/apú	‘small hole for planting the sorghum’
p̥ira/k̥ira	‘tree’
kw̥ira/ira, w̥ira	‘small piece of wood or grass’
kucúk	‘smoke’
mucúk	‘ashes’
taṭa/naṭa	‘leaf (generic term)’
kw̥aṭa	‘edible leaves of beans’
p̥ər̥imp̥ər̥in/k̥ər̥in̥k̥ər̥in	‘tree (sp.)’
c̥ər̥in̥c̥ər̥in/m̥ər̥imm̥ər̥in	‘fruit of <i>p̥ər̥imp̥ər̥in</i> -tree’
k̥ər̥in̥k̥ər̥in/ər̥in̥ər̥in	‘bell of seeds of the <i>c̥ər̥in̥c̥ər̥in</i> -fruit’

cəmarâŋ	‘free fight for competition’
kəmarâŋ/əmarâŋ	‘shield’
ṭəróma/ləróma	‘ram’
ŋəróma/ŋəróma	‘young ram’

Replacing the original noun class prefix of an animal term by the class prefix **ŋ-**, as in the example above, is not a regular way of diminutive formation. Instead, there are diminutive morphemes **ŋa-/ŋa-** and **ŋaŋa-/ŋaŋa-** which can be applied productively (see 4.5.1). Nevertheless, it seems that nouns denoting animals can be assigned to the **ŋ**-class in a creative way. In the sentence below, which is from a story, the animal character **kərɔl** ‘tortoise’ is referred to as **ŋərɔl**, which is not a regular word for ‘small tortoise’. The **ŋ**-class gives a flavour to the word here that is related to the notion of smallness, but expresses something like ‘nasty little tortoise’. The speaker in the example is a malicious creature who is after the tortoise. He asks the animals to drink all the water from the stream so that he can catch the tortoise, who is in the water.

n-ánt-át-ikkɨn-m				ŋərɨ
2A-can:DEPINCOMPL-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-drink_for:DEPINCOMPL-O1				water
ákka	ŋərɔl	ŋ-ərɛk	ŋ-apɔt.é	cənɛ
that	little_tortoise	C-some	C-fall_at:COMPL	here

please come and drink the water for me, because some nasty little tortoise has fallen here (App. IV, 138-139)

A singular noun which has a variant in another noun class is **cakkəlɔk** ‘calabash (k.o.)’. There is only one plural:

cakkəlɔk, pakkəlɔk/makkəlɔk ‘calabash (k.o.)’

4.4. Contracted forms with gemination

In some individual cases, nouns can occur in a changed phonological shape when preceded by one of the prepositional proclitics **ɪ-** ‘in’, **nɔ-** ‘on’, **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’ or **ɬɔ-** ‘at’, or the connexive **C-ɔ** ‘of’. In isolation these nouns have the shape (C₁)V₁C₂V₂(C₃). In most cases both C₁ and

C₂ are obstruents. V₁ is deleted after ɪ-, nɔ-, tɔ-, ʔɔ- and c-ɔ-, while C₁ and C₂ form a geminated consonant at the place of articulation of C₂ (recall that the intervocalic allophone of t is r). C₂ geminates also if C₁ is absent. The result is thus CLITIC-C₂C₂V₂(C₃).

The examples with prepositional proclitics presented below were found in texts or obtained through elicitation. Note that in some cases which involve a low-toned noun, a rising tone results.

tɔpú ‘hole in the ground, grave’	ɪ-ppú, nɔ-ppú, ʔɔ-ppú
tɔpən ‘room’	nɔ-ppən
pəʔək ‘stone’	ɪ-ʔʔək, nɔ-ʔʔək
kuʔək ‘fenced place for livestock’	ɪ-ʔʔək, tɛ-ʔʔək ³⁸
pərit ‘granary’	ɪ-ttīt, nɔ-ttīt, ʔɔ-ttīt
kəɾək ‘farming field’	ɪ-ttək
kucúl ‘back’	ɪ-ccúl, nɔ-ccúl, ʔɔ-ccúl, ʔɔ-ccúl
kucú ‘shed’	ɪ-ccú, nɔ-ccú, ʔɔ-ccú
ukún ‘hand, forearm’	ɪ-kkún, nɔ-kkún, ʔɔ-kkún
ukul ‘child’	ɪ-kkól, nɔ-kkól, ʔɔ-kkól

However, if C₁ is k and C₂ is p, the geminate adopts the place of articulation of C₁ (CLITIC-C₁C₁V₂(C₃)). In the third example, C₂ p is reflected in the labialized articulation of the velar geminate:

kupú ‘hole in rock where water gathers’	ɪ-kkú, nɔ-kkú, ʔɔ-kkú
kupú ‘deep crack in rock’	ɪ-kkú, nɔ-kkú, ʔɔ-kkú
kəpən ‘farming field’	ɪ-kkwên, nɔ-kkwên, ʔɔ-kkwên

There is also a form tɔpên, which probably derives from tɔ + əpən instead of from tɔ + kəpən, though —synchronically— it does not convey a notion of plurality of the fields.

If C₁ is a nasal, a nasal and stop sequence results at the place of articulation of C₂, but not when C₁ is ŋ and C₂ is p. In that case the place of articulation of C₁ is adopted, retaining the labialized articulation of p (third example below):

³⁸ tɔ is realized here as tɛ.

məṭé ‘sleep’	ɪ-nṭé
ŋucul ‘sauce’	ɪ-ɲcöl
ŋəpak ‘beer’	ɪ-ŋkwăk

One case has a nasal (**m**) at C2. Like C1 **ŋ** – C2 **p**, C1 **k** – C2 **m** results in **ŋkw**:

kəməɪ ‘hunting party’	ɪ-ŋkwêɪ
------------------------------	----------------

Finally, there is a comparable case of gemination (+ labialization) of a CV noun: **ɪ**- ‘in’ + **ka** ‘body’ > **ɪkkwâ** ‘in the body’. This change, however, only occurs with proclitic **ɪ**-, not with any other prepositional proclitic, nor with the connexive.

In most cases, regular forms of the combinations listed above are possible as well, but less commonly used. In some cases, the form with gemination and the regular form have different meanings. Examples of this are given in 16.3.1 and 16.3.2 (dealing with the PPCs **ɪ**- ‘in’ and **nɔ**- ‘on’). In other cases there is no difference, as for example in:

tɔ-ccúl	‘between the shoulder blades’
tɔ-kucúl	‘between the shoulder blades’
ɪ-kkú	‘in the hole in the rock where water gathers’
ɪ-kupú	‘in the hole in the rock where water gathers’

4.5. Complex nouns

4.5.1. Diminutive nouns

Diminutives are derived by means of attachment of the SG/PL morphemes **ŋa-/ɲa-** or **ŋaŋa-/ɲaɲa-** before the singular or plural noun. The diminutive prefixes are typically used with animals to denote young animals, but are also applied for small versions of objects. The reduplicated prefix expresses a stronger notion of being young and/or small than **ŋa-/ɲa-**. Some examples:

ηα-τάρóμα/ηα-λάρóμα, ηαηα-τάρóμα/ηαηα-λάρóμα, ‘young ram’
 < **τάρóμα/λάρóμα** ‘ram’

ηα-τῶκ/ηα-λῶκ, ηαηα-τῶκ/ηαηα-λῶκ, ‘young dog, puppy’
 < **τῶκ/λῶκ** ‘dog’

ηα-πέλλα/ηα-έλλα, ηαηα-πέλλα/ηαηα-έλλα ‘young cat, kitten’
 < **πέλλα/έλλα** ‘cat’

ηα-ρεττῆρουκ/ηα-νεττῆρουκ, ηαηα-ρεττῆρουκ/ηαηα-νεττῆρουκ ‘young pig
 (but no longer striped)’
 < **τεττῆρουκ/νεττῆρουκ** ‘pig’

ηα-ποῦῖτ/ηα-οῦῖτ, ηαηα-ποῦῖτ/ηαηα-οῦῖτ, ‘little young man’ (a boy
 that does not yet have the age of a young man but that behaves as if
 he already were)
 < **ποῦῖτ/οῦῖτ** ‘young man’

ηα-κωῶρεν/ηα-ῶρεν, ηαηα-κωῶρεν/ηαηα-ῶρεν, ‘small piece of
 firewood’
 < **κωῶρεν/ῶρεν** ‘piece of firewood’

ηα-κωμμὸκ/ηα-ωμμὸκ, ηαηα-κωμμὸκ/ηαηα-ωμμὸκ ‘small pot’
 < **κωμμὸκ/ωμμὸκ** ‘pot’

The following case has the long prefix in the singular (**ηαηα + ηεντῆρα > ηαη-εντῆρα**) and the short prefix in the plural:

ηαη-εντῆρα/ηα-ηεντῆρα ‘k.o. drum (small size)’
 < **ηεντῆρα/ηεντῆρα** ‘k.o. drum’

When **ηα-** or **ηαηα-** is prefixed to **ὀκὺλ** ‘child’, **k** geminates:

ηα-κκὺλ/ηα-ηὸκὺλ, ηαηα-κκὺλ/ηαηα-ηὸκὺλ ‘baby, small child
 (up to about four years old)’
 < **ὀκὺλ/ηὸκὺλ** ‘child’)

The diminutive **ɲaɾəkattak/ɲaɾəkattak** ‘small calabash for sauce’ is derived from **cattak** ‘k.o. calabash’ (***kattak** does not exist on its own). Initial **ɲa/ɲa** is found in several other nouns referring to small items but those cases lack underived counterparts. Examples can be found under in section 4.3.5 under the noun class pair **ɲ-/ɲ-**.

4.5.2. Complex nouns in the **ɬ**-class

The complex nouns in the **ɬ**-class listed below are abstractions related to nouns that refer to people. They are different from earlier mentioned cases in the **ɬ** class that relate to nouns denoting people as they contain additional formatives: **a** (first two cases), probably from the copula ‘be’ (C-á), and **ɔ** (last case), probably from the connexive element C-ɔ ‘of’. Notably, ***kuɾít** is not attested as a noun by itself, but shares its root with **puɾít/ɔɾít**.

ɬ.a-ɾɛ ‘style of an adolescent girl’ < **ɾɛ** ‘adolescent girl’
ɬ.a-k.ɔɾít ‘style of a young man’ < **p.ɔɾít/ɔɾít** ‘young man’
ɬ.ɔ-p.ít ‘master and servant (kind of relationship)’ < **p.ít** ‘master, servant’

The nouns **ɬaɾɛ** and the earlier mentioned **ɬɾɛ** do not have exactly the same meaning. The former refers to the way or style in which a girl presents herself, the latter refers to behaviours typical for girls in general.

4.5.3. Complex nouns: reduplication

Several insects are denoted by fully reduplicated nouns. In most cases, the nouns are not attested in a non-reduplicated form. In the singular both parts take a singular noun class prefix, in the plural they both take a plural noun class prefix. Regular processes of assimilation take place across the reduplication boundary.

takkun-tákkun/nakkun-nákkun ‘mosquito’
piɾɪmam-píɾɪman/ɾɪman-íɾɪman ‘spider, spiderweb, spiderrag’

kuṛuməl-kkúṛuməl ³⁹ / uṛuməl-úṛuməl	‘snail’
kərí-kərí/ərí-ərí	‘large wasp-like insect’
ṭakkəṛuṭ-ṭákkəṛuṭ/lakkəṛuṭ-lákkəṛuṭ	‘butterfly’
kaṭuk-káṭuk/aṭuk-áṭuk	‘grasshopper (sp.)’ (< kaṭók ‘spear’)
carīṇ-carīṇ/marīm-marīṇ	‘millipede’
cəṛəmaṇ-cəṛəman/məṛəmam-məṛəman	‘maggot (sp.)’
pīp-pīt (no plural)	‘k.o. insect’
ṭura-ṭúra/lura-lúra	‘k.o. insect’
pérém-pérên/érên-érên	‘k.o. insect’

Some trees and their seeds or fruits involve reduplication, as well as an edible plant:

pīam-pīan/kīaṇ-kīan	‘tree (sp.)’
ciāṇ-ciāṇ/mīam-mīan	‘seed of <i>pīampīan</i> -tree, necklace of seeds of <i>pīampīan</i> -tree’
pūró-pūrô/kūrô-kūrô	‘tree (sp.)’
cūrô-cūrô/mūrô-mūrô	‘fruit of <i>pūrupuru</i> -tree’
pərim-pərīn/kəriṇ-kərīn	‘tree (sp.)’
cəriṇ-cərīn/mərim-mərīn	‘fruit of <i>pərimpərim</i> -tree’
kəriṇ-kərīn/ərīm-ərīn	‘bell made of seeds of the <i>cəriṇcərim</i> -fruit’
kwəṛí-kwəṛî/əṛí-əṛî	‘plant (sp., edible)’

The words for ‘lyre’ and ‘twilight’ also involve reduplication. They suggest sound symbolic value, as does the word for ‘light rain’, which contains a partial reduplication.

pəré-m-pəré-n/əré-n-əré-n	‘lyre’ (traditional instrument)
kır-əkkır	‘twilight’
pıcı-cí	‘light rain’

³⁹ In this word, there is no lenition of **k** after **l**, nor does there seem to be an inserted schwa. Hence the spelling with < **lkk** >.

The following nouns are probably related to each other through partial reduplication, though they have different tone patterns:

ḡaṛa/ḡaṛa	‘gum arabic’
ḡaṛá-ṛâ/ḡaṛá-ṛâ	‘rheum (in the eye, after sleep)’

4.6. Nouns derived from other word categories.

4.6.1. Verb-to-noun derivation

Except for a small set of defective verbs, all verbs allow for nominalization. Deverbal nominalizations are formed in the **ṭ**-class. They have a L*.LH tone pattern, irrespective of the tones of the verb stem.

ṭunṣ	‘to build, building’	< unṵ	‘build’
ṭɔrɛkṣ	‘to work, working’	< ɔrékṵ	‘work’
ṭɔṛəkṣ	‘to eat, eating’	< ɔṛəkṵ	‘eat’

Verbal nouns do not have a singular/plural opposition: they allow, if necessary, for both singular and plural reference:

ṭennɛkkɛttǎ ‘to be tested, being tested, test(s) (< **ennɛkkɛtta** ‘be tested’)

ṭennɛkkɛtta ṭullukkû ‘one test’
ṭennɛkkɛtta ṭɛṛá ‘two tests’

Verbal nouns have characteristics of both nouns and verbs. They are nouns because they can function as arguments in a clause. Their modifiers agree with them, and so do verbs to which they function as the subject. Some examples:

ṭ-ṵḡwṵ	ṭ-ṣ-píḡḡít	ṭ-ṵccɪkákɔṭ.ɛ	ḡ-ɕɪṭ.ṭán
NOM-sing	C-of-singer	C-be_heard:COMPL	with-far

the singing of the singer is heard from far

ṭ-ikkə **cik** **kárəttóm** **ṭ-əpərət** **ana** **ṭ-ṭ-əkitak**
 NOM-sit VREF Khartoum C-good and PRO-C-bad

staying in Khartoum is good and bad

Verbal nouns are verb-like because they can take a direct object:

ṭ-ɹət **âkúccí** **tórrô**
 NOM-find money Lumun_country
 earning (lit.: finding) money in Lumun country (fr. written essay)

ṭ-əpəṭə **ɲókul**
 NOM-take_care_of children
 taking care of the children

Other nouns do not take direct objects; rather they need the connexive element C-ə ‘of’. Nominalized verbs allow not only for a direct object construction, but also for a modifying construction with the connexive, as in the second example below:

ṭ-əkkwət **pá-p-əɹək** **ṭ-akənn-əká** **nuṭuk**
 NOM-kill thing-C-some C-NEG-be:DEPINCOMPL for_no_reason
 killing an animal will not be for nothing

ṭ-əkkwət **ṭ-ə-pa-p-əɹək** **ṭ-akənn-əká** **nuṭuk**
 NOM-kill C-of-thing-C-some C-NEG-be:DEPINCOMPL for_no_reason
 the killing of an animal will not be for nothing

Verbal nouns can be modified by an adverb:

ṭ-əkkwə **ikkítəttak** **ṭ-əpərət**
 NOM-dance badly C-good
 dancing seriously is good

4.6.2. Other nouns and verbs sharing the same root or stem

There are no other productive ways to derive a noun from a verb or vice versa. Apart from the verbal nouns, instances of nouns and verbs sharing the same root or stem are few. The attested cases are listed

ᵛᶦᶞḁṽ	‘urinate’
ᶦᶞḁṽ/ᶦᶞḁṽ	‘urine’
ᵛᶦᶞḁṽ	‘have diarrhea’
ᶦᶞḁṽᶦᶞḁṽ/ᶦᶞḁṽᶦᶞḁṽ	‘diarrhea’
ᵛᶦᶞḁṽ	‘begin to have fruits’
cᵛᶦᶞḁṽᶦᶞḁṽ/mᵛᶦᶞḁṽᶦᶞḁṽ	‘swelling on the skin’
ᶦᶞḁṽ	‘obtain, marry’
ᶦᶞḁṽ/lᶦᶞḁṽ	‘marriage’

The same process that derives verbal nouns from verbs (see 4.6.1) derives nouns from adjectives. Examples:

təɾɨk	‘being big’	< C-əɾɨk ‘big’
tukwɨt	‘length, depth’	< C-ûkwɨt ‘long, deep’
təpəɾət	‘goodness’	< C-əpəɾət ‘good’
təkɨtək	‘badness’	< C-əkɨtək ‘bad’
təppət	‘being plenty’	< C-əppət ‘many’
təɲɨ	‘blackness’	< C-əɲɨ ‘black’
təɾɛ	‘redness, ripeness’	< C-əɾɛ ‘red, ripe’
təɾɛɾɛt	‘being spotted’	< C-əɾɛɾɛt ‘spotted’
tɨmmɨn	‘heavyness’	< C-ɨmmɨn ‘heavy’
tərrə	‘bluntness’	< C-ərrə ‘blunt’
tɨppə	‘heat’	< C-ɨppə ‘hot’
tɨrrək	‘cold, coolness’	< C-ɨrrək ‘cold’
təpəɾɨ	‘being female’	< C-əpəɾɨ ‘female’

tɔcɔra	‘being male’	< C-ɔcɔra
---------------	--------------	-----------

An example with a nominalized adjective:

ṭ-ṭpəṛət éṇ-ṭ-í í-ṭ-á ṇ-kw-ṭkkínṭ-ín ṭ-íttík
 NOM-good DEM-C-NEARSP RES-C-COP 2-C-do_for:COMPL-O1 C-big

this loyalty that you showed me is big (lit.: this goodness that you did for me ...) (Ruth 3:10)

Adjectives which contain the copula C-á ‘be’, such as C-**acṣkəccəkət** ‘fast’ and C-**arurṣṇ** ‘colour of snake (sp.)’, do not allow for nominalization through addition of the ṭ- prefix and a tone pattern.

4.6.4. Adverbs functioning as nouns

An example of an adverb that can function as a noun is **cəkəccəkət** ‘quickly’:

cəkəc-cəkət éṇ-c-í c-ṭkítak
 quickly-REDUP DEM-C-NEARSP C-bad

this rushing is bad

4.7. Place names and other locative nouns

Indigenous proper place names consist of two formatives: a prepositional proclitic and a nominal element. Most often the prepositional formative is **ṭə-** ‘up on, up at’ or **ṭə-** ‘at’. The nominal element is in several cases (the remnant of) a noun attested on its own. Some examples follow here, some more are listed in 16.3.5, including some examples with other prepositional formatives.

ṭəṛəmaṭṣṇ

ṭəumân

ṭəpíṭəṇ

ṭəṛə

ṭəṛí (< **ṭə-** + **ṇəṛí** lit.: ‘At the water’)

ṭəttuṣé (< **ṭə-** + **tuṣé** lit. ‘At the river’)

ṭəmantít (< **ṭə-** + **mantít** lit. ‘At the *mantit*-snakes’)

The names for the homelands of the Lumun and neighbouring peoples are (historically) made up of **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’ or **ʔɔ-** ‘at’ and the (plural or singular) name of the people. In the case of Lumun, Tocho, Acheron and Torona it is likely that the plurals have served as formative and that **ɔ** and **a**, respectively **ɔ** and **ə**, have coalesced to **ɔ**. The plural name of the people has also served as formative for the name of the Moro homeland and for places where “Arab” Sudanese are living, but for the Tira and Otoro areas the singular (the name for one person) is involved. In the case of Dagik, Katcha and Krongo it is difficult to say whether **pakkí** or **ɲakkí** has served as formative, because either way, the noun class prefix has been deleted.

<i>person/people</i>	<i>homeland</i>
parrô/arrô ‘Lumun’	tarrô
pappó/appó ‘Tocho’	ʔappó
pəɽemê/əɽemê ‘Acheron’	təɽemê
paɽɔnɔ/aɽɔnɔ ‘Torona’	təɽɔnɔ
pəmpərən/ləmpərən ‘Moro’	tələmpərən
cuɽt̪t̪ô/muɽt̪t̪ô ‘Arab Sudanese’	ʔamuɽt̪t̪ô
pəɽá/məɽá ‘Tira Lumun and Tira’	təpəɽá
uɽt̪tuɽu/luɽt̪tuɽu ‘Otoro’	təuɽt̪t̪uɽu
pakkí/ɲakkí ‘Nuba peoples south and south-west of the Lumun, across the plain, a.o. Dagik, Katcha and Krongo’	takkí

Place names can function as subject (or object) in a clause. The prepositional formative no longer functions as a preposition but has become part of the place name, as is shown by the concord **ʔ-** on the verb in the next example:

ʔɔmantit	ʔ-ɔnɔ	mantit	m-ɔppót
ʔɔmantit	c-have	snake(sp.)	c-many

ʔɔmantit has many *cantit*-snakes

Place names, including foreign place names such as **karəɽt̪t̪ôm** ‘Khartoum’ or **kaɽókəɽi** ‘Kadugli’, are not used in combination with one of the prepositional proclitics **tɔ-**, **ʔɔ-**, **nɔ-** or **ɪ-**. The absence of these proclitics from foreign place names also points at prepositional

formatives in indigenous place names no longer being perceived as prepositions. Instead, the whole name functions as a locative noun:

m-p-a.ɪk	p-a.ɛ́	ṭɔmantît/ karəṭṭôm
1-C-be:PR	C-go:INCOMPL	Ṭɔmantît / Khartoum

I am going to Ṭɔmantît / to Khartoum

For comparison, a sentence follows here with a building, **man mɔ́kapɪk** ‘church’ (lit. house of God), instead of a place name. A prepositional proclitic must be used here:

m-p-a.ɪk	p-a.ɛ́	ṭɔ-man	m-ɔ́-kapɪk
1-C-be:PR	C-go:INCOMPL	at-house	C-of-God

I am going to the church

In the case of the **ṭɔṭɪṭ** ‘sky, heaven’ both **t-** and **ṭ-** concord are acceptable. **ṭɪṭ** ‘sky, heaven’ exists as a noun by itself. Apparently **ṭɔṭɪṭ** ‘sky, heaven’ can be interpreted as a place name (a locative noun), but also as a prepositional proclitic and noun, in which case agreement goes with the noun:

ṭɔṭɪṭ	t-ɪntat	cɪk	n-ṭóllɛɾak
sky	C-disappear:INCOMPL	VREF	with-lightening

the sky will disappear with lightening

ṭɔ-ṭɪṭ	ṭ-ɪntat	cɪk	n-ṭóllɛɾak
up_on-sky	C-disappear:INCOMPL	VREF	with-lightening

the sky will disappear with lightening

ṭɔṭəpút ‘(at the) place outside for use as toilet’ (lit.: at outside) is commonly used as a locative noun:

ṭɔṭəput	ṭ-a-ɪk	karə-ṭa
at_place_used_as_toilet	C-be-VREF	where-QW

where is the place for use as a toilet?

An unusual case of a prepositional proclitic (**ṭɔ-**) and a noun (**cá/má** ‘head’) is **ṭɔcá/ṭɔmá** ‘face’. On the one hand, the clitic has become a

part of these nouns because their concord is **t**, on the other hand pluralization involves a change of **cá** to **má**:

tɔma **t-ɔ-ɔl**
 faces C-of-people
 the faces of people

Another unusual case is **ɲkɔɾá** ‘(in the) night’. The word can function as a noun, as in the following example:

ɲkɔɾá **ɲ-ɪɪmáɬ.e**
 night C-become_dark:COMP
 the night is dark

ɲkɔɾá must have developed from the prepositional proclitic **ɲ-** ‘with, by, (away) from’ and a synchronically not attested noun ***kɔɾá**, because nasal + stop clusters in initial position are not attested in Lumun nouns.

A loan word that functions as a locative noun is **kɛccôk** ‘market’ (< Sudanese Arabic *suug*). It is generally used as a locative noun. However, in some contexts, proclitic **ɪ-** ‘in’ can be used alternatively:

lɔn **l-en** **l-ɔkkəttá.ɬe** **kɛccôk** / **ɪ-kɛccôk**
 words C-DEM C-be_done:COMPL market in-market
 those things happened in the market

4.8. Descriptive constructions expressing nominal concepts

4.8.1. Agent nouns

Lumun has no way to derive agentive nouns from verbs. Instead, the language makes use of descriptions: ‘person’ (or ‘child’) and a relative construction, involving the restrictor **í-**, the concord that agrees with the noun, and a verb (noun **ɪ-C-verb**). In the examples below, the concord **w** of vowel-initial nouns is deleted between vowels.

pul ɪ-p-âŋkəne/ul ɪ-âŋkəne ‘teacher’ (person who shows) < **âŋkəne**
pul ɪ-p-arékə/ul ɪ-arékə ‘worker’ (person who works) < **arékə**
ʊkʊl ɪ-úrɛ/ɲokʊl ɪ-ɲ-úrɛ ‘herds boy’ (child that grazes the cows or goats) < **úrɛ**

Other agentive expressions consist of ‘person’ (or ‘child’) followed by the connexive + noun, or the connexive, a prepositional proclitic and a noun (noun C-ɔ-noun, or: noun C-ɔ-PPC-noun). Examples:

pul p-ɔ-tɔɾak/ul w-ɔ-tɔɾak ‘warrior’ (lit. ‘person of war’)
pul p-ɔ-tɪpa/ul w-ɔ-tɪpa ‘negotiator of marriage’ (lit. ‘person of marriage’)
pul p-ɔ-tɔɾan/ul w-ɔ-tɔɾan ‘thief’ (lit. ‘person of theft’)
pul p-ɔ-kəmel/ul w-ɔ-kəmel ‘person who calls for a hunting party, performs the rituals and leads it’ (lit. ‘person of the hunting party’)
pul p-ɔ-rɪ-ŋkwêl/ul w-ɔ-rɪ-ŋkwêl⁴⁰ ‘person who joins in a hunting party’ (lit. ‘person of in the hunting party’)
 < **pul + p-ɔ + ɪ + kəmel/ul + w-ɔ + ɪ + kəmel**
pul p-ɔ-rɪ-ɪmôn/ul w-ɔ-rɪ-ɪmôn⁴¹ ‘person who is hunting porcupines’ (lit.: person of in porcupines)
 < **pul + p-ɔ + ɪ + ɪmôn/ul + w-ɔ + ɪ + ɪmôn**

4.8.2. Other examples of descriptive constructions

The same descriptive constructions (noun ɪ-C-verb, noun C-ɔ-noun and noun C-ɔ-PREP-noun), and in particular those involving the connexive, are used for a variety of other nominal concepts. A descriptive construction involving a relative construction can also contain an adjective instead of a verb (noun ɪ-C-adj). Modification of a noun through direct juxtaposition is not possible except with nominalized verbs that can take an object (see 4.6.1).

⁴⁰ The allomorph **rɪ-** of prepositional proclitic **ɪ-** ‘in’ is used here (see 16.2). **kəmel** takes on its contracted shape after **ɪ-** ‘in’ (see 4.4) but not after connexive **C-ɔ**.

⁴¹ In case of direct adjacency of **ɪ-** (here: **rɪ-**, see 16.2) ‘in’ to a +ATR vowel, the resulting vowel will be articulated as +ATR.

Some further examples of descriptive constructions follow here.

Examples of ‘noun C-ᵛ-noun’:

Plural formation always concerns not only the class prefix of the first noun, but also the agreement marker of the connexive or the relative. If the second noun involved is not already a plural, plural formation will often also involve pluralization of the second noun, as in the first example below.

kwɔɾɛn kɔ-wék/ɔɾɛn wɔ-tacók ‘shin bone’ (lit.: piece of firewood of the leg)

In a few cases, phonological changes have taken place.

pa-pɔ-kira/aɾɛp-ɔ-kira ‘leopard’ (lit.: thing of the trees)

< **papɔ + pɔ + kira/aɾɛpɔ + wɔ + kira**

pa-pɔ-rua/aɾɛp-ɔ-rua ‘livestock animal’ (lit.: thing of hair)

< **papɔ + pɔ + tua/aɾɛpɔ + wɔ + tua**

ɲɔcɔl-ɔ-ttô/ɲɔcɔl-ɔ-ttô ‘salt/amounts of salt’ (lit.: sauce of the Arabs)

< **ɲɔcɔl + ɲɔ + mɔttô/ɲɔcɔl + ɲɔ + mɔttô**

cɪl-ɔ-ttô/mɪl-ɔ-ttô ‘grain of maize/maize’ (lit.: sorghum of the Arabs)

< **cɪl + cɔ + mɔttô**

Examples of noun C-ᵛ-PPC-noun:

papɔ p-ɔ-rɪ-kira/aɾɛpɔ w-ɔ-rɪ-kira⁴² ‘wild animal’ (lit.: thing of among the trees)

< **papɔ + pɔ + ɪ + kira/aɾɛpɔ + wɔ + ɪ + kira**

caun c-ɔ-tɔ-kúrôk/maun m-ɔ-tɔ-úrôk ‘little finger’ (lit.: finger of at the corner)

⁴² The allomorph **rɪ-** of prepositional proclitic **ɪ-** ‘in’ is used here (see 16.2).

kuppəɾuŋ k-ɔ-nɔ-əɽĩ/uppəɾuŋ w-ɔ-nɔ-əɽĩ ‘boat’ (lit.: bedplank of on water)

Examples of noun 1-C-adjective:

ɲuɽú 1-ɔɽəɾ/ɲuɽú 1-ɲ-ɔɽəɾ ‘sour asida/portions of sour asida’ (lit.: asida which is sour)

cauŋ 1-c-əɽĩk/mauŋ 1-m-əɽĩk ‘thumb’, ‘middle finger’ (lit.: finger which is big)

The nouns for ‘woman’ and ‘man’ have this pattern as well. The adjectives themselves consist of a connexive and a nominal element (see also 10.2.4):

pul 1-p-ɔ.parí/ul 1-á.arí ‘woman’ (lit.: person who is female)

pul 1-p-ɔ.cura/ul 1-ɔ.mura ‘man/men’ (lit.: person who is male)

Example of ‘noun 1-C-verb’:

tɔk 1-r-apáŋka/nɔk 1-n-apáŋka ‘sea’ (lit.: waterplace which makes waves)

Relative constructions may also involve a passive verb, often in combination with an ‘absolute preposition’ (see chapter 16.6):

kwɔk 1-k-allóra ɲɲm/wɔk 1-allóra ɲɲm ‘running shoe’ (lit.: shoe which is run with)

Some comparable examples can be found in chapter 14.4 on passive derivation.

Noun complexes, though they may have fused together, do not function as single units, as could already be seen from their plural formation: not just their (initial) noun class marker varies for singular and plural, but also the concords involved, and in some cases the class marker of a noun that is part of the modifying element.

Tonally, noun complexes do not function as single units either. If they did, a complex such as **kuppəɽuŋ kənɔɽɿ** ‘boat’ would behave as a noun with a rising tone and not receive a high tone from a prepositional proclitic (see 16.1). This, however, is not the case. Upon attachment of a prepositional proclitic, a high tone appears on **kuppəɽuŋ**, just as it would in the absence of **kənɔɽɿ**:

ɪ-kuppəɽuŋ kənɔɽɿ ‘in the boat’

ŋɔcɔl-ɔ-ttô/ŋɔcɔl-ɔ-ttô ‘salt/amounts of salt’ and **cɪlɔttô/mɪlɔttô** ‘grain of maize/maize’, however, seem to function as one word, having lost the concord before the connexive, and in the case of **cɪlɔttô/mɪlɔttô** also the high tone on the first mora (< **cɪl/mɪl**).

4.9. Loans

Loans are incorporated into the noun class system according to their initial sound. Arabic nouns are often borrowed together with the article **al-**; in such cases the initial sound is a vowel, and the noun with Arabic article goes into the \emptyset /**n** class pair. Borrowed nouns sometimes have a final consonant that is not found in final position in genuinely Lumun items (**p**, **t** or **m**), and some of them have an otherwise (virtually) unattested tone pattern with an initial H-tone.

It is in general uncertain if an Arabic loan is borrowed directly from Arabic or rather through another Nuba language. Moreover, the Arabic spoken in the region, whether as first or as second language, is not of one variety. In the town of Kadugli, some 40 miles west-west-north of the Lumun area, Manfredi (2013) discerns four varieties of Arabic: the prestigious and influential urban “koiné”: the variety spoken in Khartoum and other cities in northern and central Sudan; Baggara Arabic: the variety spoken by Arab cattle herders in the ‘Baggara belt’, an area which runs from Lake Chad through South Kordofan to the Blue Nile; Emerging Kadugli Arabic: a mother tongue variety spoken by non-Arabs born in Kadugli; and Non-native Arabic: varieties of Arabic spoken by bilingual or trilingual non-Arabs in Kadugli. When citing Arabic items, I use forms in the urban “koiné” of Sudanese Arabic. They are just presented in order to show the

relationship between the Lumun items and the Arabic items; no claim is made about the way in which an item may have entered the Lumun language, i.e. which variety of Arabic has been involved or through which other Nuba-language an Arabic item may have been borrowed.

In some cases, it is obvious that the Lumun item is not a direct loan from Sudanese Arabic, because sound changes are involved that are not expected on grounds of the Lumun phonological system. One such item is **aṭám** ‘book’ from Sudanese Arabic *kitaab*. A clear indication that **aṭám** is not a direct loan is the loss of initial **k**. Such a loss is not expected in Lumun, which has many **k**-initial nouns. Another indication is the change of final **b** to **m**. Lumun does not have final bilabial obstruents, but nor does it have **m** in that position. A good candidate for being the source of this item is Moro, which has **áḍámá/náḍámá** ‘book/books’ (Gibbard, Rohde & Rose 2009, p. 112), with variant **áḍám/náḍám**. In Moro, loss of initial **k** or **g** is common in this noun class. Moreover, Arabic **b** often converts to **m** in Moro.⁴³

Another item for which it is clear that it was not directly borrowed from Sudanese Arabic is **keccôk** ‘market’, from Sudanese Arabic (*as*)-*suug*. **k(ε)** is not a Lumun locative marker, but must have been borrowed together with the Arabic loan from another Nuba Mountain language. Candidates include Tira, which has a general locative preposition **k-** (Schadeberg 2009, p. 52); Otoro, which has a general locative preposition **gi** (**k-** before a vowel) (Schadeberg 2009, p. 214-215); Ebang, which has a general locative preposition **gi** (optionally **k-** before a vowel) (Schadeberg 2013, p. 143); or Krongo, which has a locative particle **kí-** before non-animate nouns (Reh 1985, p. 146-147).

Loans with the Arabic article **al-** that are assigned to the singular \emptyset class have plurals in the **n**-class, unless they remain unpaired. Apart from the plural \emptyset class, the **n**-class seems to be the plural class with the least semantic associations, for which reason it is suitable as a

⁴³ Personal communication by Sharon Rose (March 2017).

plural for a diversity of loanwords. My database contains some fifty nouns in which an Arabic word can be recognized. Some examples follow here. The Sudanese Arabic equivalents are cited from Tamis & Persson (2011), unless mentioned otherwise in a footnote. In one case (*darangal* ‘bedstead’) the item is Baggara Arabic. The examples show that Arabic vowel length is borrowed into Lumun as a falling tone (realized high in non-prepausal position).

aləpaccôṭ̣/naləpaccôṭ̣	‘jackal/-s’	< <i>al-baʿshoob</i> ⁴⁴
aləppéra/naləppéra	‘flag/-s’	< <i>al-beerag</i>
alakkîn/nalakkîn	‘clinic, hospital/-s’	< <i>al-ḥakiim</i> ⁴⁵
alawîr/nalawîr	‘tree (sp.)/-s’	< <i>al-ʿawiir</i>
alámpa/nalámpa	‘lamp/-s’	< <i>al-lamba</i>
aləkkúppa/naləkkúppa	‘basket/-s’	< <i>al-guffa</i>
alópiríṭ/nalópiríṭ	‘mat/-s’	< <i>al-birish</i>
aṛaṅkál/naṛaṅkál	‘rope bed/-s’	< <i>darangal</i> ⁴⁶

Examples of unpaired nouns in the \emptyset class:

aləppón	‘coffee’	< <i>al-bunn</i>
accái	‘tea’	< <i>ash-shaay</i>
appələppəl	‘pepper’	< <i>al-filfil</i>

Arabic nouns with collective semantics tend to be borrowed together with the article into the plural \emptyset class with a counterpart denoting a single unit in the **k**-class (the examples were given earlier):

kaləppaṭúra/aləppaṭúra	‘tomato/-es’	< <i>al-banaḍoora</i>
kaṭṭəpâ/atṭəpâ	‘piece of tobacco/tobacco’	< <i>at-tumbaak</i>
kakúccɿ/akúccɿ	‘coin/money’	< <i>al-guruush</i>

⁴⁴ Hillelson (1930) mentions *baʿshoob*, Hillelson and Tamis & Persson (2011) both have *baʿshoom*.

⁴⁵ The item is translated by Hillelson as ‘physician’, by Tamis & Persson as ‘doctor’s assistant’.

⁴⁶ Hillelson gives not only the Sudanese Arabic word *angareeb*, but also the Baggara Arabic item *darangal* ‘bedstead (kind of matting which serves as mattress)’, which is clearly much closer to the Lumun item.

Nouns with an initial consonant that coincides with a noun class prefix are sometimes borrowed without the article. If the initial consonant coincides with a singular noun class prefix, a plural is often formed that fits in with a class pair and the other way round.

paṭṭanīe/aṭṭanīe	‘blanket/-s’	< <i>baṭṭaaniyya</i>
capûn/mapûn	‘soap/bars of soap’	< <i>ṣaabuun</i>
capára/mapára	‘k.o. whistle/-s’	< <i>ṣuffaara</i>
ṭarra/larra	‘scarf/-s’	< <i>ṭarḥa</i>
kəṭṭəm/əṭṭəm	‘fish trap/-s’	< <i>kajjaama</i> ‘steel trap’
kapərît/apərît	‘match/-es’	< <i>kibriit</i>
cûṭ/mûṭ	‘banana/-s’	< <i>mooz</i>
cónka/mónka	‘mango/-s’	< <i>manga</i>

If the initial consonant coincides with a noun class prefix (singular or plural), this sometimes results in an unpaired noun that can have both singular and plural reference:

cicára	‘cigaret(s)’	< <i>sijaara</i>
ṭémur	‘date(s)’	< <i>tamur</i>
múccuṭ	‘comb(s)’	< <i>mushuṭ</i>
méjɛɛl	‘sickel(s)’	< <i>munjal</i>

The banana tree, mango tree and date palm cannot be denoted by changing the noun class. Instead, a description is used:

píra pəṭémur/kíra kəṭémur ‘date palm’ (‘tree of dates’)

4.10. Kinship terms and personal names

4.10.1. The persona prefix⁴⁷

Kinship terms and personal names have the persona prefix **ǵ-** (which is also found in personal pronouns). Two further nouns with the persona prefix are **ǵpaṭṭí** ‘person’ and **ǵpaḷḷín** ‘one of a group’.

Tone

The prefix brings about the same tonal changes to the noun to which it is attached as a preceding word with a final high, rising or floating high tone. Since the prefix cannot receive a high tone itself unless through tone bridge, it can either be represented as high or rising. As explained in chapter 3.8, I represent a case like this as high.

A few examples follow here in order to show that the tonal effects are fully in line with the rule of Tone Shift. This includes the (non-)realization of a high (or falling) tone on the following noun, which takes place in precisely the same way as described in the chapter 3 on Tone.

ǵ-tṣṇ	‘Mouth’	< ǵ- tṣṇ	‘mouth’
ǵ-cǎkkərǎk	‘Hunchback’	< ǵ- cǎkkərǎk	‘hunch’
ǵ-parí	‘wife (as kinship term)’	< ǵ- parí	‘wife’
ǵ-ǔmpərúŋ	‘Calf’	< ǵ- ŋǔmpərúŋ	‘calf’
ǵ-takərúk	‘Chicken’	< ǵ- takərúk	‘chicken’
ǵ-umaṭṣṇ	‘Elephant’	< ǵ- umaṭṣṇ	‘elephant’
ǵ-cǎṛǎŋ	‘Mountain’	< ǵ- cǎṛǎŋ	‘mountain’

The exceptions to Tone sub-rule 2.3 apply here as well. Thus there is a falling contour (at least at surface level) on the short initial vowel of **cítín** ‘bird (sp.)’, and **paṭák** ‘fly’ gets an initial high tone without contour formation.

⁴⁷ The persona prefix is discussed in more detail in Smits (2012).

ɔ-cítín	‘Cítín-bird’	< ś- cítín	‘bird (sp.)’
ɔ-páɾák	‘Fly’	< ś- paɾák	‘fly’

The vocative kinship term/personal names **lɔttí** ‘second born child, which is a boy’ and **lɔccó** ‘fifth born child, which is a boy’, also get a high tone on their first vowel without contour formation. In these two cases the phenomenon cannot be observed in other contexts, since **lɔttí** and **lɔccó**, without the prefix, are vocatives, and can, within a tonal domain not be preceded by other elements.

ɔ-lɔttí	‘second born child, which is a boy’	(< ś- lɔttí)
ɔ-lɔccó	‘fifth born child, which is a boy’	(< ś- lɔccó)

The vowel has itself a –ATR quality but may be realized +ATR or somewhat towards +ATR when attached to a +ATR noun.

In case of assimilation to an adjacent vowel, the vowels coalesce, i.e. the resulting (underlyingly) long vowel becomes short, and the (underlying) tone sequence is realized as high:

ámra	‘Red’	(< âmra < a-âmra < ś- amra)	(< Sud. Arabic <i>amra</i>)
áməntáci	‘Aməntaci’	(< â-məntáci < a-âməntáci < ś- aməntáci)	

Shortening seems to be less rigorous when there is elision of **ŋ** between assimilating vowels. In the following case an initial low-high sequence may be pronounced, but not necessarily so:

a-átɾəpê / átɾəpê	‘Rabbit’	(< a-âtɾəpê < ś- ɳatɾəpê)
--------------------------	----------	------------------------------------

Segmental effects: vowel coalescence, consonant gemination

The segmental part of the prefix is coalesced before **ɛ** and **a**: **ɔ + ɛ > ɛ**, **ɔ + a > a**. Before **ɔ** it may be coalesced as well, but some length may also be audible. There is no coalescence before the other vowels (**i, ɪ, u, ʊ, ə**). Cases of attachment of the prefix to a vowel-initial noun generally concern nouns that are loans. Some examples with adjacent vowels were already given above. Two further examples:

elimélík ‘Elimelek’ (< **ś-** **elimélík**)

ılîn ‘Heleen’ (< **ś-** **ılîn**)

In a few cases, I assume that attachment of the prefix causes gemination of the initial consonant of the noun. This is the case in the word for ‘my father’ (**ŋ** would otherwise be elided between vowels). **ŋ** is, however, not realized long, so that I write it with single **ŋ**:

ś- + **ŋappâ** > **ŋappâ** ‘my father’

This also happens with borrowed names which have an initial voiceless obstruent. The following names are the names of story characters. They are not originally Lumun and have no meaning in Lumun.

akkólle ‘Kolle’ (name of a story figure, < **ś-** **kólle**)

appénná ‘Penna’ (name of a story figure, < **ś-** **pénná**)

Prepositional proclitics preceding a noun with the persona prefix ś-

The persona prefix **ś-** becomes **a-** when preceded by one of the prepositions **ı-**, **nə-** or **tə-**. Compare the following examples with a common noun (**ɬɛn** ‘firewood’) and a noun with the persona prefix (**ɬpaŋôn** ‘siblings’):

ı-ɬɛn ‘in/among the firewood’

ı-apɬŋôn ‘among his/her siblings’

In the examples below, **annân** ‘(his/her) mother’, **ɬk** ‘s/he’, **ɬpaŋôn** ‘siblings’ and **ɬalû** ‘Lalu’ have the persona prefix **ś-**. (For the paradigms of basic prepositions + personal pronouns, see 6.1.4).

m-p-ɬkəttɔ̌.t **ı-a-nnân** **nə-kaɬér**

1-C-run_into:COMPL

in-PERS-mother

on-road

I ran into his/her mother on the road

m-p-əkəttó.t **ɪ-a-ák** **nə-kaṭór**
 1-C-run_into:COMPL in-PERS-3 on-road

I ran into him/her on the road

k-kw-á.tṭe **nə-kəmən** **ána** **n-a-paŋ-ón** **ana** **nó-lícók**
 3-C-leave:INCOMPL on-houses and on-PERS-sibling-PL and on-goats

s/he will leave the house and his/her siblings and the goats

k-kw-árrót.ε **t-a-lalô**
 3-C-cross:COMPL up_on-PERS-Lalo

s/he has climbed on Lalo (picture: Lalo is standing or sitting and the person has climbed onto Lalo's neck)

After **tə-** the persona prefix does not change to **a**, nor does it do so after the connexive marker **C-ə** 'of'. The prepositional proclitic **ń-** 'with, by, (away) from' cannot be combined with nouns with the persona prefix (see also chapter 16 on prepositional proclitics).

4.10.2. Kinship terms

In kinship terms, the noun class prefix of the noun to which the prefix is attached is often **p-** but not always. Nouns with the persona prefix do not occur in singular/plural pairs that differ from each other only as to the noun class prefix. Instead, they form plural through suffixation of a morpheme (**-ŋón**) to the singular noun (see 4.10.3).

Nouns with the persona prefix have specific concords. With the exception of possessor pronouns and connexives, the concord of singular nouns with the persona prefix is **p-**, the concord of plural nouns with the persona prefix is **t-**⁴⁸.

ə-íáíá **p-á.ík** **p-ântán**
 PERS-my_mother C-be:PR C-come:INCOMPL

my mother is coming

⁴⁸ See also Smits (2012).

ɔ-ɪáɪá-n

PERS-my_mother-PL

t-á.ík

C-be:PR

t-ântán

C-come:INCOMPL

my mother and companions (also: my mother and father) are coming

Personal names also have the persona prefix **ɔ-**. In fact, those personal names that denote whether a child is the first born, the second born, etc. (up to the fifth born) can be considered a type of kinship term. Other personal names are rather nicknames, or Arabic or English loans, but all have the personal prefix **ɔ-**. The prefix is only absent when the name is used as a vocative, i.e. when the person is directly addressed.

All Lumun children receive a name that denotes the order in which they were born. The first born child is called **kakkâ** if it is a girl, and **kukkô** if it is a boy; the second born is called **nennî** if it is a girl, and **löttí** if it is a boy, etc. The names of the first three children are more fixed than the names of the fourth and the fifth: there are alternatives here. With the sixth child the name-giving in principle starts again from the beginning, so that there may be two children called **kakkâ** or **kukkô**, etc. Most names are gender-specific, but some are used for both boys and girls. In the table below (after Smits 2012), both the vocative forms and the forms with the persona prefix are given.

Table 23 Birth names

<i>boys</i>		<i>girls</i>	
<i>vocative</i>	<i>with ɔ-prefix</i>	<i>vocative</i>	<i>with ɔ-prefix</i>
1. kukkô	ɔkukkô	1. kakkâ	ɔkakkâ
2. löttí	ɔlöttí	2. nennî	ɔnennî
3. lalô	ɔlalô	3. cɛccê	ɔcɛccê
4. tüttô	ɔtüttô	4. ɲɔɾîñ	ɔɾîñ (ɲ is deleted between vowels)
4. lettô	ɔlettô	4. tüttô	ɔtüttô
5. lɛccɔ	ɔlɛccɔ	5. kumân	ɔkumân
5. kumân	ɔkumân		

Below, a list of kinship and relational terms with the persona prefix is provided. Except in the cases of ‘father/paternal uncle (father’s brother)’ and ‘mother/aunt (father’s sister and mother’s sister)’, the terms are used for both people who stand in a certain relationship to each other, and in most cases male and female are not distinguished. For example, **ɔpəki** denotes both grandparent (grandfather or grandmother) and grandchild (grandson or granddaughter). The terms for father and mother are inherently possessed by a first, second or third person, as is the term for ‘mother’s brother’ (maternal uncle). In the forms for ‘mother’s brother’ the 1SG, 2SG and 3SG possessor pronouns can be recognized. The other kinship terms are commonly used in combination with a possessor pronoun. This is the case even more so for their vocatives, for which reason a possessor (‘my’ or ‘of X’) is added in the table. The vocatives between parentheses are not commonly used.

Table 24 Kinship and relational terms

	<i>ɔ-prefix noun</i>	<i>Vocative (with possessor C- m ‘my’, or C-ɔ-X ‘of X’)</i>
my father, my paternal uncle	ɔŋappâ	ŋappâ
my father, my paternal uncle (informal)	ɔpâppa	pâppa
your father, your paternal uncle	ɔt̩t̩é	
(his, her) father, (his, her) paternal uncle	ɔt̩t̩ân	t̩an pɔ-X ‘father of X’
my mother, my aunt	ɔŋáia	ŋáia
my mother, my aunt (informal)	ɔcáca	íáia
your mother, your aunt	ɔnné	
(his, her) mother, (his, her)	ɔnnân	nan pɔ-X

aunt		‘mother of X’
son, daughter	ᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
brother, sister, cousin	ᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ, ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ
ancestor, descendant	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
grandparent, grandchild	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ (< Sud. Ar. <i>ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ</i> ‘grandmother’)	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
my maternal uncle, nephew, niece of a maternal uncle	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ
your maternal uncle, nephew, niece of a maternal uncle	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	
(his, her) maternal uncle, nephew, niece of a maternal uncle	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ, ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ, ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒ-X, ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒ-X, ᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒ-X ‘uncle of X’
husband	ᄒᄒᄒ	(ᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ)
wife	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	(ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ)
co-wife	ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ	(ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ)
in-law (different generation)	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
in-law (same generation)	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
master, servant	ᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
friend	ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒᄒ ᄒᄒᄒ
my friend	ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ	ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ
friend	ᄒᄒᄒ, ᄒᄒᄒᄒ (< Sud. Ar. <i>ᄒᄒᄒᄒ</i>)	ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ, ᄒᄒᄒᄒ

Personal names

The kinship terms conveying the order in which Lumun children are born, and which function also as personal names, were already presented in table 23. The persona prefix is further used in order to

derive (nick)names for people. Body parts and animal species such as certain birds serve as sources of name formation, but other kinds of nouns as well.

ᄇᄇᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Mountain’	< ᄇᄃᄃᄃ ‘mountain’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Nose’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘nose’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Bold Patch’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘bold patch’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Hunchback’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘hump’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Dog’	< ᄃᄃᄃ ‘dog’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Cittin-bird’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘bird (sp., making a lot of noise)’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the Mouth of Pig’	< ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘mouth of pig’ ⁴⁹

A (nick)name formation process with ᄇᄃᄃᄃ is also attested. ᄇᄃᄃᄃ contains the persona prefix, otherwise its composition is not fully clear. It has probably developed from the personal pronoun ᄇᄃᄃ ‘(s)he’ (which contains the persona prefix) and the copula ᄃᄃᄃ ‘be’ where ᄃ is the concord. ᄇᄃᄃ + ᄃᄃᄃ has then given rise to ᄇᄃᄃᄃ, though tonally this is not regular. Some examples:

ᄇᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘Thief’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘theft’ ⁵⁰
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘Born in the evening’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘evening’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘Born when the mother was working in the sesame field’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘sesame’
ᄇᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃ	‘Funny person’	< ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘fun, joke’

Vocatives of this type of names start with **ka**:

ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ
thief	2-C-COME:COMPL-Q

Thief, have you come?

⁴⁹ The tonal representation of this item in Smits 2012 (p. 107) is not correct.

⁵⁰ There is a plural noun ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘thieves’, but no singular noun *ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ‘thief’.

ʒkkwəʔatəntakʂ (also: ʒkkwəʔatəntakʂ) ‘Dreamer’
(< ʒkk + pə + tatəntakʂ, lit.: ‘s/he of dreaming’)

ᵛcôn	‘John’
ᵛlókka	‘Luke’
ᵛóumar	‘Umar’

The term **ᵛpattī** ‘person’ is commonly used instead of somebody’s name, in order to avoid the personal name. When **ᵛpattī** is used, it is usually assumed that the hearer knows who is being referred to.

the person died, he was killed by a dog

The word **ᵹpəllin** typically refers to somebody from a group, but not somebody specific:

á-pəllin	ânṭán
SUBJ.PERS-one_from_group	come:DEPINCOMPL
let one of you come!	

The word can also denote each member of a group:

ɔ-pəllɪn **p-a.nékɪttat** **lɪcək** **ukulûk**
PERS-one_from_group C-be_taken_from:INCOMPL goats five
 from each of you five goats will be taken

In the following example **ɔpəllɪn** is just used as ‘somebody’: the speaker does not know who has beaten on the ground.

ɔ-pəllɪn **p-ɔkkwɔ.t** **cɪk**
PERS-one_from_group C-beat:COMPL VREF

somebody has beaten (on the ground with his stick) (i.e. a way of knocking at a place to see if somebody is there)

The plural **ɔpəllɪŋɔn** denotes ‘some of a group’. In a construction **ɔpəllɪŋɔn ... ɔpəllɪŋɔn ...** it expresses ‘some ... others ...’, as in the sentence below:

ámmá á-kín **ɔpɔkɔ** **ɔ-pəllɪŋ-ɔn** **ɬ-á.cɔɾɔ**
if CONJ.PERS-3A be_beaten:DEPINCOMPL PERS-one_of_a_group-PL C-stand:INCOMPL

ana **ɔ-pəllɪŋ-ɔn** **ɬ-íkkɔ** **cɪk**
and PERS-one_from_group-PL C-sit:INCOMPL VREF

and when they are beaten, some stand and others sit (fr. written description)

Unlike other nouns with the persona prefix, **ɔpəllɪn** cannot be used without it, i.e. it is not used as a vocative.

4.10.3. The plural suffix **-ŋŋn**

Nouns with the persona prefix form plurals through suffixation of the plural morpheme **-ŋŋn** to the singular noun. **-ŋŋn** has associative meaning such as ‘and companions’. The companions are typically the people who live in the same house as the mentioned person, but can also be friends or people working together. ‘My mother and father’ is expressed by the plural of ‘my mother’ or ‘my father’:

ɔ-ŋappâ-n

PERS-my_father-PL

my father and mother, my father and his family/companions

-ŋŋn does not cover accidental groups, such as people that happen to be together in a bus.

As expected, **ŋ** of **-ŋŋn** causes full assimilation of a preceding **t**, **k** or **n** to **ŋ**. The resulting geminated velar nasal is then shortened. **ŋ** is deleted after **ɨ**, **ɪ**, **u** or **ʊ** and after **l** or **r**. In addition, the **ɔ** of **-ŋŋn** coalesces (after **ŋ**-deletion) with a preceding **ɔ**, **ɛ** or **a** resulting in **ɔ**, **ɛ** and **a**, respectively. The vowel of the suffix may adopt a +ATR realization, or a realization towards +ATR upon attachment to a +ATR noun. Note that there is tone bridge in **ɔlɔttí-ŋn** and that in **ɔkíŋcê-n** the falling contour of the elided **ɔ** of the suffix is retained.

ɔpít	‘master, servant’
ɔpɪŋŋn	‘the master/servant and his/her companions’
ɔlɔttí	‘Lottí’
ɔlɔttí-ŋn	‘Lottí and companions’
ɔkíŋcɛ	‘Nose’ (as a nick name)
ɔkíŋcê-n	‘Nose and companions’

If a possessor pronoun is present, the plural suffix is attached after the possessor pronoun:

ɔpɪt p-ɪn ‘my master, my servant’

ɔpɪt p-ɪŋ-ɔn ‘my master and his/her companions, my servant and his/her companions’

In case of a demonstrative modifier, the plural suffix can come after the demonstrative (first example), but also before it (second example):

ɔ-kakká	éŋ-k-í-ɔn	ɬ-aá.t
PERS-Kakka	DEM-C-NEARSP-PL	C-come:COMPL

this Kakka and her companions have come

ɔ-kakká-n	en-ɬ-ɪ	ɬ-aá.t
PERS-Kakka-PL	DEM-C-NEARSP	C-come:COMPL

this Kakka and her companions have come

Vocatives of nouns which otherwise have the persona prefix also form plurals with the associative suffix:

íára-n

mother-PL

mother and father!

The associative suffix allows for plural reference as ‘one or more X’s’ if this is appropriate in the context. The second example, based on **ɔpattí** ‘person’, is irregular because the **ɪ** is deleted before the suffix.

paŋ-k-ɪŋɔn (< **páj pǐn -ɪŋɔn**)
sibling-C-POSS1.PL

my brothers!

paɬɬ-ɔn

person-PL

people! (way of greeting a group of people)

Relative words and question words referring to people (‘who’, ‘the one who’) are pluralized with **-ɪŋɔn** (see 6.1.5. and 20.1.1), as can the associative marker **attut/áttút** (see 6.8).

A special case of suffixation of **-ŋân** is the following, in which the suffix is attached to the plural of the common noun **ɲokul** ‘child’. It is a way of greeting a group of children, of which the speaker knows at least a few.

ɲokul-ŋân ‘children!’ (lit. children and companions)

The following example also involves a common plural noun (**ul** ‘people’). The suffix is attached to the demonstrative modifier:

k-kw-ânn-ítta	ɬɔ-ul	én-n-í-ŋân
3-C-NEG-be_married:DEPINCOMPL	at-people	DEM-C-NEARSP-PL

she cannot be married into the household of these people

5. Concorde

In Lumun there is agreement between (pro)nouns and their modifiers, and between subjects and non-dependent TAM-forms of verbs (cf. 12.5.1). I call the morphemes expressing agreement concords. Lumun concords are consonantal and are prefixed to the nominal modifier or the non-dependent verb.

Agreement with common nouns is controlled by the noun class of the noun. For nouns with a \emptyset prefix, i.e. vowel-initial nouns, the concord is **w**, for nouns with prefix **kw** it is **k**. In all other cases the concord is identical with the class prefix. Nouns with the persona prefix and personal pronouns have specific concords, which distinguish between singular and plural reference of the (pro)noun. Concorde do not bring about any tonal change.

The concords of common nouns are presented in table 25.

Table 25 Concorde of common nouns

<i>noun class prefix</i>	<i>concord</i>
p-	p-
t̥-	t̥-
t-	t-
c-	c-
k-	k-
kw-	k-
m-	m-
n-	n-
ɲ-	ɲ-
l-	l-
w-	w-
\emptyset	w-

The concord of singular nouns with the persona prefix is generally **p**; in some cases, however, singular nouns with the persona prefix take

another concord. Examples of this are presented further below. For personal pronouns with singular reference the concord is always **p**.

The concord of plural nouns with the persona prefix, as well as of personal pronouns with plural reference, is always **t̥**.

Table 26 Concords of nouns with the persona prefix

singular	p- (though not always, see further below)
plural	t̥-

Table 27 Concords of personal pronouns and pronominal clitics

singular (1, 2, 3)	p-
plural (12, 1A, 2A, 3A)	t̥-

5.1. Use of the concords

On verbs, the use of concords is restricted to the non-dependent TAM forms of main verbs and auxiliaries: Incompletives, Completives and Pasts. The Present of ‘be’ and irregular verbs, such as **C-ɔnô** ‘have’, also fall into this category. Concords further occur on modifiers, whether used as attributes or predicates or as independent forms.

In the example below, the connexive that modifies **lɔn** ‘words’ has the concord **l**; the demonstrative that modifies **pul** ‘person’ has the concord **p**; and the adjectival predicate has the concord **l**, agreeing with the head (**lɔn**) of the noun phrase that functions as subject to the predicate:

lɔn **l-ɔ-pul** **em-p-əɹé** **l-ɔpərât**
 words C-of-person DEM-C-DIST C-good

the words of that man are good (that man is saying good things)

An overview of modifiers with concords is presented in table 28. Certain quantifying modifiers, for example **appik** ‘all’, are never used with a concord. Numerals have not been included in the table, though the lower numerals take, or can take, a concord (see 10.4.1).

Table 28 Modifiers with concord

<i>possessor pronoun</i>	<i>demonstrative</i>	<i>connexive</i>	<i>adjective</i>
C- ĩn ‘my’ C- ǎŋ ‘your’ C- úŋ ‘his/her’ C- ɔrit ‘our’ (of you (SG) and me) C- ín ‘our’ (EXCL) C- ɔnnɔn ‘our’ (INCL) C- ón ‘your (PL)’ C- én ‘their’	C- en ‘that’ (anaphoric) en -C- í ‘this, these’ (near speaker) en -C- ərík ‘that, those’ (near addressee) en -C- əŋê ‘that, those’ (away from speaker and addressee)	C- ɔ ‘of’	C-ADJ

The non-dependent verbal TAMs always have a concord. This includes the Present of ‘be’ C-**aík**. By contrast, the dependent TAMs (Dependent Incomplete and Dependent Perfective), whether of a main verb or of an auxiliary verb, never have a concord. (See the chapter on Verbal inflections for the presence or absence of the concord in verbal TAMs).

As will be described in chapter 12, complex verbs (whether consisting of one or more verbal words) are built up of more than one verbal stem. Each composing verbal part occurs with or without concord, determined by its being a non-dependent or a dependent form. The verbal complex in the example below is built up of two Compleatives (an auxiliary and a main verb), which both have a concord:

m-p-ɔká.t **p-ɔkəŋáccɛ.t**
1-C-be:COMPL C-watch:COMPL

I had watched

The first verb in the next example (‘say’) is in Dependent Incomplete TAM and therefore has no concord. The second verb contains an Itive auxiliary in Incomplete TAM and a main verb in Dependent Incomplete TAM. The concord therefore only occurs on the Itive auxiliary, not on the main verb:

a-pari	p-ârəkkaṭa	ɪɛ.kat	ittɪ
CONJ-wife	C-of.Arəkkaṭa	said:DEPPRFV	that
k-kw-á.ṭ-óné	appentína		
3-C-IT:INCOMPL-grind:DEPINCOMPL	groundnuts		

the wife of Arəkkaṭa said that he must go and grind the groundnuts (i.e. told him to go and grind the groundnuts) (fr. written story)

The subject of a non-dependent verb, whether a noun (phrase), a free pronoun or a pronominal proclitic, always occurs in the same clause. Therefore, a concord never occurs without its lexical or pronominal subject being present in the same clause.

5.2. Concords of singular nouns with the persona prefix

Singular nouns with the persona prefix **ɔ-** typically have **p**-concord, but not always. With some modifiers they take concord as if they were common nouns, i.e., as if they lacked the persona prefix. Some details follow here (see also: Smits 2012: 97-98).

Singular kinship terms, except birth names, take **p**-concord:

ɔ-ɲappá	p-ɔnnón
PERS-my_father	C-POSS12A

our(INCL) father (i.e. father of me and other people who are not my siblings)

Singular birth names (table 23) do not take **p**-concord on a modifying possessor pronoun. Instead, the concord is determined by the initial segment of the noun without the persona prefix **ɔ-**:

ɔ-nenní n-m	‘my Nenni’ (second child, which is a girl)
ɔ-cɛccé c-m	‘my Cɛcce’ (third child, which is a girl)

The same goes for other personal names such as nicknames based on common nouns (first example below) and for nouns with the persona prefix that are based on a common noun that refers to a human being (second example below):

ɔ-kəɾɔl k-m ‘my Tortoise’ (Tortoise as a nick name)

ɔ-kəllán k-m ‘my old woman’ (typically refers to the wife)

Likewise, the concord on the connexive **C-ɔ** ‘of’ is **p** in case of singular kinship terms (first example below), but is determined by the initial segment of the noun without the prefix in case of a personal name (second example):

ɔ-nnán p-ɔ-mɛttimɛtti ‘the mother of *Mɛttimɛtti*’

ɔ-lɔtti l-ɔ-maɾari ‘*Lɔtti* (son) of *Maɾari*’

With personal names from other languages that start with a non-indigenous sound or with a sound that does not occur word-initially in Lumun, the concord **ɲ** is used on the connexive that forms part of the longer name (the name in the example below starts with [j]):

ɔ-cón ɲ-ɔ-cákkir ‘John (son) of Shakir’

In such cases **ɲ** may be a remnant of the phrase ***ɲokul ɲɔ** ‘child of’, with ***ɲokul** as an earlier form of the current **okul** ‘child’. Historical presence of the noun class prefix **ɲ** on ‘child’ is suggested by the plural **ɲokul** ‘children’. Moreover, semantically the noun class prefix **ɲ** would fit well on ‘child’, since the pair **ɲ/p** contains several nouns with the semantic notion of being small.

Also the concord on the copular verb (with or without restrictor) that introduces a relative clause takes the concord that goes with the name without **ɔ**-prefix:

ɔ-kukkó	í-k-á	ín-p-ɔcórɔt.é	tít
PERS-Kukku	RES-C-COP	1-C-meet:COMPL	in:ABS

Kukku, whom I met with in the way, ...

On the other hand, the concord on a verb expressing agreement with a singular personal name is **p**, as it is with other kinship terms:

ɔ-íára p-aá.t ‘my mother has come’

ɔ-kakká p-aát ‘Kakka has come’

However, a common noun that denotes a human being and that is used with the persona prefix takes agreement with the class of the noun without persona prefix:

ɔ-kəllán k-aá.t ‘the old woman has come’

5.3. Concords of plural nouns with the persona prefix

Plurals of nouns with the ɔ-prefix always induce the concord ɬ. For example:

ɔ-kakká-n ɬaát ‘Kakka and her companions have come’
ɔ-kəllán-ɔn ɬaát ‘the old woman and her companions have come’

5.4. Agreement with coordinated nouns

It seems that coordinated nouns as subjects tend to be avoided in natural language. It is nevertheless possible to make such constructions, particularly with nouns with animate reference, and especially with nouns with the persona prefix. Coordinated nouns with this prefix induce ɬ-concord:

ɔ-kukkú	ana	ɔ-kakká	ɬ-ɔpərɔt
PERS-Kukku	and	PERS-Kakka	C-good

Kukku and Kakka are fine

This also works for coordinated common nouns referring to humans, though not without some hesitation:

kəllán	ana	ókul	ɬ-ɔpərɔt
old_woman	and	child	C-good

the old woman and the child are fine

With regard to coordinated singular animals and inanimates there was some confusion. ɬ-concord was sometimes preferred (implicitly agreeing with **ɔkín** ‘they’, particularly in the case of animals), but agreement with the noun closest to the predicate was considered more or less acceptable as well, as was the concord **w-**, implicitly

agreeing with **arəpu** ‘things’. In the examples below all options are given a question mark.

im̩it	ána	c̩im̩anter̩i	?t̩-óp̩ər̩t / ?c-óp̩ər̩t / ?w-óp̩ər̩t
goat	and	hedgehog	C-good / c-good / c-good

the goat and the hedgehog are fine

k̩ər̩et	ána	cuccú	?t̩-ɔ̩ɛ̩ / ?c-ɔ̩ɛ̩ / ?w-ɔ̩ɛ̩
cloth	and	bead	C-red / c-red

the cloth and the necklace are red

In case of two nouns belonging to the same singular noun class, agreement with the plural of that same noun class was not an option:

*compúraŋ	ána	c̩im̩anter̩i	m-óp̩ər̩t
monkey(sp.)	and	hedgehog	C-good

the monkey and the hedgehog are fine

In case of coordination of a singular and a plural (or vice-versa) belonging to the same class, it was considered possible, though not without hesitation, to have agreement with the plural noun. The option is given a question mark:

mumpúraŋ	ána	c̩im̩anter̩i	?m-óp̩ər̩t
monkeys(sp.)	and	hedgehog	C-good

the monkeys and the hedgehog are fine

Coordinated plurals belonging to the same class take the concord corresponding with that class:

mumpúraŋ	ána	m̩im̩anter̩i	m-óp̩ər̩t
monkeys(sp.)	and	hedgehogs	C-good

the monkeys and the hedgehogs are fine

When both nouns were plural but belonged to different classes agreement with the plural closest to the modifier/predicate was considered the most acceptable option:

əlla	ana	lɔk	l-ḡnnón
cats	and	dogs	C-POSS12A

our cats and dogs / the cats and dogs are ours

lɔk	ána	əlla	w-ḡnnón
dogs	and	cats	C-POSS12A

our dogs and cats / the dogs and cats are ours

6. Pronouns

Lumun has free pronouns and bound pronouns (or pronominal clitics). There are different sets of pronouns according to their syntactic function (subject, first object, second object, addressee of a command, hortative addressee, complement of a preposition) and their type of reference: “persons” versus “things”.

The free personal pronouns in their full form will be discussed first, including their realization as complements of prepositions, then the personal subject pronominal clitics and the non-person (common noun) subject pronominal clitics. This is followed by a discussion of object pronominals, and addressive and hortative pronominals.

Within a sentence, the pronoun is generally used at a later stage than the noun with which it is co-referent, but not necessarily so. An example of cataphoric use of a (bound) pronoun is the following:

akka k-kw-ṣkuṛṭ.é n-tán a-kəṛṣl ṣṭ-íat
 that 3-C-move_up:COMPL with-up_on:ABS CONJ-tortoise IT:DEPINCOMPL-find:DEPPRFV

ittı mén m-ellâ
 that palm_fruits C-be_absent:INCOMPL

when he_i had climbed up, the tortoise_i found there were no palm fruits (left)
 (App. IV, 118-119)

6.1. Free personal pronouns: the full forms

Lumun has eight person/number distinctions in the personal pronouns. I gloss them as 1, 12, 2, 3, 1A, 12A, 2A and 3A, where ‘A’ stands for ‘et alii’ (and others). In the text, I refer to 1A pronouns as ‘we EXCL’, and to 12A pronouns as ‘we INCL’. These are the free personal pronouns in their full form:

Table 29 Free personal pronouns

1	ṣún	I
12	ṣrīt	I + you SG
2	ṣúṇ	you SG
3	ṣṭk	s/he

1A	ɔnɪ́n	we EXCL (I and other(s))
12A	ɔrúɲ/ɔrón	we INCL (I and you SG and other(s))
2A	ɔnón	you PL (you SG and other(s))
3A	ɔkɪ́n	they (s/he and other(s))

The Talodi language Dagik has the same person/number distinctions (Vanderelst, 2013).

6.1.1. Formatives of the free personal pronouns in their full form

The free pronouns in their full form contain the following formatives:

- the persona prefix **ɔ-**, which is the initial **ɔ** that is present in all full pronouns. This is the same marker that is found on kinship terms and personal names when used referentially (chapter 4.10).

- a person-marking element. This element contains **n** + a high tone for the 1 and 1A pronouns (**ɔnɪ́n** and **ɔnɪ́n**), and **k** + a low tone for the 3 and 3A pronouns (**ɔkɪ́n** and **ɔkɪ́n**). In the 3 and 3A pronouns, the falling tone is due to shift of the high tone of the persona prefix. The 12 and 12A pronouns share a person marking element **t**, realized as **r** between vowels, but are, unlike the other pairs, tonally different from each other (**ɔrɪ́t** and **ɔrúɲ/ɔrón**). The 2 and 2A pronouns (**ɔnón** and **ɔnnón**) share a high tone belonging to the person-marking element, but lack a shared person-marking segment.

- a final element **n** marks the notion ‘et alii’ (‘and others’) as compared to the 1, 12, 2 and 3 pronouns. This element is undoubtedly related to the plural marker **-ɲɪ́n** of nouns which have the persona prefix, even though as a formative of the pronouns it lacks a falling contour. In the pronouns, it is glossed as A, from ‘et alii’.

A fourth formative

There is good reason to posit in addition a pronominal formative **ɲ(ɔ)** in the free pronouns, which is deleted between vowels at the surface. Evidence for this formative is found in certain free pronouns that

lack the persona prefix **ᄃ**-, notably the object pronouns (occurring as second object) **ᄃᄃᄃ** ‘you (SG)’ and **ᄃᄃᄃ** ‘him/her’ (see section 6.4) and the 2A addressive pronoun **ᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘you (PL)’ (see section 6.5). The same pronominal element (**ᄃ**) is present in all independent pronouns of Dagik (Vanderelst 2013), and, as **ᄃᄃ** or **ᄃᄃ**, in all independent pronouns of Ngile, Dengebu and Jomang (Schadeberg 1981b, p. 155-156). The free pronouns and their assumed underlying forms with the pronominal formative **ᄃ(ᄃ)** after the persona prefix follow here:

1	ᄃ-ᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ
12	ᄃ-rīt	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-rīt
2	ᄃ-ᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ
3	ᄃ-ᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ
1A	ᄃ-nᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-nᄃᄃ
12A	ᄃ-rᄃᄃ/ᄃ-rᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-rᄃᄃ/ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-rᄃᄃ
2A	ᄃ-nᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-nᄃᄃ
3A	ᄃ-kᄃᄃ	< ᄃ-ᄃᄃ-kᄃᄃ

6.1.2. Use of the free pronouns in their full form: subjects

Non-singular free pronouns in their full form are commonly used as subject pronouns. In the first example below the free pronoun precedes a verb, in the second a predicative adjective:

ᄃ-kᄃᄃ	ᄃ-ᄃᄃ	ᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃ	ᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃ
PERS-3A	C-be:PR	C-be_known:INCOMPL	with-laziness
they are known for laziness			

ᄃ-nᄃᄃ	ᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ
PERS-1A	C-good
we are fine	

In the next examples, the subjunctive clitic **ᄃ** has coalesced with the initial vowel of **ᄃᄃᄃ** ‘I and you (SG)’ and **ᄃᄃᄃ** ‘we (INCL)’:

ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	ᄃ-rīt	ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ
SUBJ.(2-)come:DEPINCOMPL	SUBJ.PERS-12	cultivate_for:DEPINCOMPL	jackal
come so that we cultivate for the jackal (‘The story of the jackal’)			

ámma ʒ-rún t-átt-rət á-rún ína ittĩ ...
 if PERS-12A C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL SUBJ.PERS-12A know:DEPINCOMPL that
 when we find it, we will know that ...

ʒkĩn ‘they’ is commonly used with a plural antecedent. However, in the next example, from ‘A boy and a goat’, it has a singular antecedent (**Lottĩ**). Its underlying meaning ‘s/he and others’ (translating here into ‘(he and) his family’) can be clearly recognized:

ʒkũl w-əɾek w-ʒkát cik w-ʒccʒ.t kəɾan ittĩ ʒ-lʒttĩ
 child C-some C-be:COMPL VREF C-receive:COMPL name that PERS-Lottĩ
ana ʒ-kín t-ʒná.t kúttók k-én nʒ-káɾən
 and PERS-3A C-bring:COMPL grazing_ground C-POSS3A on-place
í-k-ʒccʒ.t kəɾan ittĩ tʒícāŋ
 RES-C-receive:COMPL name that Tʒícāŋ

there was a boy called **Lottĩ**, and his family (lit.: they) had their grazing ground in a place called **Tʒícāŋ** (‘A boy and a goat’)

Singular subjects, when immediately preceding a verb or predicative adjective, are far more commonly expressed by a bound pronominal form. Use of the free pronoun, as in the examples below, is nevertheless possible:

ʒ-un p-ɛ.kát-ʒk ŋəpák á-kw-ikkə
 PERS-1 C-give:PST-O3 beer SUBJ-3-drink:DEPINCOMPL

I gave him beer to drink

ʒ-un p-ʒpərət
 PERS-2 C-good
 you are fine

A free pronoun is used when the pronoun functions as subject but does not directly precede the verb (or adjective). Here the subject pronoun is modified by an adverb that separates it from the verb:

ʒ-un cənɛ p-a.kkót ŋəɾɛ
 PERS-1 here C-do:INCOMPL work

I do the work here

In the following two examples, the predicative adjective and the verb are omitted because they are understood from the preceding clause:

m-p-ɔpərɔt ana ɔ-ún
1-C-good and PERS-2

I am fine, and you?

ɔkkw.ɪ ámm.akka ɔ-ún
dance:IMP like PERS-1

dance like me! (dance like I dance!)

Free pronouns are further used in contrastive focus constructions with the focus marker **akk-** (first example), and in contrastive focus-constructions with a postposed free pronoun that is co-referent with a clitic pronoun before the verb (second example):

ɔ-ɔk akk-a.kákɔ mɪl
PERS-3 FOC-grind:INCOMPL sorghum

s/he grinds the sorghum

kərənn.ɪ a-n-ɔt-úmmɔ tɪk ɔ-ún
let:IMP CONJ-1-IT:DEPINCOMPL-take:DEPINCOMPL fire PERS-1

leave it! I will go and get the fire myself

6.1.3. Use of the free pronouns in their full form: objects

Pronominalized objects that follow the verb immediately are mostly expressed by enclitic pronouns. In this position, free pronouns are uncommon, though not altogether impossible in a word-for-word way of speaking. The example below is somewhat unnatural, hence the question mark, but was not considered “wrong” by my consultant (JS). Normally a clitic object pronoun would be used.

? **ana pɔl p-ɪmma.káɛ ɔ-ɔk**
and person C-see:PST PERS-3

and the man saw him/her (only in word-for-word speech)

Free pronouns can function as syntactic objects when the verb is understood from the context (first example below), or when the

object is contrastively focused in a construction with **akkă** ‘that’ (second example below):

m-p-immát-úŋ **kéccôk** | **ɔ-un-â** | **ij**
 1-C-see_at:COMPL-O2 market PERS-1-Q yes

I saw you in the market. me? yes

ɔ-ɔk **akka** **ɔn-ɔnáne** **mîl**
 PERS-3 that 2A-bring_for:DEPINCOMPL sorghum

it is to him/her that you (PL) will bring the sorghum

A free pronoun can also be used as an addressive, as in the following example:

éé **ɔ-un** **êm-p-ərík**
 hey PERS-2 DEM-C-NEARADDR

hey you there!

Normally, Imperatives and Hortatives are not combined with free subject pronouns. However, it is possible to have Imperatives with a postposed 2nd person free pronoun, expressing contrastive focus:

ɔɾuk.ɔ | **ɔɾuk.ɔ** **ɔ-úŋ**
 eat:IMP eat:IMP PERS-2

eat it! eat it yourself!

6.1.4. Free pronouns as complements of a preposition

Pronominal complements of prepositions have the free pronoun in its full form. Like in kinship terms and personal names, the persona prefix of the free pronoun changes to **a** after a preposition. The free pronouns can be complements of the prepositions **ɪ-** ‘in’, **nɔ-** ‘on, at’ and **tɔ-** ‘(up) on, (up) at’, as well as of the combined prepositions **ntɪ** **ɪ-** ‘from, out of’, **nnɔ-** ‘from on, from at’ and **ntɔ-** ‘from (up) on, (up) at’. The paradigms with **ɪ-**, **nɔ-** and **tɔ-** are given below.

Note that the tonal make-up of the free pronouns plays no role here: all combinations have the same low-falling (L.HL) tone pattern.

	ɪ ‘in’	nɔ ‘on, at’	tɔ ‘(up) on, (up) at’
1	ɪ-aôn	n-aôn	t-aôn
2	ɪ-aôŋ	n-aôŋ	t-aôŋ
12	ɪ-arît	n-arît	t-arît
3	ɪ-aâk	n-aâk	t-aâk
1A	ɪ-anîŋ	n-anîŋ	t-anîŋ
12A	ɪ-arôn/ɪ-arôn	n-arôn/n-arôn	t-arôn/t-arôn
2A	ɪ-anôn	n-anôn	t-anôn
3A	ɪ-akîn	n-akîn	t-akîn

Some examples of pronominal substitution follow here.

k-kw-ɔ̌cɔ̌rɔ̌t̪.ɛ

3-C-pass_coming_from_opposite_direction:COMPL

ɪ-kəllân

in-old_woman

s/he passed the old woman coming from the opposite direction

k-kw-ɔ̌cɔ̌rɔ̌t̪.ɛ

3-C-pass_coming_from_opposite_direction:COMPL

ɪ-a-âk

in-PERS-3

s/he passed her coming from the opposite direction

k-kw-á.t̪t̪é

3-C-leave:inCOMPL

nɔ-ól

on-persons

én-n-í

DEM-C-NEARSP

s/he will leave these people

k-kw-á.t̪t̪é

3-C-leave:INCOMPL

n-á-kîn

on-PERS-3A

s/he will leave them

By contrast, complements of the preposition **tɔ** ‘(down) at’ cannot be replaced by a personal pronoun.

6.1.5. **ɔ̌kkwên** ‘who’ and **ɔ̌kkwí í** ‘(the one) who’

ɔ̌kkwên ‘who’ functions as a relative question word in embedded clauses. It contains a formative based on the 3SG pronoun **ɔ̌k** ‘s/he’ and the anaphoric demonstrative **p-én** ‘this, that’, with **p** agreeing with **ɔ̌k**. **ɔ̌kkwên** is discussed in chapter 20.1.1, the anaphoric demonstrative in 8.2.

A formative based on the 3SG pronoun **ᵛᵛk** ‘s/he’ is also part of **ᵛᵛkwí** ‘the one’. **ᵛᵛkwí** further contains **p-í**, with the concord **p** agreeing with the 3SG pronominal element. **p-í** is derived from the deictic verb **C-éi** ‘be here (near speaker)’, which is also present in the near-speaker demonstrative **en-C-í**. **ᵛᵛkwí** is always used in combination with the restrictor **í-**, together expressing ‘(the one) who’ (literally ‘s/he is here who’). Its plural is formed through attachment of the plural of nouns with the persona prefix **-ᵛᵛn**: **ᵛᵛkwíᵛn**. Two examples follow here.

aɾík	ír-ᵛᵛt-óllattarəne		ana
come:IMP	(SUBJ-)12-IT:DEPINCOMPL-run_against_each_other:DEPINCOMPL		and
ᵛᵛk.kw.í	í-p-úrrə.t	ᵛ-páj	á-kw-ᵛnókə
the_one	RES-C-leave_behind:COMPL	PERS-sibling	SUBJ-3-take:DEPINCOMPL
			kəpa áppík
			meat all

Come so that we run against each other and the one who wins let him take all the meat (fr. written story)

ana	ᵛᵛk.kw.í-ᵛn	í-t-ílle	t-a.pəre	ᵛuccôk
and	the_one-PL	RES-C-die.PLUR:INCOMPL	C-excrete:INCOMPL	blood

and the ones who die excrete blood (fr. written essay)

6.2. Bound personal subject pronouns

The bound personal subject pronouns precede a (concord +) verb or concord + modifier. Some of the bound pronouns surface in a different way before a concord than directly before a verbal stem. Most of these differences, however, can be explained from phonological effects (see 6.2.1 and 6.2.2). The bound second person plural pronoun (2A) has different shapes directly before a (vowel-initial) verbal stem, namely **nń-**, and before its concord (**t**), namely **ń-** or **ᵛn-**. Assuming that the underlying form has the long nasal, the obligatory retention of nasal length before a verb stem can be explained from avoidance of ambiguity with the first person singular bound pronoun in the same environment (examples are given in tables 37 and 38). Before the concord **t**, on the other hand, nasal length cannot be realized. Noteworthy is also that the bound 3A pronoun is used only before a concord, not directly before a verbal stem. In the latter environment, the full pronoun is used. This, too,

may be motivated by avoidance of ambiguity with the bound first person singular pronoun (see tables 37 and 38). Further details of assimilation of the bound subject pronouns before a concord as well as paradigms with bound subject pronouns before a concord + verb and before a verbal stem are provided in 6.1.1 and 6.2.2.

The table below presents the bound personal subject pronouns (also called personal subject pronoun clitics). The free pronouns are given for comparison. Most bound subject pronouns are shortened forms of the free pronouns and induce the same tonal effects on the element that they precede as the corresponding free pronoun.

Table 30 Bound personal subject pronouns

	<i>bound personal subject pronouns</i>	<i>free pronouns</i>
1	ń-	ɔ́n
2	ń- /ɔ́ń-	ɔ́nɔ
3	kw- + tone pattern	ɔ́k
12	ĩt-	ɔ́rĩt
1A	ín-	ɔ́nín
12A	ón-	ɔ́rón/ɔ́rón
2A	nń-/ń-/ɔ́n-	ɔ́nón
3A	ń- + tone pattern	ɔ́kín

The 3rd person bound pronoun (kw-) is not just a shortened form of the free pronoun (ɔ́k). Moreover, the 3 and 3A bound subject pronouns have tonal effects that are different from those of the 3 and 3A free pronouns. They add a high tone to the initial mora of the predicate to which they are attached. When the predicate is a verb in Past or Completive TAM this initial high tone comes in addition to the tone belonging to verb itself. When the verb is in (Dependent) Incompletive or Dependent Perfective TAM, the initial high tone lowers a high or falling tone present later in the verb. Some examples of this —irregular— tonal effect are given in the tables 32-36. Apart from this tonal effect, the 3A bound pronoun (a moraic nasal) has retained the falling tone of the free pronoun: it remains high itself upon attachment to a predicate.

6.2.1. Combinations of bound subject pronominal and concord

Before non-dependent verbs and other predicates such as adjectival predicates, the subject, whether a noun (phrase), a free pronoun or a bound pronoun, is always followed by a concord. The combination of the subject proclitics with their concords gives the following results (the tones are omitted in the list below, since for the 3 and 3A forms they cannot be adequately represented). Note in the 2A form that the nasal is short before the concord:

1 'I'	n + p	> m-p
2 'you'	(ɔ)ŋ + p	> (ɔ)ŋ-kw
3 's/he'	kw + p	> k-kw (< kw-kw)
12 'I and you (SG)'	it + t̥	> it̥-t̥
1A 'we (EXCL)'	in + t̥	> in̥-t̥
12A 'we (INCL)'	un + t̥	> un̥-t̥
2A 'you (PL)'	(ɔ)n + t̥	> (ɔ)n̥-t̥
3A 'they'	n + t̥	> n̥-t̥

These assimilations are regular except the assimilation between the 2SG subject clitic and concord, and between the 3SG subject clitic and concord. Though in a few other cases a first velar consonant determines the place of articulation of the second consonant in the sequence⁵¹, the general rule is that the place of articulation of the second consonant is dominant, whether within the word or across the word boundary.

Example paradigms with Incompletives of verbs of different tone classes and a bound pronominal + concord, showing the tonal and assimilatory effects, follow here. For comparison the forms are given with the free pronoun as well. Recall that the bound pronoun is commonly used for 1, 2 and 3 subjects, while the free pronoun is commonly used for 12, 1A, 12A, 2A and 3A subjects. There is tone

⁵¹ Notably **ɔpaŋ + p̃in** > **ɔpaŋk̃in** 'my sibling' (not ***ɔpamp̃in**), and **iccik + cə** > **iccik kə** 'near' (not ***ic̃cic-cə**). The place of articulation of the first consonant is also dominant upon suffixation of the discourse particles **-ti**, **-na** and **-mé** (see 17.2.2 to 17.2.4).

bridge on the Incompletives of tone class IIA and IIB when preceded by 3 and 3A free pronouns.

Table 31 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C-**ímma** (< **ímma** ‘see’)

	<i>subject clitic</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-ímma	ɔon p-ímma	‘I will see’
2	ŋ-kw-ímma	ɔuŋ p-ímma	‘you will see’
3	k-kw-ímma	ɔɔk p-ímma	‘s/he will see’
12	ɪt-t-ímma	ɔrit t-ímma	‘I and you (SG) will see’
1A	ɪn-t-ímma	ɔnɪn t-ímma	‘we (EXCL) will see’
12A	on-t-ímma	ɔron t-ímma	‘we (INCL) will see’
2A	n-t-ímma	ɔnɔn t-ímma	‘you (PL) will see’
3A	ń-t-ímma	ɔkín t-ímma	‘they will see’

Table 32 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C-**aréko** (< **aréko** ‘work’)

	<i>subject clitic</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-aréko	ɔon p-aréko	‘I will work’
2	ŋ-kw-aréko	ɔuŋ p-aréko	‘you will work’
3	k-kw-áreko	ɔɔk p-áreko	‘s/he will work’
12	ɪt-t-aréko	ɔrit t-aréko	‘I and you (SG) will work’
1A	ɪn-t-aréko	ɔnɪn t-aréko	‘we (EXCL) will work’
12A	on-t-aréko	ɔron t-aréko	‘we (INCL) will work’
2A	n-t-aréko	ɔnɔn t-aréko	‘you (PL) will work’
3A	ń-t-áreko	ɔkín t-áreko	‘they will work’

Table 33 Clitic and free pronouns with Incompletive C-**arəkô** (< **arəkô** ‘eat’)

	<i>subject clitic</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-arəkô	ɔon p-arəkô	‘I will eat’
2	ŋ-kw-arəkô	ɔuŋ p-arəkô	‘you will eat’
3	k-kw-árəkô	ɔɔk p-árəkô	‘s/he will eat’
12	ɪt-t-arəkô	ɔrit t-arəkô	‘I and you (SG) will eat’
1A	ɪn-t-arəkô	ɔnɪn t-arəkô	‘we (EXCL) will eat’
12A	on-t-arəkô	ɔron t-arəkô	‘we (INCL) will eat’
2A	n-t-arəkô	ɔnɔn t-arəkô	‘you (PL) will eat’
3A	ń-t-árəkô	ɔkín t-árəkô	‘they will eat’

Paradigms with Completives of the same verbs follow here. In the Completives there is no tone bridge.

Table 34 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive c-**immât** (< **imma** ‘see’)

	<i>subject clitic</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-immât	၁၀၀ p-immât	‘I saw’
2	η-kw-immât	၁၀၅ p-immât	‘you saw’
3	k-kw-immât	၁၁၀ p-immât	‘s/he saw’
12	it-t-immât	၁၁၅ t-immât	‘I and you (SG) saw’
1A	in-t-immât	၁၂၀ t-immât	‘we (EXCL) saw’
12A	on-t-immât	၁၂၅ t-immât	‘we (INCL) saw’
2A	n-t-immât	၁၃၀ t-immât	‘you (PL) saw’
3A	ín-t-immât	၁၃၅ t-immât	‘they saw’

Table 35 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive c-**ṛekôt** (< **ṛéko** ‘work’)

	<i>subject clitic</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-ṛekôt	၁၀၀ p-ṛekôt	‘I have worked’
2	η-kw-ṛekôt	၁၀၅ p-ṛekôt	‘you have worked’
3	k-kw-ṛekôt	၁၁၀ p-ṛekôt	‘s/he has worked’
12	it-t-ṛekôt	၁၁၅ t-ṛekôt	‘I and you (SG) have worked’
1A	in-t-ṛekôt	၁၂၀ t-ṛekôt	‘we (EXCL) have worked’
12A	on-t-ṛekôt	၁၂၅ t-ṛekôt	‘we (INCL) have worked’
2A	n-t-ṛekôt	၁၃၀ t-ṛekôt	‘you (PL) have worked’
3A	ín-t-ṛekôt	၁၃၅ t-ṛekôt	‘they have worked’

Table 36 Clitic and free pronouns with Completive c-**ṛəkót** (< **ṛəkó** ‘eat’)

	<i>subject clitics</i>	<i>free pronoun</i>	
1	m-p-ṛəkót	၁၀၀ p-ṛəkót	‘I have eaten’
2	η-kw-ṛəkót	၁၀၅ p-ṛəkót	‘you have eaten’
3	k-kw-ṛəkót	၁၁၀ p-ṛəkót	‘s/he has eaten’
12	it-t-ṛəkót	၁၁၅ t-ṛəkót	‘I and you (SG) have eaten’
1A	in-t-ṛəkót	၁၂၀ t-ṛəkót	‘we (EXCL) have eaten’
12A	on-t-ṛəkót	၁၂၅ t-ṛəkót	‘we (INCL) have eaten’
2A	n-t-ṛəkót	၁၃၀ t-ṛəkót	‘you (PL) have eaten’
3A	ín-t-ṛəkót	၁၃၅ t-ṛəkót	‘they have eaten’

6.2.2. Use of the subject pronominals without concord

Before the dependent TAMs of verbs (the Dependent Incompletive and the Dependent Perfective) the bound subject pronominals occur without concord. Here too singular subjects are usually expressed by the bound pronominal, the ones with plural reference by free pronouns.

The table below gives paradigms with Dependent Incompletives and Dependent Perfectives. The Dependent Incompletives in table 37 and the Dependent Perfectives in table 38 are introduced by the proclitic conjunctive particle **á** ‘and, while’ and the proclitic subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that’. The verb in the table is **ĩɛ** ‘say’ (tone class I); its Dependent Incompletive and Dependent Perfective stems are, respectively, **ĩɛ** and **ĩɛkat**. The 12A bound form is rarely used, hence the parentheses. The form was given in elicitation with some hesitation. The full form is much preferred here, probably also to avoid ambiguity with the first person singular free pronoun. The 3A clitic is not used in this context at all and the 2A clitic has a long nasal in this environment (as noted also in 6.2). In both cases this avoids ambiguity with the first person singular clitic.

Note further that **a** and **ɔ** do not assimilate in the 3 free pronouns. Note also that the falling tone of the 3 and 3A free pronouns (**ɔ́k** and **ɔ́kɪ̀n**) is realized as low after the subjunctive particle **â**, and that, in the same environment, the bound 3 pronoun brings no high tone to the initial mora of the verb. In the other cases, the tones are expected from the tone rules.

Table 37 Clitic and free pronouns with Dependent Incompletive **ĩɛ** ‘say’

		á or â + pronoun clitic + Dep. Incompletive	á or â + free pronoun + Dep. Incompletive
1 ‘I’	á	a-n-ĩɛ	a-un ɪ̃ɛ
	â	á-n-ĩɛ	á-un ɪ̃ɛ
2 ‘you’	á	a-ĩɛ (< a-ŋ-ĩɛ)	a-un ɪ̃ɛ
	â	á-ĩɛ (< á-ŋ-ĩɛ)	á-un ɪ̃ɛ
3 ‘s/he’	á	a-kw-ĩɛ	a-ɔ́k ɪ̃ɛ

	â	á-kw-íře	á-ɔk íře
12 'I and you (SG)'	á	a-ir-íře	a-rit íře
	â	á-ir-íře	á-rit íře
1A 'we (EXCL)'	á	a-in-íře	a-nin íře
	â	á-in-íře	ánin íře
12A 'we (INCL)'	á	? a-on-íře	a-run/arɔn íře
	â	? á-on-íře	á-run/áɔn íře
2A 'you (PL)'	á	a-nn-íře	a-nɔn íře
	â	á-nn-íře	ánɔn íře
3A 'they'	á	-	a-kín íře
	â	-	ákín íře

Table 38 Clitic and free pronouns with Dependent Perfective ířekat (< íře 'say')

		á + subject clitic + Dep. Perfective	á + free pronoun + Dep. Perfective
1 'I'	á	a-n-ířekat	aon ířekat
	â	á-n-ířekat	áon ířekat
2 'you'	á	a-ířekat (< a-ŋ-ířekat)	aɔŋ ířekat
	â	á-ířekat	áɔŋ ířekat
3 's/he'	á	a-kw-ířekat	aɔk ířekat
	â	á-kw-ířekat	áɔk ířekat
12 'I and you (SG)'	á	a-ir-ířekat	arit ířekat
	â	á-ir-ířekat	árit ířekat
1A 'we (EXCL)'	á	a-in-ířekat	anin ířekat
	â	á-in-ířekat	ánin ířekat
12A 'we (INCL)'	á	(a-on-ířekat)	aron/arɔn ířekat
	â	(á-on-ířekat)	áron/áɔn ířekat
2A 'you (PL)'	á	a-nn-ířekat	anɔn ířekat
	â	á-nn-ířekat	ánɔn ířekat
3A 'they'	á	-	akín ířekat
	â	-	ákín ířekat

Examples with the 3 subject pronominal follow here. C-arɔ́tɔk in the example below patterns with the non-dependent verbs: it always occurs with a concord.

ɔ-ttɛ	p-íɛ.t	lón	él-l-í	méncén
PERS-your_father	C-say:COMPL	words	DEM-C-NEARSP	some_time_ago
á-k-kw-árə̀tək	íɔ	a-kw-íɛ.kat	ittĩ ...	
CONJ-3-C-still	die:DEPINCOMPL	CONJ-3-say:DEPPRFV	that	

your father said these things some time ago before he died, he said ... (lit.: when he was still to die) (Genesis 50:16)

k-kw-átt-ɪɔt	ɔ-nenní	a-kw-ɔ̀ɾəkɔ	kəpá
3-C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMP	PERS-Nenni	CONJ-3-eat:DEPINCOMPL	meat

s/he found Nenni eating meat

6.3. Common noun subject pronominal clitics

There is a set of common noun subject pronominal clitics that pronominalizes common nouns. Like the bound person subject pronominals, the bound common noun subject pronominals are proclitic to the predicate. They are segmentally the same as the concords, but pattern tonally with the 3 (and 3A) pronominal subject clitics with person reference: they add a high tone to the first mora of the predicate to which they are attached. This high tone lowers the high or falling tone of (Dependent) Incompletives of tone classes IIA and IIB, which have a high or falling tone on the second or third mora (see chapter 12.4.2 for the tone classes). In other TAMs the high tone comes in addition to the high or falling tone of the verb.

The subject pronominal clitics are represented in the table below. The last column gives the combinations of pronominal clitic and concord. The obstruent pronoun clitic and concord combinations are all voiceless, and remain voiceless when preceded by a word with a final vowel. They are therefore represented with a double consonant. The nasal combinations as well as **l-l** and **w-w** are underlyingly geminated but realized without length. For this reason they are represented as a single consonant. Note that underlyingly geminated (PRO-C) **ŋ** and **w** are not deleted in case of a vowel-final preceding word.

Table 39 Pronoun clitics and concords combined

<i>noun class</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>common noun subj. pronominal clitic</i>	<i>pronominal clitic + concord</i>
p	p-	p- + tone pattern	p-p- + tone pattern
t̥	t̥-	t̥- + tone pattern	t̥-t̥- + tone pattern
t	t-	t- + tone pattern	t-t- + tone pattern
c	c-	c- + tone pattern	c-c- + tone pattern
k, kw subcl. k subcl. kw	k- k-	k- + tone pattern kw- + tone pattern	k-k- + tone pattern k-k- + tone pattern
m	m-	m- + tone pattern	m + tone pattern (< m-m)
n	n-	n- + tone pattern	n + tone pattern (< n-n)
ɲ	ɲ-	ɲ- + tone pattern	ɲ + tone pattern (< ɲ-ɲ)
l	l-	l- + tone pattern	l + tone pattern (< l-l)
∅, w subcl. ∅ subcl. w	w- w-	w- + tone pattern w- + tone pattern	w + tone pattern (< w-w) w + tone pattern (< w-w)

An example with a nominal common noun subject and one with pronominal substitution follow here:

ana **pálla** **p-ɔ́ɛkɔ́.t**
and cat C-eat:COMPL

and the cat has eaten it

ana **p-p-ɔ́ɛkɔ́.t**
and PRO-C-eat:COMPL

and it (the cat) has eaten it

Two further examples follow here. In the first, the subject is taken up by a pronoun after **ana** ‘and’. In the second, the subject pronoun is co-referent with the object noun of the preceding clause:

t̥-ɪkkə **cɪk** **kárəttóm** **t̥-ɔ́pərót** **ana** **t̥-t̥-ɔ́kɪtak**
NOM-sit VREF Khartoum C-good and PRO-C-bad

staying in Khartoum is good and bad (lit.: staying in Khartoum is good and it is bad)

ɔ-kumán **p-ónó** **cúccû** **ana** **c-c-ópərôt**
 PERS-Kumanj C-have bead and PRO-C-good

Kumanj has a necklace and it is beautiful

6.3.1. Subject referencing common nouns denoting people

Some common nouns refer to people. In a subordinated clause with a subject that is co-referent with a common noun in the main clause that denotes a person, preferably, a common noun pronoun is used:

kəllán **k-á.rəkó** **túrít** **ámmá** **k-k-íamâ.t**
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL food if PRO-C-become_hungry:COMPL

the old woman eats food when she is hungry

təmaccə **t-əŋət.é** **ittı** **t-t-ântán**
 old_woman C-like:COMPL that PRO-C-come:INCOMPL

the old man wanted to come

It is, however, not impossible to switch to the 3 personal pronoun in the subordinated clause. In the example below, co-reference of the subject of the main clause and the subordinate clause is possible, but not assumed on the basis of the utterance alone. The context must make clear to whom the 3 personal pronoun refers.

təmaccə **t-əŋət.é** **ittı** **k-kw-ântán**
 old_woman C-like:COMPL that 3-C-come:INCOMPL

the old man wanted him/her to come / the old man wanted to come

In stories, however, it is not uncommon to find 3 personal pronouns instead of common noun pronouns in subordinate clauses. In the next sentence, from an animal story, the jackal (**aləpaccôṭ**) is pronominalized by the 3 personal pronoun clitic **kw-** after **ittı** and then again after the subjunctive particle **â**. The squirrel (**ŋərrôṭ**), which is nominal object in the clause introduced by **ittı**, is pronominalized by the (elided) common noun subject pronominal **ŋ** (**á-ŋ-órrépó** > **á-rrépó**). In the third clause, both the jackal (as the subject of ‘eat’) and the squirrel (as the object of ‘eat’) are pronominalized by personal pronouns:

áləpaccôṭ **w-ɪɛ.káɛ** **nə-cɪkɪt** **c-ʊŋ** **ittɪ**
 jackal C-say:PST on-heart C-POSS3 that
k-kw-ámikkət **ŋərrón** **á-rrópó** **ń-tó-pírá**
 3-C-deceive:INCOMPL squirrel SUBJ-(PRO-)move_down:DEPINCOMPL with-up_on-tree
á-kw-ṣṛəkó-kōk
 SUBJ-3-eat:DEPINCOMPL-O3

the jackal said by himself that he would trick the squirrel so that he (the squirrel) would come down from the tree so that he (the jackal) would eat him

In the next sentence, the cat is first pronominalized by a common noun pronoun (on the verb ‘call’) then by a personal pronoun (on the verb ‘say to’). In the last clause, the jackal is pronominalized by a personal pronoun as object of ‘say to’:

a-pélla **akkakat** **a-p-ákkar.at** **áləpaccôṭ**
 CONJ-cat come:DEPPRFV CONJ-PRO-call:DEPPRFV jackal
a-kw-ṣme.kat-ṣk **ittɪ ...**
 CONJ-3-tell:DEPPRFV-O3 that

and the cat came and called the jackal and he said to him: “how are you, I hope you are fine?” (‘The story of the jackal’)

6.4. Object pronouns

Object pronouns come after the verb. Object pronouns refer only to humans (including animals that act like humans, as found in stories). Non-human objects are not pronominally expressed. Compare the two sentences below. In the first sentence it is also possible, though not preferred, to omit the object pronoun. In the second it cannot be present.

m-p-ənú **pəɽɛ** **ana** **m-p-əŋəṭ-ṣk**
 1-C-have husband and 1-C-like:COMPL-O3

I have a husband and I love him

m-p-ənú **cúccú** **ana** **m-p-əŋəṭ.ê**
 1-C-have necklace and 1-C-like:COMPL

I have a necklace and I like it

The object pronominals with singular reference (1, 2 and 3) come in four paradigms. The choice between the first three of these paradigms is conditioned by the morphology of the verbal TAM and the tone class of the verb involved (see chapter 12.4.2); I call these paradigms group I, group II and group III. The forms of group I and group III in some cases interact with the preceding verb in ways that do not necessarily follow from phonological rules, and the initial *k* of the group II forms is epenthetic. The singular object pronouns of the first three paradigms are clitic.

The singular forms in the fourth paradigm mark a second object; they are free pronouns. This paradigm lacks first person forms (1, 12 and 1A) since in case of presence of both a first person object and a second or third person object, the first person object always comes first, due to the person hierarchy between objects (see further down in this section).

The object pronouns with plural reference (12, 1A, 12A, 2A and 3A) each have one form. Because the 2A and 3A pronouns also function as second objects and are thus free pronouns, not clitics, I regard the whole set as free pronouns. The plurals of group I, II and III might also be regarded as bound pronouns, but there is no compelling reason to do so: assimilation processes occur in just the same way as expected between two separate words.

Whereas the bound subject pronouns have a tonal trace of the persona prefix *ǂ*-, the object pronouns lack this, as can be seen from the 3 and 3A object pronouns, which are low-toned. The 1 and 2 object pronouns of group I and II are represented as nasals with a high tone. In prepausal position this high tone is realized on the final vowel of the verb to which the pronoun is attached. In non-prepausal position the high tone will lower and may be realized on the next word (analogous to the Tone Shift Rule and the Tone Reappearance sub-Rules).

For comparison, the full pronouns are given in the first column of the table below.

Table 40 Object pronouns and clitics

Full pronouns	Object clitics (realizations)			Second object pronouns
	group I	group II	group III	
1 ɔ́n	-ń	-kín	-ín	–
2 ɔ́ŋ	-ŋ	-kúŋ	-úŋ	ŋúŋ
3 ɔ́k	-k	-kɔk	-ɔk	ŋɔk
12 ɔ́řt	třt			–
1A ɔ́nɪn	nɪn			–
12A ɔ́rún/ ɔ́rón	tún/tón			–
2A ɔ́nón	nón			
3A ɔ́kín	kín			

The next part mentions the tone classes and TAM-stems of verbs. Verbs of tone class I have an all-low tone pattern. Verbs of tone class IIA have at least three morae and have a high tone on their second mora while the other morae are low. Verbs of tone class IIB consist of two or three morae and have a falling tone on their final mora while the preceding mora(e) is/are low. For TAMs and TAM-stems see chapter 12. Lumun verbs are either vowel-final or t-final.

Group I object pronouns

Group I object pronouns (-ń, -ŋ, -k, **třt**, **nɪn**, **tún/tón**, **nón**, **kín**) are used after:

- incomplete, dependent incomplete and dependent complete TAM-stems of vowel-final verbs of tone classes I and IIA (these forms end in **ɔ**, **ɛ** or **a**);
- Imperatives of vowel-final verbs of tone classes I and IIA (these forms end in **í**, **ɛ** (not **é**) or **a**, and occasionally in **ɔ**).

Pronouns of this paradigm are not used with verbs ending in the benefactive suffix (**ɪ**)**ne**.

An example paradigm with the Imperative of the verb **ɔ́kɔ́řacce** ‘watch’ (tone class IIA) follows here. The Imperative is **ɔ́kɔ́řacce**.

ɔkəʔaccé-n	‘watch me!’
ɔkəʔaccɛ-k	‘watch him/her!’
ɔkəʔaccɛ nɪn	‘watch us (EXCL)!’
ɔkəʔaccɛ kɪn	‘watch them!’

An example paradigm with the Incomplete of the verb **ɪmma** ‘see’ (tone class I) follows here. The incomplete TAM-stem of this verb is **ɪmma** + H. The tonal effects are in accordance with the tone rules specified in chapter 3.3. The final falling tone in the example with the 3SG object pronoun is the realization of the high tone that comes with the incomplete TAM-stem of **ɪmma** (probably on underlying -ɔk, of which the vowel is deleted after **a**, 3rd example in the paradigm); the same is true for the falling tone on the 3PL object pronoun (last example). The initial obstruents of the plural pronominals are pronounced with lenition (as between vowels).

ʊl ɪmmá-n	‘the people will see me’
ʊl ɪmmá-ŋ	‘the people will see you’
ʊl ɪmmâ-k	‘the people will see him/her’
ʊl ɪmma tɪt	‘the people will see us (you and me)’
ʊl ɪmma nɪn	‘the people will see us (EXCL)’
ʊl ɪmma tɔn	‘the people will see us (INCL)’
ʊl ɪmma nɔn	‘the people will see you (PL)’
ʊl ɪmma kɪn	‘the people will see them’

Imperatives based on ɔ-final verbs of tone classes I and IIA end in **í** and in some rare cases in **ʊ** (see table 47). Such Imperatives take object pronouns from group I, though the forms with a singular object pronominal do not result from a regular process of attachment. The final vowel of the Imperative (**í** or **ʊ**) changes into **ɔ**, and the high tone of the final **ɪ** is lost, as can be seen upon attachment of the 3 object pronoun. Both the vowel change and the loss of high tone are not expected from general morpho-phonological and morpho-tonological processes. The combination with object pronouns with plural reference is morpho-phonologically and morpho-tonologically regular.

Examples with the Imperative **ᵛmíccí** ‘greet!’ (< **ᵛmíccə** ‘greet’, tone class IIA) follow here.

ᵛmíccə-n	‘greet me!’
ᵛmíccə-k	‘greet him/her!’
ᵛmíccɪ nín	‘greet us (EXCL)!’
ᵛmíccɪ kín	‘greet them!’

Examples with the Imperative **ᵛɽɔ** (< **ᵛɽə** ‘throw at’, tone class I) follow here. Note, however, that only in a few cases the Imperative of a verb of tone class I ends in **ɔ**. By contrast, Imperatives of **ə**-final verbs of tone class IIB all take final **ɔ**. In the paradigm below, the use of (singular) object pronouns of group II was rejected.

ᵛɽə-n	‘throw at me!’
ᵛɽə-k	‘throw at him/her!’
ᵛɽɔ nín	‘throw at us (EXCL)!’
ᵛɽɔ kín	‘throw at them!’

Group II object pronominals

Object pronouns of group II (**-kín**, **-kúŋ**, **-kək**, **tít**, **nín**, **tún**, **nón**, **kín**) are used after:

- incomplete, dependent incomplete and dependent completive TAM-stems of vowel-final verbs of tone class IIB (these forms end in **ə**, **ɛ** or **a**);
- Imperatives of vowel-final verbs of tone class IIB (these forms end in **ɔ**, **ɛ** or **a**).

The morpho-tonological effects conform to the tone rules specified in chapter 3.3, except in some cases of attachment of the 3 object pronominal **-kək**. A case is presented below in which **-kək** is unexpectedly realized with a falling tone, though there is no preceding high tone that can shift.

An example paradigm with the Incomplete of the verb **ɔkê** ‘shave’ follows here. The incomplete TAM-stem of this verb is **akê**. **C-akê**

+ **-kək** would be expected to result in C-**akékək**, but gives C-**akekək** instead. The other forms conform to expectation, including, for example, the lowering of the verbal contour before a pronominal with a high tone (see 3.4.1). The initial **k** of the singular pronominals is epenthetic; it is not part of the full free pronouns of which all object pronominals (like all subject pronominals) are shortened forms.

pul pake-kín	‘the person will shave me’
pul pake-kún	‘the person will shave you’
pul pake-kək (expected: pakê + -kək > *pakékək)	‘the person will shave him/her’
pul paké tit	‘the person will shave us (you and me)’
pul pake nín	‘the person will shave us (EXCL)’
pul pake tón	‘the person will shave us (INCL)’
pul pake nón	‘the person will shave you (PL)’
pul paké kin	‘the person will shave them’

An example paradigm with the Imperative of the verb **εε** ‘stab, blow’ follows here. The Imperative is **εε**. Note that the 3 pronominal has a low tone here (which is expected from the tone rules: there is no high tone involved at all).

εε-kín	‘stab me!’
εε-kək	‘stab him/her!’
εε nín	‘stab us!’
εε kin	‘stab them!’

Imperatives based on **ɔ**-final verbs from tone class IIB end in **ɔ**. This **ɔ** is lowered to **ɔ̄** upon attachment of **-kín** ‘me’ or **-kək** ‘him, her’. Before a plural pronoun clitic, **ɔ** remains unchanged.

Imperative: ɔccɔ (< ɔccɔ̄ ‘receive, take’)		
ɔccɔ-kín	‘take me’	(* ɔccɔ-kín)
ɔccɔ-kək	‘take him!’	
ɔccɔ nín	‘take us!’	
ɔccɔ kin	‘take them!’	(* ɔccɔ kin)

Imperative: **ɔkkwɔ** (< **ɔkkwɔ̃** ‘hit’)

ɔkkwɔ-kín ‘hit me!’ (***ɔkkwɔ-kín**)

ɔkkwɔ kɪn ‘hit them!’ (***ɔkkwɔ kɪn**)

For comparison, before a common noun as object the vowel of the Imperative remains **ɔ**:

ɔccɔ kīt ‘take the wild chicken!’

ɔccɔ pók ‘take the foam!’

ɔccɔ kat ‘take the grasshopper!’

An exception is the verb **ɔmmâ** ‘not know’. This verb takes group I object pronouns, for example:

pul pɔmmâ-k the person does not know him/her

Group III object pronominals

Group III object pronouns (**-ín**, **-úŋ**, **-ɔk**, **tīt**, **nín**, **tún**, **nón**, **kɪn**) are used after:

- **t**-final verb forms (i.e. (dependent) incomplete and dependent completive TAM-stems of **t**-final verbs; completive TAM-stems of vowel-final verbs; dependent perfective TAM-stems of all verbs);
- verb forms ending in **ɛ** or **ɛ́** (i.e. completive TAM-stems of **t**-final verbs; Imperatives of **t**-final verbs; pasts TAM-stems of all verbs);
- Benefactive verb forms, whether ending in **-(ɪ)nɛ**, **-(ɪ)nɛ́tɛt**, **-kanɛ́tɛt** or **-(ɪ)nɛt**, and forms of the verb **ɛ́tɛt** ‘give’.

Notably, all TAM-forms based on **t**-final verbs take object pronouns of group III.

Upon attachment to verb forms ending in **ɛ**, **ɛ́**, **-(ɪ)nɛ**, **-(ɪ)nɛ́tɛt**, **-kanɛ́tɛt** or **-(ɪ)nɛt** the vowel-initial pronoun clitics replace the final segments **ɛ** or **ɛt**. The consonant initial object pronouns come after the full verb form.

Example paradigms with the Incomplete of the verb **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘hear, listen’ and with the Dependent Perfective of **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘greet’ follow here. The Incomplete of **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘hear, listen’ is C-**ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** + H, the Dependent Perfective of **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** is **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ**. The final **t** in these verbs changes to **t̚** [ð] before the vowel-initial pronominals. In the other cases, final **t** assimilates to the initial consonant of the object pronoun. In the second paradigm, the subject **pul** ‘person’ is preceded by the conjunctive marker **á** ‘and’.

pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ín	‘the person will listen to me’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-úᄃ	‘the person will listen to you’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃk	‘the person will listen to him/her’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tīt/tīt	‘the person will listen to us (you and me)’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ nᄃn	‘the person will listen to us (EXCL)’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tún	‘the person will listen to us (INCL)’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ nón	‘the person will listen to you (PL)’
pul paccᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ kᄃn	‘the person will listen to them’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ín	‘and the person greeted me’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-úᄃ	‘and the person greeted you’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃk	‘and the person greeted him/her’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tīt/tīt	‘and the person greeted us (you and me)’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ nᄃn	‘and the person greeted us (EXCL)’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tún	‘and the person greeted us (INCL)’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ nón	‘and the person greeted you (PL)’
ápúl áᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ kᄃn	‘and the person greeted them’

The following paradigm show the forms with the Completive of **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘greet’, C-**ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ**. Before a vowel-initial object pronominal the completive morpheme **t** changes to **r**. Before a consonant-initial object pronoun, completive **t** assimilates to the following consonant.

ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ín	‘the child has greeted me’
ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-úᄃ	‘the child has greeted you’
ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃk	‘the child has greeted him/her’
ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tīt	‘the child has greeted us (you and me)’
ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ nᄃn	‘the child has greeted us (EXCL)’
ukul w-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ tún	‘the child has greeted us (INCL)’

ʊkʊl w-ɔmɪccɔt nɔn ‘the child has greeted you (PL)’
ʊkʊl w-ɔmɪccɔt kɪn ‘the child has greeted them’

Tonal realizations of the 1 and 2 object pronouns (-**ín**, -**úŋ**) are not always as expected, as in the following sentence with the Completive verb **C-ɔkkwɔt** (< **ɔkkwɔ** ‘hit’):

pəɬɔk **p-ɔkkwɔ.r-ín**
stone C-hit:COMPL-O1
the stone has hit me

A paradigm with a verb form ending in **-ɬɛ** follows here. It is the Completive verb **C-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ** (< **ɔccɪkɔt** ‘hear, listen’).

pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬ-ín ‘the person has listened to me’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬ-úŋ ‘the person has listened to you’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬ-ɔk ‘the person has listened to him/her’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ tɪt/tɪt ‘the person has listened to us (you and me)’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ nɪn ‘the person has listened to us (EXCL)’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ tún ‘the person has listened to us (INCL)’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ nɔn ‘the person has listened to you (PL)’
pʊl p-ɔccɪkɔɬɛ kɪn ‘the person has listened to them’

Some examples with the Imperative **ɔccɪkɔɬɛ** ‘listen!’ (< **ɔccɪkɔt** ‘hear, listen’) follow here:

ɔccɪkɔɬ-ín ‘listen to me!’
ɔccɪkɔɬ-ɔk ‘listen to him/her!’
ɔccɪkɔɬɛ nɪn ‘listen to us (EXCL)!’
ɔccɪkɔɬɛ kɪn ‘listen to them!’

Some examples with forms of the Benefactive verbs **ɔɔɔɪɪnɛ** ‘stand for sb., wait for sb.’, **ɛɛɛnɛ** ‘talk to sb.’ and **ɛɛɛɪɪtɛt** ‘talk to sb. at/about’, and some examples with forms of **ɛɬɛt** ‘give’ are the following:

With Imperative **ɔɔɔɪɪnɛt** (< **ɔɔɔɪɪnɛ** ‘stand for sb., wait for sb.’):

ᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘wait for me!’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘wait for him/her!’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘wait for us (EXCL)!’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘wait for them!’

With Incompletive C-**ᄃᄃᄃᄃ** + H (< **ᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘talk to sb.’)

ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to you’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to him/her’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ/ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to us (you and me)’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to you (PL)’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to them’

With Past C-**ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** (< **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘talk to sb. at/about’)

ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to you about it’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to him/her about it’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ/ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to us (you and me) about it’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to you (PL) about it’
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ-ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the people will talk to them about it’

With Completive C-**ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** (< **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘give’)

ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the person has given it to me’
ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the person has given it to him/her’
ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ/ᄃᄃᄃ	‘the person has given it to us (you and me)’
ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the person has given it to us (EXCL)’
ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	‘the person has given it to them’

Second object pronominals and person hierarchy

The forms **ᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘you (SG)’ and **ᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘him/her’ (see also table 40) are used as the second in sequences of two object pronouns. A verb which can have a double object is **ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ** ‘give’. In case of two equivalent nominal objects, the recipient object comes first, then the patient object.

k-kw-ét̩et	ɔ-kakká	ɔ-ɕɛɕɕê
3-C-give:COMPL	PERS-Kakka	PERS-ɕɛɕɕe

s/he gave ɕɛɕɕe to Kakka

In sequences of object pronominals there is a person hierarchy (or person scale): first persons come before second and third persons, and second persons come before third persons. Third persons come before nouns referring to humans, whether with or without persona prefix, and these precede nouns with non-human reference. This means that there are no second-object forms of the first person pronouns (1, 12, 1A and 12A), and that expressions with double objects can be ambiguous. Some further examples with **ét̩et** ‘give’ follow here.

k-kw-ét̩-ín	ɲóɲ
3-C-give-O1	O ₂ 2

s/he gave you to me ; s/he gave me to you

k-kw-ét̩-ín	ɲɔ̌k
3-C-give-O1	O ₂ 3

s/he gave him/her to me ; s/he gave me to him/her

k-kw-ét̩et	tɪt	ɲɔ̌k
3-C-give:COMPL	O12	O ₂ 3

s/he gave him/her to us ; s/he gave us to him/her

k-kw-ét̩ét	tón	ɲɔ̌k
3-C-give:COMPL	O12A	O ₂ 3

s/he gave him/her to us ; s/he gave us to him/her

Violation of the person hierarchy leads to ungrammaticality:

*k-kw-ét̩-ɔk	ɲóɲ	
3-C-give:COMPL-O3	O ₂ 2	
*k-kw-ét̩et	kɪn	nón
3-C-give:COMPL	O3A	O2A

The second-object pronouns **ɲóɲ** ‘you (SG)’ and **ɲɔ̌k** ‘him/her’ cannot come after a full noun:

***k-kw-étet ɔ-kukkó ɲɔk**
 3-C-give:COMPL PERS-Kukku O₂3

In such a case the pronoun (of group III) comes first, and the interpretation is ambiguous:

k-kw-ét-ɔk ɔ-kukkó
 3-C-give:COMPL-O3 PERS-Kukku

s/he gave Kukku to him/her ; s/he gave him/her to Kukku

The third person singular object clitic substitutes not only nouns with the persona prefix, but also common nouns denoting people and animals in stories acting as people. An example of the latter was given in 6.3.1.

It is sometimes possible to omit this clitic where it would normally be expected, as in the example below. The final part of a Lumun story is typically narrated in an accelerated fashion. In the sentence below, which is the last sentence of the story of the tortoise and the *ɲattəttapɛ*-bird, omission of the pronominal object is part of this narrative acceleration:

... **a-kw-ɔ́t-iat pól p-ɔ́-nóppət**
 CONJ-3-IT:DEPINCOMPL-find:DEPPFTV person C-of-Nəppət

a-kw-ɔ́cukkwat.at cɪk
 CONJ-3-step_on.PLUR:DEPPRFV VREF

mónɔ a-pól p-ɔ́-nóppət í.ât
 until CONJ-person C-of-Nəppət die:DEPPRFV

and he found the person of Nəppət and he stepped (on him) repeatedly until the person of Nəppət died (App. IV, 162-163)

6.5. Pronouns as addressees in commands

6.5.1. Imperatives

Commands to a singular addressee are specialized Imperative forms (see chapter 12.5.2). In Imperatives, the addressee is not expressed pronominally. For example:

ɔ̃ʔək.ɔ

eat:IMP

eat it!

ɔ̃nekkeɣ.ɛ

put_down:IMP

put it down!

cɪk

VREF

An exception is the irregular Imperative **ɲkɔ́** ‘go!’ (< **ɛ̃ɔ́** ‘go’). It is likely that the initial **ɲ** is historically the second person singular pronominal marker.

6.5.2. Commands to a plural addressee

Commands to a plural addressee consist of a pronominal form followed by the verb stem (the Dependent Incompletive TAM). The free 2A pronoun **ɔ̃nɔ́n** is not used in this context. The 2A addressee has three variants, which can be used interchangeably:

ɲɔ̃nɔ́n/ɔ̃n-/ɲ-

ɲɔ̃nɔ́n is the free pronoun, but without the persona prefix **ɔ̃-**, so that **ɲ** is retained instead of elided between vowels. Like in vocatives of kinship terms and personal names, the persona prefix is absent from the addressive form of the pronoun. **ɔ̃n-** and **ɲ-** are clitic forms of the addressive pronoun. Examples:

ɲɔ̃nɔ́n ɛ̃ɔ́

2A

go:DEPINCOMPL

/ **ɔ̃n-ɛ̃ɔ́**

2A-go:DEPINCOMPL

/ **n-ɛ̃ɔ́**

2A-go:DEPINCOMPL

go! (to plural addressee)

ḡḡḡḡ ḡḡḡḡḡḡ / **ḡḡ-ḡḡḡḡḡḡ** / **n-ḡḡḡḡḡḡ** **lón pápēnnaḡ**
 2A hear:DEPINCOMPL 2A-hear:DEPINCOMPL 2A-hear:DEPINCOMPL words properly

listen to my words carefully! (to plural addressee)

6.6. Hortative pronouns

Lumun hortatives are restricted to 12 and 12A persons. Some different forms are distinguished, which can be used interchangeably. The hortative pronominals precede the Dependent Incompletive TAM stem. The bimoraic forms are free pronouns, the others, which are shortened forms of the free ones, clitics. Initially, yet a few other forms were provided, which, however, I did not come across in speech nor in written text. They were later judged as not-acceptable or even non-existent. Since some confusion about these forms nevertheless remained, I provide them with a question mark and between parentheses. The free subject pronouns are given in the last column for comparison.

Table 41 Hortative pronouns and clitics

	<i>hortative pronoun clitic</i>	<i>full hortative pronoun</i>	<i>free subj. pronoun</i>
12	cîr-, tîr-, ntîr-	cîrit, (? tírit), cáttit, (? páttit)	ḡrit
12A	(? cun-), tôn-, tñn-, ntôn-, ntñn-	cúron, córon, (? túron), (? tórñn), cáttun, (? páttun)	ḡrón, ḡrñn

Some examples follow here. Any of the other hortative pronominals with the same person reference could be used as well. The verbs are **ḡḡḡḡ** ‘rest’, **ḡḡḡḡ** ‘work’, **ḡḡḡḡ** ‘do, make’ and **ḡḡḡḡ** ‘eat’.

cîrit **ḡḡḡḡ**
 HRT12 rest:DEPINCOMPL

let us rest

túrón **ḡḡḡḡ**
 HRT12A work:DEPINCOMPL

let us do some work

cáttít **śṛśkś** **ḡóṛô**
 HRT12 eat:DEPINCOMPL asida

let us eat the asida

tír-śréko
 HRT12-work:DEPINCOMPL
 let us do some work

tún-śkkśt **ṛ.ṭñn**
 HRT12A-do:DEPINCOMPL together
 let us do it together

In the following sentence, only the first verb ('go') is preceded by a hortative pronoun. The second verb, which can still be understood as part of the hortatory expression, is preceded by a bound subject pronoun.

paṭṭí cáttít éś **ír-ṣṭ-śkwáncōt** **áṛəpə w-əṛək**
 person HRT12 go:DEPINCOMPL 12-IT:DEPINCOMPL-search:DEPINCOMPL things C-some
 Mister, let us go and find some animals (fr. written story)

6.7. Pronominals in comitative constructions

Comitative constructions have the following structure:

X (...) free pronoun PERS-Y or:
 X (...) bound pronoun-PERS-Y

In these constructions, the free pronouns and the plural person pronominal subject clitics are used. The noun that refers to the added person(s) ('Y') must have the persona prefix **ś-**. In kinship terms and personal names, the persona prefix is already present, to common nouns it must be added. The whole sentence is constructed as a plural, in the sense that only the plural pronouns can be used as comitatives, and that, for example, in imperatives the plural addressee form is chosen.

In the first example below, though only **Lōttṛ** is directly addressed, the plural pronominal is used on the command. The 2A pronoun

၁၇၁ (or a shortened form **၁၇** or **၁၇**) preceding **၁၇၁** ‘Lalu’ functions as comitative. In the second example, on the other hand, the verb ‘eat’ is marked for second person singular. **၁၇၁** and **၁၇-** as pronominals in comitative functions are possible here as well.

၁၇၁ **n-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** / **၁-၁၇** / **n-၁၇**
 ၁၇၁ 2A-go:DEPINCOMPL PERS-2A PERS-Lalu 2A-PERS-Lalu / 2A-PERS-Lalu
 ၁၇၁, go with Lalu! / ၁၇၁ and Lalu, go!

၁၇၁-၁၇ **akka** **a-၁၇** **၁၇** **n-၁-၁၇**
 what-QW that CONJ-(2-)eat_for:DEPINCOMPL asida 2A-PERS-Kakka
 why do you eat asida with Kakka? / why do you and Kakka eat asida?

Two examples with the free 3A pronoun follow here:

kallán **k-၁၇.၁** **၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇**
 old_woman C-be:COMPL VREF PERS-3A PERS-child C-alone
 the old woman was alone with her child

၁၇ **၁-၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇**
 marriage C-PERS-Kukku PERS-3A PERS-Kakka
 the marriage of Kukku and Kakka

In the following examples, reference is initially made to a singular person, then a pronoun with plural reference follows (referring to this singular person and an added person), then the added person is mentioned in a construction with the plural pronoun as a comitative (the latter pronouns are underlined). In the second sentence below, the initial high tone on ‘jackal’ shows that the persona prefix **၁-** is present on the noun.

m-p-၁.၁-၁-၁၇.၁ **၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁-၁၇**
 1-C-be:COMPL-C-like:COMPL that PERS-1A C-play:INCOMPL PERS-1A PERS-Cecce
 I wanted to play with Cecce

... a-kw-၁kkarəttak.at **a-၁၇** **၁kk.at** **၁၇**
 CONJ-3-return:DEPPRFV CONJ.PERS-3A sit:DEPPRFV VREF
a-၁၇ **၁၇** **၁-၁၇** **၁၇**
 CONJ.PERS-3A cultivate:DEPINCOMPL PERS-3A PERS.jackal

and he returned and they started to cultivate, he and the jackal ('The story of the jackal')

Compare also:

k-kw-áa.t ɔ-kín ɔ-nenni
 3-C-come:COMPL PERS-3A PERS-Nenni

s/he has come with Nenni

ɔ-kín ɬ-aá.t ɔ-kín ɔ-nenni
 PERS-3A C-come:COMPL PERS-3A PERS-Nenni

s/he has come with Nenni, *also*: they have come with Nenni

If the preceding pronoun has the conjunctive particle **á**, it is alternatively possible to use the conjunctive particle also on the comitative pronoun:

... a-kín ɔrá a-kín áləpaccôɬ
 CONJ.PERS-3A cultivate:DEPINCOMPL CONJ.PERS-3A PERS.jackal

and they started to cultivate, he and the jackal ('The story of the jackal')

6.8. Constructions with the associative marker **attut**, **áttút**

The free plural pronouns and the bound subject pronouns **ýt-** (I and you), **ín-** (I and others), **ón-** (I and you and others) and **ón-** (you PL) can be followed by the associative marker **attut** (or **áttút**) or its plural **attutɔn** (**áttútɔn**). **attut** is probably the realization of underlying **at-C-ut**, with **ɬ-**, agreeing with the preceding plural pronoun, as concord. An underlying structure **a-C-C-ut** is perhaps possible as well, though double concord is not common in the language. Double concord seems to occur in the subject focus marker used in **Təɾəmaɬɔn** (**a-C-C-**), but there it may rather be a development of **ak-C-** (see chapter 19.1).

attut is further discussed in 10.4.2 (on numerals), since, instead of the plural marker **-ɔn**, it also allows for the suffixation of a numeral.

The plural pronoun immediately preceding **attut** or **attunân** refers to the group as a whole. In order to compose this group, **attut** adds one person to it; **attunân** more than one person. ‘I and you (SG)’ can only be followed by **attut**, not by **attunân**, because, either way (whether the first person or the second person is added) only one person can be added in order to get ‘I and you (SG)’. The other pronouns can be followed by **attut** or **attunân**. The choice depends on how the composition of the group is conceptualized, as the examples will show.

attut and **attunân** (or their high-toned variants) are used in one of the following constructions:

sg. pronoun + verb + pl. pronoun (clitic)- **attut/attunân**
 pl. pronoun + verb + pl. pronoun (clitic)- **attut/attunân**

These constructions can have a comitative interpretation, but not necessarily so. They are used when the same action was performed or undergone at (around) the same time by somebody in relation to other(s), but not necessarily together with the other(s). Still there is a kind of ‘group-conceptualization’ about these constructions:

ɔ-rit ʔ-aa.t ir-át-ʔ-út
 PERS-12 C-come:COMPL 12-ASS-C-ASS

I came with you (SG), also: we came at the same time (i.e. one person (**átút**) was added so that the group finally consisted of me and you (SG). The opening of the clause with ‘I and you (SG)’ (which is also the final make-up of the group) induces the interpretation that ‘I’ was added, thus: I came with you (SG).

‘I came with you (SG)’ is commonly expressed as above, though the following is in principle possible as well:

m-p-aat ir-át-ʔ-út
 1-C-come:COMPL 12-ASS-C-ASS

‘I came with you (SG), I came at the same time as you did

Some further examples:

k-kw-áa.t ìn-át-t-út
 3-C-come:COMPL 1A-ASS-C-ASS

s/he came with me/us, he came at the same time as I/we did (i.e. one person (**átút**) was added so that the group finally consisted of me and other(s). The opening of the clause with the third person singular excludes that **átút** refers to the first person singular, thus the clause cannot be interpreted as ‘I came with him/her/them’.)

ìn-t-aa.t ìn-át-t-út
 1A-C-come:COMPL 1A-ASS-C-ASS

I came with him/her/them, we came at the same time (i.e. one person (**átút**) was added so that the group finally consisted of me and other(s). The opening of the clause with ‘I and others’ (which is also the final make-up of the group) gives the interpretation that ‘I’ was added, thus: I came with him/her/them)

ɔ-kín t-aa.t ìn-át-t-úŋ-ŋŋn
 PERS-3A C-come:COMPL 1A-ASS-C-ASS-PL

they came with me/us, they came at the same time as I/we did (i.e. two or more persons (**átúŋŋn**) were added so that the group finally consisted of me and other(s). The opening of the clause with the third person plural excludes that **átúŋŋn** refers to the first person plural, thus the clause cannot be interpreted as ‘we came with him/her/them’.)

ìn-t-aa.t ìn-át-t-úŋ-ŋŋn
 1A-C-come:COMPL 1A-ASS-C-ASS-PL

I/we came with them (i.e. two or more persons (**átúŋŋn**) were added so that the group finally consisted of me and other(s). The opening of the clause with ‘I and others’ (which is also the final make-up of the group) gives the interpretation that ‘I’ was added, thus: I came with him/her/them)

A textual example follows here. In the first, the participants of the event, ‘they’, are conceptualized as ‘she added to **ɔpattŋn** (‘the people’). The context of the sentence is that a girl has become pregnant without having undergone the rite of passage of being beaten while running together with the girls of her age group. This will cause mockery by her age mates.

ana ɔ-patt-ón í-t-á k-kw-óká.t p-ónó itti
 and PERS-person-PL RES-C-COP 3-C-be:COMPL C-have that
k-kw-ápəɾəttə ɔ-kín á-t-t-út t-á.ccíró-k ɲ.ɲm
 3-C-be_beaten_while_running:INCOMPL PERS-3A ASS-C-ASS C-laugh:INCOMPL-O3 with:ABS
 and the people together with whom she should have been beaten while
 running will laugh at her because of it (because she is pregnant without
 having undergone the proper rite of passage) (fr. written description)

In the next, **ɔrón** ‘we (INCL)’ is conceptualized as ‘I added to you (PL)’.
ɔrón ɬarétuk ɔrón áttút ‘we were still we with one (I) added’ would
 be possible here as well.

el-l-i i-l-a m-p-eré.t appík
 DEM-C-NEARSP RES-C-COP 1-C-speak:COMPL all
akka m-p-arétuk ɔ-rón á-t-t-út
 that 1-C-still PERS-12A ASS-C-ASS
 all this I have said when I was still with you (PL) (John 14:25)

An example with **attun ɲón** follows here. The husbands of the
 addressees are added to the speaker (‘I’), together forming **ɲn-** ‘I and
 others’. The addressees (the wives) are not involved in the event of
 doing something:

ámmá ɔ-llé p-aɲ-ón t-aá.t ana
 if PERS-husband C-POSS2-PL C-come:COMPL and
n-t-íná ákka ɲn-ɔkkɔt ɲn-á-t-t-ó-ɲón
 2A-C-know:INCOMPL that 1A-do:DEPINCOMPL 1A-ASS-C-ASS-PL
 when your(PL) husbands come you will know what I will do with them

6.9. Reflexivity: ‘oneself’

Lumun does not have a reflexive pronoun. Reflexivity is expressed by
ka ‘body’ + possessive pronoun. Some examples follow here:

m-p-ɔɲɔt.é itti m-p-ímmat ká k-in i-mírái
 1-C-like:COMPL that 1-C-see_at:INCOMPL body C-POSS1 in-mirror
 I want to see myself in the mirror

lɔn ɪ-l-a pól p-ɔlləkké.nɛ́t ká k-óŋ
 words RES-C-COP person C-put_down_for:COMPL body C-POSS3
 things which the man promised himself

pól p-ɔrək.áɛ ana p-p-áttɪ-ɪ.at ká k-óŋ
 person C-get_up:DEPPRFV and PRO-C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPPRFV body C-POSS3
cí-nɔ́-kúʈút k-ɔ-rúé
 LOC-on-lip C-of-river
 the man woke up and found himself at the side of the river

7. Connexive and possessor pronouns

In this chapter I present the connexive and the possessor pronouns. The core function of the connexive is to establish a possessee-possessor relationship between two nouns. I gloss it as ‘of’.

7.1. The connexive

The connexive proclitic (C-ɔ-) consists of the vowel ɔ preceded by a concord. The concord agrees with a preceding (pro)noun (X) that is modified by the connexive construction. The connexive proclitic is attached to a noun (Y) or a prepositional proclitic (PPC) and noun:

X C_x-ɔ-(PPC-)Y

Y cannot be a pronoun in this construction. For pronominal possessors there is a different set of forms.

7.1.1. Tone and morpho-phonology

Low tone

The connexive proclitic has a low tone. If preceded by a high or rising tone, it is realized with a high tone, following the rules of Tone Shift and Contour Simplification (see 3.3.1 and 3.3.2):

ɬok ɬɔ-pol (< ɬok ɬɔ-pol < ɬök ɬɔ- pol) ‘the dog of the person’

When cliticized to a noun that starts with a vowel or with the velar nasal (which is then deleted between vowels), the two adjacent vowels:

- assimilate and shorten: ɔ + ɛ > ɛ; ɔ + a > a
- shorten: ɔ + ɔ > ɔ
- form a diphthong: ɔ + i > ɔi; ɔ + u > ɔu; ɔ + ɪ > ɔɪ; ɔ + ʊ > ɔʊ; ɔ + ə > ɔə

In case of assimilation of two vowels or two adjacent *ɔ*'s, the resulting vowel is generally realized short, but also allows for a realization with a little length (as is the general rule, stated in chapter 2.2.8). Thus, in the next example, the fusion of the Connexive and the initial vowel (the persona prefix) of *ɔkakkâ* (Kakka) is generally realized short, but can also have a little length:

pəlla p-ɔ-kakkâ (< **pəlla** + **pɔ-** + **ɔkakkâ**)

cat C-of.PERS-Kakka

the cat of Kakka

However, if a high tone is involved, the resulting vowel is realized short and with a high tone, unless in slow or carefully articulated speech. In case of underlying high + low tones, which, on a shortened vowel would be a falling tone on a non-final single mora, this complies with the Contour Simplification Rule. Likewise, in case of underlying low + high tones, which on a shortened vowel would be a rising tone on a non-final single mora, simplification to a high tone is expected, since, as stated in the chapter on Tone, rising tones occur only on word-final (prepausal) morae. Cf.:

t̪ok t̪-ɔ-kukkô

dog C-of.PERS-Kukku

the dog of Kukku

(< **t̪ok t̪ɔkukkô** < **t̪ok t̪ɔ** **ɔkukkô** < **t̪ök t̪ɔ-** **ɔkukkô**)

ɔkul w-ɔ̌tt̪a

child C-of.who

whose child (is s/he)? (lit.: the child of whom?)

(< **ɔkul wɔ̌tt̪a** < **ɔkul wɔ̌tt̪a** < **ɔkul wɔ-** **ɔ̌tt̪a**)

Changed shape of certain nouns after the connexive

Certain nouns occur (or can occur) in a changed phonological shape when preceded by the connexive, e.g., **C-ɔ** + **ɔkul** > **C-ɔkkul**:

ɔ-ttán **p-ɔ-kkɔl**
PERS-father C-of-child

the father of the child

In these nouns, the non-geminated consonant following the first vowel becomes geminated, while the first vowel and the initial consonant of the noun (if present) are deleted. The tone pattern of the resulting word can be different from what is expected on the basis of the composing parts. A list of these nouns, which can also occur in changed form after the prepositional proclitics **ɪ-**, **nɔ-**, **tɔ-** and **tɔ-**, is provided in chapter 4.4.

7.1.2. Semantics

The connexive expresses a possessor-possessee relationship between two nouns. The first element (X in the formula X C-ɔ-Y) is the possessee, the proclitic connexive is attached to the possessor (Y):

campal **c-ɔ-púl** **í-p-ɔ-parí**
stick(k.o.) C-of-person RES-C-female

the *campal*-stick of the woman

kəɽittan **k-ɔ-kukkɔ**
knife C-of.PERS-Kukku

the knife of Kukku

The connexive construction can also express other than possessor relationships between nouns. Some examples follow here.

part of whole:

tacɔk **t-ɔ-pərrək**
legs C-of-chair

legs of a chair

made of, consisting of:

cəṭəna c-ɔ-tərɔma

tassel C-of-ram

tassel of ram's hair (lit.: tassel of ram)

for the purpose of:

kɪrək k-ɔ-t-ɔra ɪ-ttək nɔ-tampân

hoe C-of-NOM-cultivate in-farming_field on-flat_open_space

hoe for cultivating in a field on the plains (the ground there is less stony than on the slope of the mountain and requires a different type of hoe)

laɪ l-ɔ-kéccôk

tamarind C-of-market

tamarind for the market (i.e. for selling at the market)

occupations:

pul p-ɔ-tɔɾák

person C-of-war

warrior, soldier

pul p-ɔ-kəməɪ

person C-of-hunting_party

hunter

ownership, association:

ul w-ɔ-lɪcók

people C-of-goats

the owners of the goats

place where somebody lives:

pul p-ɔ-karəttôm

person C-of-Khartoum

person from Khartoum

‘child of’ in personal names:

ɔ-lɔtti 1-ɔ-maɬari
PERS-Lɔtti C-of.PERS-Maɬari

Lɔtti (son) of Maɬari

In these cases the concord **p-** (the general concord of singular nouns with the persona prefix) is not used. Instead, the name without persona prefix is interpreted as containing a noun class prefix, and agreement is with this noun class prefix (**1-** in the example above).

Foreign names with an initial sound that is not part of the Lumun inventory of sounds occurring word-initially are not reanalysed as containing a noun class prefix. In such cases the concord **ŋ-** is used:

ɔ-rómia ŋ-aɬərɪt ‘Rumia (daughter) of Aɬərɪt’
ɔ-ióɲic ŋ-ələmɪn ‘Younis (son) of Alemin’
érəmía⁵² ŋɔ-ómar ‘Jeremiah (son) of Umar’

ŋ- possibly comes from agreement with the noun class prefix **ŋ-** of a historical noun ***ŋokul** ‘child’ (today **okul** ‘child’). A historical noun ***ŋokul** is conceivable, since it would give a regular singular-plural pair (***ŋokul/ɲokul**). Moreover, words for the young of animals also typically come in this class pair (see chapter 4.3.5).

agent of actions expressed by a verbal noun:

ɬ-ɔŋwɔ ɬ-ɔ-píŋɲít
NOM-sing C-of-singer

the singing of the singer

undergoer of actions expressed by a verbal noun:

ɬ-ɔ ɬ-áɬəpɔ w-əɬək (< **ɬ-ɔ + aɬəpɔ**)
NOM-die C-of.things C-some

the dying of some animals

⁵² The persona prefix **ɔ-** is regularly elided before **ɛ**, see chapter 4.10.1.

patient of actions expressed by a verbal noun:

ṭ-ḳḳwət ṭ-árəpʊ w-ərək (< **ṭ-ṣ** + **arəpʊ**)

NOM-kill C-of.things C-some

the killing of some animals

Leaving out the connexive in the example above (with a patient of the action) above gives a result that is still grammatical (see also chapter 4.6.1).

Readings of connexive constructions of the type X C_x-ṣ-PREP-Y follow here:

place where somebody lives:

ʊl w-ṣ-nṣ-ṭṭək p-árrô

people C-of-on-stone C-of.Lumun_people

the people of Lumun country (lit.: people of on stone of Lumun people)

(**ʊl** + **w-ṣ** + **nṣ** + **pəṭək** + **p-ṣ** + **arrô**)

occupation:

pʊl p-ṣ-rɪ-ŋkwêl (< **pʊl** + **p-ṣ** + **ɪ** + **kəmɛl**)

person C-of-in-hunting_party

person who joins in a hunting party (lit. person of in the hunting party)

ʊl w-ṣ-rɪ-ʃmân

people C-of-in-porcupines

people hunting porcupines (lit.: people of in porcupines)

for use in a certain environment:

kuppərɯŋ k-ṣ-nṣ-ərɿ

bed_plank C-of-on-water

boat

7.1.3. Attributive and predicative use

Connexive constructions often function attributively but can also be used as predicates. The first example below illustrates attributive use, the second predicative use:

kəɾɛt k-ɔ-kkɔl k-ɪɛ
 cloth C-of-child C-new
 the shirt of the child is new

k-kw-ɔká.t p-ɔ-məkənta m-ɪn
 3-C-be:COMPL C-of-supporting_girls C-POSS1
 she was (one) of my supporting girls
 (i.e. girls that support a man during certain initiation rites: they fetch water,
 prepare food for guests, accompany the man on his visits, sing and dance)

In a predicative construction, a subject clitic can be attached to the connexive:

ɔ-ɔk p-ɔ-məkənta m-ɪn / k-kw-ɔ-məkənta m-ɪn
 PERS-3 C-of-supporting_girls C-POSS1 3-C-of-supporting_girls C-POSS1
 she is (one) of my supporting girls

ɔ-ɔk p-ɔ-karəttôm / k-kw-ɔ-karəttôm
 PERS-3 C-of-Khartoum 3-C-of-Khartoum
 s/he is from Khartoum

7.1.4. Independent use of a connexive construction

A connexive + noun can be used independently. In the first example, the concord **ɪ-** in **ɪ-ɔ-tuuli** agrees with **ɪɾɪ** ‘water’; in the second example, the concord **k-** in **k-ɔ-cɛccé** agrees with **kálam** ‘pen’.

a-əɾɪ ⁵³	ŋ-uŋ	ŋ-ɔká.t	ŋ-ɛtɪá.t	ana
CONJ-water	C-POSS3	C-be:COMPL	C-become_cool:COMPL	and
ŋ-ɔ-tuɔli	ŋ-ɔká.t	ŋ-árɔ́tɔk	ŋ-áŋko	ɪppa
C-of-hyena	C-be:COMPL	C-still	C-be_hot:INCOMPL	hotly

and his water (i.e. of the cat) had become cold, but hyena's (water) was still very hot (fr. written story)

kálam	k-aŋ	k-a.ɪk	p-əllék
pen	C-POSS2	C-be:PR	C-alone
ana	k-ɔ-cɛccé	k-á.ɪk	p-əllék
and	C-of.PERS-Cɛccé	C-be:PR	C-alone

your pen is different from Cɛccé's (pen) (lit.: your pen is alone and Cɛccé's (pen) is alone)

The following phrase allows for two interpretations. It can refer to the marriage of Kukku and the marriage of Kakka (two different marriages), but also to their marriage to each other, because in case of coordinated “possessors” the connexive is used on both:

ɪpa	ɪ-ɔ-kukkú	ana	ɪ-ɔ-kakkâ
marriage	C-of-Kukku	and	C-of-Kakka

the marriage of Kukku and the one of Kakka (the marriage of Kukku and Kakka)

7.2. The absolute connexive

There is also an absolute form of the connexive: C-**ɛn**. The absolute connexive is homonymous with the demonstrative with anaphoric reference C-**ɛn** ‘that’. It seems likely that both contain the pronominal base **ɛn** (for **ɛn** and C-**ɛn** ‘that’, see chapter 8). Possibly, the absolute connexive C-**ɛn** historically derives from the Connexive C-**ɔ** + **ɛn** ‘of that’.

The absolute connexive is used in relativized possessor phrases:

⁵³ < á- + ɲəɾɪ

takəɾuk **ɪ-t-a** **m-p-ɔɾəkɔ.t** **túnke** **t-ɛn**
 chicken RES-C-COP 1-C-eat:COMPL liver C-of:ABS

the chicken of which I ate the liver

It is also used for pronominal reference to non-humans in possessor role, irrespective of whether they are singular or plural. In such cases it translates as ‘its’ (or ‘their’):

η-kw-íɔt **kəmən** **na** **jókól** **í-p-ârran** **ɔkurro**
 2-C-find:INCOMPL rooms where:REL children RES-C-young engrave:DEPINCOMPL

kətət **k-én** **k-á.jɔt** **ɔpákkɔt**
 door C-of:ABS C-open:INCOMPL return:DEPINCOMPL

na **cíŋki** **ɔmmɔt** **η.ηm**
 where:REL sun come_up:DEPINCOMPL with:ABS

you will find a house where little children are writing (a school). Its door opens to where the sun comes up (the east)

ana **tɔɛ** **t-á.kkunakɔ** **ana**
 and river C-smell:INCOMPL and

muccirɪn **mænna** **m-akénn-íkkɔ** **ηəɾɪ** **η-én**
 Egyptians even C-NEG-drink:DEPINCOMPL water C-of:ABS

and the river will stink and even the Egyptians will not drink its water (Exodus 7:18)

ɔɾək.ɔ **appənɟína** **n-áɾɔl** **w-én**
 eat:IMP groundnuts with-shells C-of:ABS

eat the groundnuts with their shells!

7.3. Possessor pronouns

There are eight possessor pronouns corresponding to the eight personal pronouns. The possessor pronouns start with a concord that agrees with the noun that they modify. In the list below, the full subject personal pronouns are given between parentheses for comparison. How the 1 and 2 possessor pronouns should tonally be (best) represented is not clear.

1	C- ĩn , C- in , C- ín	‘my’	(ɔ́n)
12	C- ɔ́rit + H	‘our (of you (SG) and me)’	(ɔ́řt)
2	C- ǎŋ , C- aŋ , C- áŋ	‘your (SG)’	(ɔ́ŋ)
3	C- úŋ	‘his/her’	(ɔ́k)
1A	C- ín	‘our (EXCL)’	(ɔ́ín)
12A	C- ɔ́nnón	‘our (INCL)’	(ɔ́rón/ɔ́rón)
2A	C- ón	‘your (PL)’	(ɔ́ón)
3A	C- én	‘their’	(ɔ́kín)

There is little indication that the connexive is a formative of the personal pronouns.

7.3.1. Tone

The possessor pronouns are largely tonally regular, but the tonal behaviour of ‘my’ and ‘your (SG)’, as well as of ‘our (of you (SG) and me)’ is not fully compatible with any of the tones. In prepausal position modifying an all-low noun or a noun with a final falling tone, ‘my’ and ‘your (SG)’ can be realized with a rising tone or with a low tone, apparently in free variation, which is compatible with a rising tone. For example: **pəlla pín** ‘my cat’ and **pəlla pɪn** ‘my cat’ (**pəlla** ‘cat’ is all-low). After a high or rising tone, ‘my’ and ‘your (SG)’ are realized with a falling tone, which could point at a low tone, for example: **túk t̥ín** ‘my dog’ (**túk** ‘dog’ has a rising tone). There are, furthermore, instances of ‘my’ and ‘your (SG)’ that have a high tone in prepausal position, which is not compatible with a low tone, nor with a rising tone, only with a high tone. An example is provided in 7.3.3. The possessor pronoun functions predicatively there. Throughout the book some other examples can be found of prepausal predicative 1 and 2SG possessor pronouns with a high tone, however, cases with low tone are attested as well.

The 12 possessor pronoun is realized with a (final) low tone in prepausal position. In context, however, it receives a high tone from a preceding item on its first mora and brings a high tone to the next item, which points to an underlying L pattern with floating high tone:

tuk t-órit ána pállá p-úŋ
 dog C-POSS12 and cat C-POSS3

our dog (of you and me) and his/her cat

Examples of the possessor pronouns preceded by possessee nouns with various tones follow here.

Possessor pronouns preceded by low and falling tones: **ŋərə** ‘work’ and **kuʔút** ‘lip, side’

1	ŋərə ŋ-ín/ŋ-in	‘my work’	kuʔút k-ín/k-in	‘my lip’
12	ŋərə ŋ-ɔrit	‘our work’	kuʔút k-ɔrit	‘our lip’
2	ŋərə ŋ-ǎŋ/p-aŋ	‘your work’	kuʔút k-ǎŋ/k-aŋ	‘your lip’
3	ŋərə ŋ-úŋ	‘his/her work’	kuʔút k-úŋ	‘his/her lip’
1A	ŋərə ŋ-ín	‘our work’	kuʔút k-ín	‘our lip’
12A	ŋərə ŋ-ɔnnón	‘our work’	kuʔút k-ɔnnón	‘our lip’
2A	ŋərə ŋ-ón	‘your work’	kuʔút k-ón	‘your lip’
3A	ŋərə ŋ-én	‘their work’	kuʔút k-én	‘their lip’

Possessor pronouns preceded by high and rising tones: **tɔɾək** ‘rope’ and **ŋəɾɪ** ‘water’:

1	tɔɾək t-ín	‘my rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-ín	‘my water’
12	tɔɾək t-órit	‘our rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-órit	‘our water’
2	tɔɾək t-ǎŋ	‘your rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-ǎŋ	‘your water’
3	tɔɾək t-úŋ	‘his/her rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-úŋ	‘his/her water’
1A	tɔɾək t-ín	‘our rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-ín	‘our water’
12A	tɔɾək t-ɔnnón	‘our rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-ɔnnón	‘our water’
2A	tɔɾək t-ón	‘your rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-ón	‘your water’
3A	tɔɾək t-én	‘their rope’	ŋəɾɪ ŋ-én	‘their water’

Recall that for non-human possessors the absolute connexive **C-ən** is used (see 7.2.), which contrasts tonally with the 3A possessor **C-én**.

ŋərə ŋ-ən ‘its work’
kuʔút k-ən ‘its side’
tɔɾək t-én ‘its rope’
ŋəɾɪ ŋ-én ‘its water’

7.3.2. Morpho-phonology

Phonological effects at the boundary of noun and possessor are regular. This means that in the examples above with **ɲəɾɛ** the concord **ɲ** of the possessor is deleted, and in the examples with **ɬɔɾɔ́k** final **k** fully assimilates to the concord **ɬ** of the possessor. Incidentally, however, the process of assimilation deviates from what is expected. This is the case with the items **páj** ‘item of the same kind’ and **ɔpáj** ‘sibling’. Compare the first (irregular) example with **ɔpáj** ‘sibling’ with the second (regular) example with **parantáj** ‘gourd’. After **ɔpáj** (and **páj**) the concord **p** changes to **k**:

ɔpaŋkín ‘my sibling’
parantaŋ pín ‘my gourd’ [parandam bín]

7.3.3. Possessor pronouns as predicates

Like the connexive construction, possessor pronouns can function as predicates. In the example below, the predicative 1SG possessor pronoun in prepausal position is represented with a high tone. It is, however, also possible to realize it with a low tone (without tonal changes in the sentence otherwise).

ɬok **én-t-í** **ɬ-á.ká** **ɬ-ín**
 dog DEM-C-NEARSP C-be:INCOMPL C-POSS1
 this dog will be mine

Compare also the following two examples. The last element functions as the predicate:

pəɬɔk **p-in** **ém-p-í**
 stone C-POSS1 DEM-C-NEARSP
 my country is this one (for example while pointing at a country on a map)

pəɬɔk **em-p-i** **p-ín**
 stone DEM-C-NEARSP C-POSS1
 this country is mine

7.3.4. Reference

The personal possessor pronouns refer to humans: speech participants and third persons. With respect to third persons there is no difference between reference to nouns with the persona prefix and common nouns referring to humans. In the following example, **kén** ‘their’ refers to two human beings denoted by common nouns: **ókul** ‘child’ and **pari pókul** ‘the wife of the child’. The sentences come from a description of main events in the life of a boy/man.

ɔ-ttán	p-ɔ-kkul	ana	ókúl		
PERS-father	C-of-child	and	child		
ɬ-ónne	pari	p-ɔ-kkul	kəmən	k-én	
C-build_for:INCOMPL	wife	C-of-child	rooms	C-POSS3A	

the father of the boy and the boy will build for the boy’s (future) wife their
(the boy and his wife’s) house (fr. written description)

Animal characters in stories are referred to by personal possessor pronouns. An example from a story called **tuuli ana pálla** ‘the hyena and the cat’:

... a-tuuli	ɔccíkat	lón	l-ón
CONJ-hyena	hear:DEPPRFV	words	C-POSS3

and the hyena listened to his (the cat’s) words (fr. written story)

7.3.5. Semantics

The personal possessor pronouns typically express possession, including of body parts. Kinship and relational terms are also typically used in combination with a possessor pronoun. For an overview of these terms, see chapter 4, and also Smits (2012). It is recalled here that the terms for father and mother (as well as for maternal uncle) have different forms for (kinship) relations with a first person, a second person and a third person. The terms indicating a kinship relation with a third person, for example **ɔttán** ‘(his, her) father’, can be modified by a connexive construction which states the related person:

ɔ-ttán **p-ɔ-nenni**
 PERS-father C-of-Nenni

the father of Nenni

It is possible to add a plural possessor pronoun to a kinship term that is inherently possessed:

ɔ-ɲappá **p-ɔnnón**
 PERS-my_father C-POSS12A

our(INCL) father (i.e. father of me and other people who are not my siblings (typically said about God))

Occasionally the personal possessor pronouns also express other semantic relations, as in the following example:

ámmá	ɲ-kw-ónó	nǎɽé	n-ón
if	2-C-have	fear	C-POSS3

á-ẽ	ɪ-cuɽé	c-ɔ-pírá	ém-p-ǎɽê
SUBJ-(2-)go:DEPINCOMPL	in-buttock	C-of-tree	DEM-C-DIST

If you are afraid of him (lit. if you have his fear), you go under that tree over there ('The story of the jackal')

The non-human possessor pronoun often expresses a part-whole relationship, as in the examples above ('the door of the house', 'the water of the river').

7.3.6. Unexpressed possessors

Possessors of body parts can be unexpressed when they can be easily understood from the context:

m-p-a.ɪk **p-íllakkɔ** **tacók**
 1-C-be:PR C-wash:INCOMPL feet

I am washing my feet

ɔɽie **okón**
 make_pull:IMP hand

stretch out your hand!

A person's stick is typically an item which is not shared with other people. Therefore there is no problem in identifying its possessor in the next example:

ant-ɔkwárikɔt na ŋ-kw-ɔnəkkét.é kúrrɔŋ
 can:DEPINCOMPL-remember:DEPINCOMPL where:REL 2-C-put_down:COMPL stick
 please try to remember where you have put your stick

It is possible, though not very common, to explicitly mention the possessor of a body part, even though the possessor is perfectly clear:

lɔn ɛl-l-ɪ a-kəllán k-ɔká.t á-k-éret
 words DEM-C-NEARSP CONJ-old_woman C-be:COMPL CONJ-PRO-speak_at:DEPINCOMPL
nɔ-ɕikɪt c-úŋ
 on-heart C-POSS3
 these words, the old woman was saying them in her heart (fr. written story)

A construction with **ka** 'body' and a co-referent possessor pronoun is automatically interpreted as a reflexive (see 6.9); when the possessor pronoun is absent, **ka** more specifically refers to the body. The body in the second example below is the own body. Compare:

a-kw-ɔtɔp.at ká k-úŋ í-láí í-l-ərrákɔ.t
 CONJ-3-smear:DEPPRFV body C-POSS3 with-tamarind RES-C-be_pushed:COMPL
 and s/he painted himself/herself with pounded tamarind

a-kw-ɔtɔp.at ká l-lai ɪ-l-ərrákɔ.t
 CONJ-3-smear:DEPPRFV body with-tamarind RES-C-be_pushed:COMPL
 and s/he_i painted his/her_i body with pounded tamarind

When the person who does the painting and the owner of the body are not co-referential, the owner is expressed as object of the verb, followed by **ka** 'body'. In this construction, there is no possessor pronoun.⁵⁴

⁵⁴ Constructions of this type, which can be called "possessor raising" are described in chapter 14.

a-kw-ʒ̣up.aɬ-ʒ̣k **ka** **l-lai** **ɪ-l-ərrákɔ.t**
 CONJ-3-smear:DEPPRFV-O3 body with-tamarind RES-C-be_pushed:COMPL
 and s/he_i painted his/her_j body with pounded tamarind

7.3.7. Independent possessor pronouns

The possessor pronouns have independent forms. These forms consist of a pronominal base **a**, realized with a high tone, a concord expressing agreement with the pronominalized possessed noun, and the possessor:

á-C-POSS

The forms below refer, for example, to **kálam** ‘pen’:

á-k-m	á-k-m k-ɔpərɔt ‘mine is good’
á-k-aŋ	á-k-aŋ k-ɔpərɔt ‘yours (SG) is good’
á-k-úŋ	á-k-úŋ k-ɔpərɔt ‘his/hers is good’
á-k-ɔrit	á-k-ɔrit k-ɔpərɔt ‘ours (of you SG and me) is good’
á-k-ín	á-k-ín k-ɔpərɔt ‘ours (EXCL) is good’
á-k-ɔnnɔn	á-k-ɔnnɔn k-ɔpərɔt ‘ours (INCL) is good’
á-k-ón	á-k-ón k-ɔpərɔt ‘yours (PL) is good’
á-k-én	á-k-én k-ɔpərɔt ‘theirs is good’

In the first example below, the concord of the independent possessor pronoun agrees with **kálam** ‘pen’. In the next two, the concord **ɲ** agrees with (earlier mentioned) **ɲukul** ‘children’.

kálam	k-aŋ	k-a.ɪk	p-əllék
pen	C-POSS2	C-be:PR	C-alone
ana	á-k-m	k-a.ɪk	p-əllék
and	PROB-C-POSS1	C-be:PR	C-alone

your pen is different from mine (lit.: your pen is alone and mine is alone)

ana	á-ɲ-aŋ	ɲ-a.ɪk	kəɾen
and	PROB-C-POSS2	C-be:PR	where

and where are yours?!

á-p-m

PROB-C-POSS1

p-ellâ

C-be_absent:INCOMPL

mine are lacking (i.e. I do not have children)

A last example has **á-úŋ** (< **á-w-úŋ**), which agrees with the earlier mentioned **ápê** ‘fish (PL)’ (tonally realized here as **ápê**⁵⁵).

ók.kw.í

the_one

í-p-á.nókə

RES-C-take:INCOMPL

lɔɾək

ropes

l-ín

C-POSS1

ɔ-ók

PERS-3

p-á.ŋwó

C-kill.PLUR:INCOMPL

ápê

fish(PL)

ana k-kw-á.nán-m

and

3-C-bring_for:INCOMPL-O1

cɪt.tó.kít

firstly

áná

and

ánt-úmmín-ók

can:DEPINCOMPL-take_for:DEPINCOMPL-O3

á-úŋ

PROBS-(C-)POSS3

who takes my ropes will catch fish, and he must bring them to me first (lit. up at eyes) and then he can take his (i.e. the fish that remain after the owner of the rope has been given his share of the fish) (fr. written story)

Independent possessor pronouns can be preceded by a prepositional proclitic. The independent demonstrative in the example below refers to a **kaɾək** ‘goatskin bag’.

mart

beans

m-a.ɪk

C-be:PR

ɪ-á-k-m-ɪ

in-PROB-C-POSS1-Q

are the beans in mine?

However, C-POSS allows for independent use as well:

ant-ɔkəta

can:DEPINCOMPL-look:INCOMPL

tacək

legs

t-ín

C-POSS1

ana

and

t-ǎŋ

C-POSS2

please look at my feet and yours (fr. written dialogue)

7.3.8. ‘My home’, ‘our home’, etc.: irregular forms

‘My home’, ‘your home’, etc. are expressed through fixed collocations of the locative noun **tuǎn** ‘(at, to) home’ followed by a word that

⁵⁵ The realization **ápê** (its own tones are **ápê**) deviates from the tone rules. I have no explanation for this.

contains the prepositional proclitic **ṭə-** ‘(down) at’ and a pronominal possessor, as well as a formative **an**. **an** is most likely a remnant of a noun, perhaps of **kaṛən** ‘place’. Specific forms collocating with **tuǎn** are attested for all personal possessors pronoun, except **C-ṛrit**: ‘our home’ (i.e. of you and me) is just **tuān t-ṛrit**.

The list with the other possessors follows here, together with alternative expressions using the noun **kaṛən** ‘place’. The forms with **kaṛən** ‘place’ are not commonly used.

tuān ṭ-an-ǎn	‘my home’
tuān ṭə-kaṛən kɪn	‘the home at my place’
tuān ṭ-an-ǎŋ	‘your home’
tuān ṭə-kaṛən kaŋ	‘the home at your place’
tuān ṭ-an-óŋ	‘his/her home’
tuān ṭə-kaṛən kúŋ	‘the home at his/her place’
tuān ṭ-en-ín	‘our (1A) home’
tuān ṭə-kaṛən kín	‘the home at our (1A) place’
tuān ṭ-an-ḡnnón	‘our (12A) home’
tuān ṭə kaṛən k-ḡnnón	‘the home at our (12A) place’
tuān ṭ-an-ón	‘your (PL) home’
tuān ṭə kaṛən k-ón	‘the home at your place’
tuān ṭ-an-én	‘their home’
tuān ṭə-kaṛən k-én	‘the home at their place’

7.3.9. Position in the noun phrase

Attributive possessor pronouns generally precede other modifiers:

pəṭək	p-in	p-ṛ-maṛṭt
stone	C-POSS1	C-of-long ago
my country of long ago		

papu	p-in	ém-p-í	í-p-á	n-ḡkorro	n.tít
thing	C-POSS1	DEM-C-NEARSP	RES-C-COP	1-engrave:DEPINCOMPL	from:ABS
tuān	ṭ.an-ín				
home	at place-POSS1				

this thing of mine from which I write in my house (refers to the laptop of the speaker, ‘writing from’ refers in this context to the sending of messages, for example through e-mail)

C-ulluk ‘only’ is a modifier that can follow but also precede the possessor pronoun:

ṣ-pari	p-ín	p-ulluk	á-p-p-ma	lón	él-l-í
PERS-wife	C-POSS1	C-only	FOC-C-C-know:INCOMPL	words	DEM-C-NEARSP
only my wife knows these things					

ṣ-pari	p-ulluk	p-ín	a-p-p-ma	lón	él-l-í
PERS-wife	C-only	C-POSS1	FOC-C-C-know:INCOMPL	words	DEM-C-NEARSP
only my wife knows these things					

8. Demonstratives

In this chapter I present the three spatial demonstratives of Lumun, as well as demonstrative C-**en** and the manner adjective C-**ená** ‘such, like this/that’. They all share the pronominal base **en** as a formative.

The spatial demonstratives consist of the pronominal base **en** (or C-**en**) and a space-deictic suffixal element that agrees with the head noun. They can be used gesturally, but also anaphorically. Also in the latter case a deictic notion is involved. Demonstrative C-**en**, without space-deictic element, functions anaphorically; it does not allow for a deictic interpretation. For this reason I call it an anaphoric demonstrative. The pronominal base **en**, however, is not intrinsically anaphoric, since it is also part of the spatial demonstratives, which can be used gesturally. I gloss the formative **en** in the demonstratives as DEM (demonstrative).

en (or C-**en**) is (most probably) also a formative of the manner-deictic adjective C-**ená** ‘such, like this/that’ (see 8.2.5). C-**en** is furthermore part of **ɔkwên** ‘who’ (< **ɔk** ‘s/he’ + **p-en**) and **ɲimpên** ‘what’ (< **ɲm** ‘what’ + **p-en**), which are discussed in 20.1.1 and 20.1.2.

All demonstratives and also C-**ená** can function as nominal modifiers but also independently.

8.1. The spatial demonstratives

The spatial demonstratives consist of the demonstrative pronominal base **en**, a concord and a deictic suffix. These are the spatial demonstratives:

en-C-í	‘this, these’: near the speaker
en-C-ərík	‘this, that, these, those’: near the addressee
en-C-ərê	‘that, those’: away from the speaker and the addressee

The spatial demonstratives can have two concords:

- C-**en**-C-**í** ‘this, these’: near the speaker
 C-**en**-C-**ərík** ‘this, that, these, those’: near the addressee
 C-**en**-C-**ərê** ‘that, those’: away from the speaker and the addressee

As modifiers, the spatial demonstratives with both an initial and a word-medial concord seem to be rarely used. According to my consultant (JS), especially elderly people may (still) employ them this way. He gave the following sentence as a case in which they might use **pempí** instead of **empí**:

pul **p-em-p-i** **p-ś-káré-ṭâ**
 person C-DEM-C-NEARSP C-of-where-QW

where does this person come from?

The forms with two concords are more commonly used as independent demonstrative pronouns. Whereas the form with one concord functioning independently tends to imply a contrast with another entity of the same type, the independent demonstrative with two concords signals the absence of such a contrast (this will be exemplified below). In the example with **pempí** given above, there is no contrast with another man. For many speakers, the modifying spatial demonstratives have lost this opposition, and it seems that, as modifiers, the forms with two concords are on their way to disappear.

The three deictic suffixes are related to the deictic verbs (chapter 12.8), as shown in table 42:

Table 42 Deictic suffixes

<i>deictic suffix</i>	<i>deictic verb</i>
- í ‘near-speaker’	C- éí ‘be here (near speaker)’
- ərík ‘near-addressee’	C- êrík ‘be here, be there (near addressee)’
- ərê ‘distal’	C- érê ‘be there (away from both speaker and addressee)’

8.1.1. Phonological realizations and tone

In table 43 I give examples of the three spatial demonstratives preceded by nouns from different noun classes and with different tone patterns. The **n** before the concord assimilates to the concord for place of articulation; it fully assimilates when the concord is **l**. The concord **w**, on the other hand, assimilates to the preceding nasal. Resulting geminated nasals and geminated **l** can be pronounced with some length.

Tonally, the spatial demonstratives display specific behaviour which does not go against the tone rules, but is also not in full detail predicted by them (recall that neither the occurrence of a high tone on a first mora due to high tone shift, nor the occurrence of tone bridge is phonologically predictable). All spatial demonstratives get a high tone on their first mora in case of a preceding high or rising tone. This includes **en-C-í**, which itself has a high tone on its second mora. Furthermore, there is tone bridge between a noun which, in isolation, has a final falling tone and **en-C-í** or **en-C-ər̥é**, but not between a noun with a final falling tone and **en-C-ər̥ík**.

Table 43 Nouns and demonstratives

<i>noun</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>en-C-í</i> <i>near speaker</i>	<i>en-C-ər̥ík</i> <i>near addressee</i>	<i>en-C-ər̥é</i> <i>distal</i>
pərrək ‘chair’	p	pərrək empí	pərrək empərík	pərrək empər̥é
t̥ök ‘dog’	t̥	t̥ök éntí	t̥ök éntərík	t̥ök éntər̥é
toppóŋ ‘mushroom (k.o.)’	t	toppóŋ éntí	toppóŋ éntərík	toppóŋ éntər̥é
cəpók ‘arrow’	c	cəpók éncí	cəpók encərík	cəpók éncər̥é
ka ‘body, corpse’	k	ka ɛŋkí	ka ɛŋkərík	ka ɛŋkər̥é
maṭṭak ‘calabashes (k.o.)’	m	maṭṭak emmí	maṭṭak emmərík	maṭṭak emmər̥é

naṭám ‘books’	n	naṭam énní	naṭam énnərík	naṭam énnə́ɾê
ɲəṭṭari ‘monkeys (sp.)’	ɲ	ɲəṭṭari ɛɲɲí	ɲəṭṭari ɛɲɲərík	ɲəṭṭari ɛɲɲə́ɾê
ɲaṭṭək̀kól ‘calabash (k.o.)’	ɲ	ɲaṭṭək̀kól éɲɲí	ɲaṭṭək̀kól ɛɲɲərík	ɲaṭṭək̀kól éɲɲə́ɾê
lök ‘dogs’	l	lök éllí	lök éllərík	lök éllə́ɾê
ʊkʊl ‘child’	w	ʊkʊl enní	ʊkʊl ennərík	ʊkʊl ennə́ɾê

8.1.2. Morpho-phonological aspects

In connected speech, the final vowel of a preceding noun is deleted before the initial *ɛ* of the demonstrative, except when the noun is monomoraic (last example below):

ɲəṭṭar.ɛɲɲí (< **ɲəṭṭari ɛɲɲí**) ‘these monkeys (sp.)’
pap.empí (< **papʊ empí**) ‘this thing’
pɪr.empí (< **pɪra empí**) ‘this tree’
ka ɛɲkí ‘this body’

8.1.3. Use of the spatial demonstrative modifiers

Deictic use of the spatial demonstrative modifiers may be accompanied by a pointing gesture, but not necessarily so. They can also be used anaphorically or cataphorically, in which case some deictic notion will also be present (otherwise, for anaphoric reference, **c-ɛn** is used). A storyteller can “play” with the deictic centre to make his story become more alive: he can change it from one participant to another, but he can also sometimes put it with himself or with the audience. Spatial demonstratives can also modify independent personal pronouns. Some examples of use of the spatial demonstratives as nominal modifiers follow here.

ɛn-c-í ‘near the speaker’:

tuk **en-t-i** **t-əpərət**
 dog DEM-C-NEARSP C-good

this dog is good (a dog is sitting next to the speaker, the speaker strokes it)

k-kw-éréné.t **kín** **lón** **él-l-í**
 3-C-speak_to:COMPL O3A words DEM-C-NEARSP

s/he told them these things (reference to a preceding or following stretch of discourse)

In the next example, the spatial demonstrative modifies the second person singular pronoun:

ant-əpəri **ŋ-kw-a.kkət** **ŋín-ṭa**
 can:DEPINCOMPL-say:DEPINCOMPL 2-C-do:INCOMPL what-QW

ə-ʊŋ **ém-p-í** **p-óttê** **cík**
 PERS-2 DEM-C-NEARSP C-little VREF

please say what you will do, you (here) who are small (lit.: this you who is small. Implying: you cannot do anything)

en-C-ərík ‘near the addressee’:

ikkét-ín **áṭəpυ** **en-n-ərík** **áppík**
 give.PLUR:IMP-O1 things DEM-C-NEARADDR all

give me all those things! (the addressee has things with him/her, the speaker points at them)

The next example is from ‘The story of the jackal’. The leopard and the lion are fighting, and the jackal is trying to direct them towards a trap (a hole in the ground) that he has dug for them. The ‘near addressee’ demonstrative draws the audience into the story: it makes them feel as if they are near that trap.

a-káṛən **en-k-ərík** **ɪ-k-a** **áləpaccút** **w-əŋəṭ.é** **ittɪ**
 CONJ-place DEM-C-NEARADDR RES-C-COP jackal C-like:COMPL that

w-á.ṭəkkarət **kín** **nán ...**
 C-make_move_aside:INCOMPL O3A on:ABS

and that place, to which the jackal wants to make them move, ...

en-C-əɾɛ ‘away from both speaker and addressee’ (distal):

ámmá	ŋ-kw-ónó	nəɾɛ	n-a-ák	
if	2-C-have	fear	on-PERS-3	

á-ε̃	ɪ-cuɾɛ	c-ɔ-pírá	ém-p-əɾɛ	cənéket
SUBJ-(2-)go:DEPINCOMPL	in-buttock	C-of-tree	DEM-C-DIST	there_not_far

if you are afraid of him, go under that tree over there (situation: there is a tree in the distance, the speaker points at it)

The next example is from ‘The story of the tortoise’. The distal demonstrative is used here cataphorically:

akka ɔpa	én-n-əɾɛ	w-ɔ-rɪ-pírá	w-aa.t	ɪ-əɾɪk	ɪkê ...
when piece_of_meat	DEM-C-DISTAL	C-of-in-tree	C-come:COMPL	RES-(C-)big	giraffe

when that big wild animal of the forest, the giraffe, came ... (App. IV, 155)

8.1.4. The spatial demonstratives as independent forms

The spatial demonstratives can be used as independent forms. Their reference—and thus the choice of concord—must be clear from the context, whether textual or extra-textual. Reference can also be made to a stretch of speech or a situation that was just described or that appears from the extra-textual context. In such cases **1**-concord is used, agreeing with implicit **lɔn** ‘words, matters’. For reference to a situation also **p**-concord can be used, agreeing with implicit **papu** ‘thing’. Examples are given below.

Independent demonstratives with one concord can imply a contrast between two entities of the same kind. Demonstratives with two concords cannot be used that way. In the second example below the demonstratives necessarily refer to entities of a different kind.

ém-p-ɪ	p-ín	ana	ém-p-í	p-áj
DEM-C-NEARSP	C-POSS1	and	DEM-C-NEARSP	C-POSS2

this one is mine and that one is yours (both demonstratives can refer to the same kind of thing, for example **pərrək** ‘chair’)

p-ɛm-p-i **p-ín** **ana** **p-ém-p-í** **p-áj**
 C-DEM-C-NEARSP C-POSS1 and C-DEM-C-NEARSP C-POSS2

this one is mine and that one is yours (both demonstratives cannot refer to the same kind of thing. Instead, the first refers, for example, to **pərrək** ‘chair’, the second, for example, to **pərrət** ‘picture’).

Some further examples with independent demonstratives with one concord follow here. They cannot be replaced by demonstratives with two concords.

kūrret **éŋ-k-í** **k-ánn-ɔŋkə** **éŋ-k-í**
 line DEM-C-NEARSP C-NEG-resemble:DEPCOMPL DEM-C-NEARSP

this stripe does not look like this one (referring here to the different colours of the stripes of a cloth)

a-kw-ápp-ɔmé.kat-ók **ittɪ** **á-a** **ɛŋ-k-əŋê**
 CONJ-3-again:DEPINCOMPL-tell:DEPPRFV-O3 that no-REDUP DEM-C-DIST

ittɪn-in **éŋ-k-əŋê** **í-k-óŋe**
 pick_for:IMP-O1 DEM-C-DIST RES-C-red

and he said to her again: no, that one! pick that ripe one for me! (the demonstratives refer to a *kice*-fruit that is at some distance from the addressee, who is in the tree, picking fruits; the speaker is under the tree. The addressee wanted to pick a fruit nearby, but is told to pick one for which she must reach further)

In the next example, **enní** ‘this one’ agrees with **ɔkul** ‘child’:

en-n-i **ákk-ɔkwəntá.t** **tó.kít**
 DEM-C-NEARSP FOC-be_produced:COMPL firstly

this one is the one who was born first (implying that there is another one who came second) (Genesis 38:28)

An element of contrast is also present in the following example. It is an answer to the question “did you [...] sell the land for this price?” The concord **c-** agrees with **ɛkerek** ‘price’. The price is indeed that price, not a different one:

ij **i-c-én** **én-c-í**
 yes RES-C-DEM DEM-C-NEARSP

yes, the one (the price) is this (Acts 5:8)

Demonstratives with one concord do not need to express contrast:

ót-ta **em-p-ərík** **nə-pirâ**
 PERS.3-QW DEM-C-NEARADDR on-tree

who is that in the tree? (two persons are involved: the speaker and the addressee who is in the tree)

Some examples with two concords follow here. In the first, **p**-concord of **pempí** implicitly agrees with the **papu** ‘thing’, which refers to the situation that was just described:

ə-llé **p-m** **p-ətjət-ín** **təpút** **ana**
 PERS-husband C-POSS1 C-send:COMPL-O1 outside and

ŋ-kw-a.t-əkkət **ŋm** **ákka**⁵⁶ **p-ém-p-í** **í-p-ókítak**
 2-C-IT:INCOMPL-do:DEPINCOMPL what that C-DEM-C-NEARSP RES-C-bad

my husband has sent me away and what are you going to do, (because) this (thing, situation) is one which is bad

The concord **l-** in the example below is understood to agree with implicit **lən** ‘words, matters’:

l-el-l-i **ámm.akka** **l-érét-ók** **l-ókítak**
 C-DEM-C-NEARSP like C-speak_about-o3 C-bad

these things that were said about him/her were bad (lit.: these words, like they spoke about him/her, were bad)

In the following example from ‘The story of the tortoise’, **pempərê** refers to **pul pənəppət** ‘the person of Nəppət’, who is under the tree. The bird and the tortoise are together up in a tree, where they are collecting honey. The person of Nəppət has just asked to throw down some honey for him, but the tortoise is unwilling:

⁵⁶ It is unclear where the high tone on **akka** comes from.

ŋ-kw-a.rréne **p-ém-p-ǎré** **áón** **w-ǎ-ín**
 2-C-throw_for:INCOMPL C-DEM-C-DIST bees C-of-what

for what will you throw (down) honeycombs for that (person)? (App. IV, 89)

In the next example, **p-** agrees with the implicit noun **papu** ‘thing’. ‘This (thing) from which I write’ refers to a laptop from which the speaker sends e-mails or other messages:

m-p-ǎná.t **p-ém-p-í** **í-p-á** **n-ǎkorrǎ** **n.tít**
 1-C-bring:COMPL C-DEM-C-NEARSP RES-C-COP 1-engrave:DEPINCOMPL from:ABS

I brought this thing from which I write (a laptop)

Independent demonstratives can be preceded by a prepositional proclitic. The independent demonstrative in the example below refers to a **kaɽok** ‘goatskin bag’.

mart **m-a.ík** **í-éŋ-k-í-í**
 beans C-be:PR in-DEM-C-NEARSP-Q

are the beans in this one?

The following examples have two tonal realizations of the (prepausal) demonstrative. The final high or falling tone of the demonstrative can be realized (with tone bridge spanning over the whole demonstrative), or the own final high or falling tone of the demonstrative can become low:

appentíná **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-í** / **appentíná** **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-í**
 groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-NEARSP groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-NEARSP

the groundnuts are in this one

appentíná **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-ǎrík** / **appentíná** **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-ǎrík**
 groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-NEARADDR groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-NEARADDR

the groundnuts are in that one (near you)

appentíná **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-ǎré** / **appentíná** **w-á.ík** **í-éŋ-k-ǎré**
 groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-DIST groundnuts C-be:PR in-DEM-C-DIST

the groundnuts are in that one (away from us)

8.2. The anaphoric demonstrative C-**en**

8.2.1. Tonal properties

When the demonstrative pronominal base **en** is only preceded by the concord, and no deictic element is attached to it, it takes on an anaphoric interpretation. I will call this element (C-**en**) an anaphoric demonstrative, though the demonstrative base **en** is not intrinsically anaphoric. C-**en** has a low tone and is tonally regular in prepausal position:

pul	‘person’	pul pen	‘that person’
ṭök	‘dog’	ṭok t̥en	‘that dog’
toppóŋ	‘mushroom (k.o.)’	toppoŋ t̥en	‘that mushroom (k.o.)’
cəpók	‘arrow’	cəpók c̥en	‘that arrow’

However, in non-prepausal position before an element with a low tone, the Contour Simplification Rule tends not to apply when C-**en** is preceded by the restrictor **í**:

kálám	k-ókíṭak	ana	í-k-ēn	k-in
pen	c-bad	and	RES-C-DEM	C-POSS1

the pen is bad, but it is mine

This may point towards a historically long vowel that has become short, or perhaps the historical loss of a tone bearing unit. A long vowel is actually attested in C-**ēná** ‘such, like this/that’.

8.2.2. C-**en** as attributive modifier

C-**en** as attributive modifier is part of a noun phrase which also contains its nominal head; the head precedes C-**en**. C-**en** functions as anaphoric demonstrative, referring to a preceding noun phrase or to a clause or stretch of clauses. ‘The story of Amuṭa’ opens with the following clauses: ‘One day, Amuṭa left from home to go stealing in Ṭṛəmo and he saw the goats of Aləlen grazing in the field. Amuṭa jumped quickly to catch the goats’. Then follows the sentence with C-**en**:

caɾɪ c-én a-kəllán k-əɾɛk k-ɔká.t cɪk
 day C-DEM CONJ-old_woman C-some C-be:COMPL VREF

a-k-ɔkəɾaccé-k n.tɪ ɪ-ɔɾɛn
 CONJ-PRO-watch:DEPINCOMPL-O3 from in-firewood

that (same) moment, some old woman was watching him while she was collecting firewood (fr. written story)

The next example is from Luke 2:19. **lən lən appɪk** ‘all those words’ refers to what the shepherds have heard from the angels and have come to tell:

ana.rrúk ɔ-mériɔm p-ɔccɔ.káɛ lən ɪ-ɛn appɪk nɔ-cɪkɪt c-óŋ
 but PERS-Mary C-catch:PST words C-DEM all on-heart C-POSS3

but Mary kept all those words in her heart (Luke 2:19)

8.2.3. C-**en** used independently

C-**en** can be used independently, i.e. without head in the same noun phrase. The absence of a high (or falling) tone on independently used C-**en** shows that the initial consonant of independent C-**en** is a concord, not a pronominal proclitic.

In the following fixed expression, the **p**-concord of **pɛn** implicitly agrees with the noun **papu** ‘thing’.

ŋín-ɬa p-ɛn
 what-QW C-DEM

what you are talking about? (more lit.: what that (thing)?)

By analogy, the concord of the independent demonstrative in the following example implicitly agrees with **pul** ‘person’, agreement is not with **ɔtɬa** ‘who’:

ɔtɬa p-ɛn
 PERS.3-QW C-DEM

who is it? (Used in a speech environment, for example when somebody announced himself, but you did not hear his name, or in the sense of ‘whom are you talking about’).

8.2.4. **c-ên** preceded by the restrictor **í-**

c-ên can be preceded by the restrictor **í-** (which will be discussed in chapter 9). **í-c-ên** functions independently and can be translated as ‘the one(s)’. An example was already given earlier in this chapter. In the first example below, the concord **w-**, which is deleted between vowels (**í-w-ên** > **í-ên**), agrees with **aṛəpu** ‘things’; in the second, **irên** refers to a pig (**tuttəruk**) that has been causing damage before, and that has come again; in the third, **k** refers to the Holy Spirit (**kənánj í-k-ôpuṛé**).

aṛəpu	w-ə-páppá	áppík	í-ên	w-in
things	C-of.PERS-father	all	RES-(C-)DEM	C-POSS1

all the things of the Father are the ones that are mine (John 16:15)

a-púl	í-p-šcúrá	ští.at	ittu	í-r-ên	t-š-máí
CONJ-person	RES-C-male	find:DEPPRFV	that	RES-C-DEM	C-of-some_time_ago

and the man found that it was the one of before

ana	í-k-ên	í-k-a	ə-rən	t-immá.t	inénní	ana	əccíktə
ana	RES-C-DEM	RES-C-COP	PERS-12A	C-see:COMPL	today	and	hear:DEPINCOMPL

and (it is) the one which we have seen and heard today (Acts 2:33)

í-c-ên can be followed by a focus construction with **akka** ‘that’ (realized as **akk** before the initial vowel of a verb). The example below can also be stated just with **akka** or **akk-**, but the combination **í-c-ên akka** makes the focus stronger.

pəṭək	í-p-a	ól	í-ónə	w-əṛá.t
stone	RES-C-COP	people	RES-(C-)build:INCOMPL	C-refuse:COMPL

í-p-ên	akk-əṭəkká.t	cillaŋ
RES-C-DEM	FOC-become:COMPL	big_stone_as_fundament_of_wall

the stone which the builders rejected is the one that has become the fundament (Luke 20:17)

Two examples with **í-c-ên akka(a)** and a transitive verb follow here. In the first, **k** of **ikên** agrees with **kəṛan** ‘name’. Note in the second that the subject comes after the verb.

၁-၁၁၁ တ-၁၁၁ **၁-က-၁၁** **akka** **မ-ပ-၁.၁** **ပ-၁၁၁**
 PERS-2A C-not_know:INCOMPL RES-C-DEM that 1-C-be:PR C-talk_to:INCOMPL
၁၁၁ **၁၁** **၁-၁**
 O2A words C-of:ABS

you (PL) do not know that it is the one (i.e. ‘the name’) I am telling you of (Acts 17:23)

တု၁၁၁ **၁-တ-၁၁** **akk-၁၁** **ပု၁** **၁-ပ-၁၁** **၁၁** **၁၁-၁၁**
 food RES-C-DEM FOC-have person RES-C-black here on-ground

food is what a human being needs here on earth

၁၁၁ akka +H is a fixed expression for ‘that’s why’. The concord **၁** agrees with the implicit noun **၁၁** ‘words, matters’:

၁-၁၁ **akka** **၁-၁၁၁၁-၁၁** **၁၁၁-၁၁၁**
 RES-C-DEM that CONJ-1-speak_to.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL-O2 always-REDUP

that’s why I always talk to you

၁၁၁, just by itself, is a fixed expression for ‘that’s it!’ The concord **ပ** agrees with the implicit noun **၁၁** ‘thing’:

၁-ပ-၁၁
 RES-C-DEM

that’s it! (i.e. that’s what I had in mind, that’s what I wanted to say)

8.2.5. The manner-deictic adjective **C-၁၁** ‘such, like this/that’

It is very likely that **C-၁၁** ‘such, like this/that’ contains the pronominal base **၁၁** as a formative, as was mentioned earlier in this chapter. **C-၁၁** has anaphoric reference and can be used as a modifier (first example below), but also independently (second example below). Like most adjectives **C-၁၁** is preceded by the restrictor **၁**- when it functions as an attribute.

á-pól í-p-ééná ókórənn-ɔmə⁵⁷ ittĩ ...
 SUBJ-person RES-C-such NEG:DEP-say:DEPINCOMPL that

let such a person not say that ...

pól ɛm-p-ɪ p-ééná ana ɛm-p-í p-ééná
 person DEM-C-NEARSP C-such and DEM-C-NEARSP C-such

this person is like this and the other one (lit. this one) is like that

⁵⁷ The falling tone of ɔmə ‘say’ becomes low in this context.

9. The restrictor

The “restrictor” (the proclitic element *í-*) turns adjectival and verbal predicates into attributive modifiers that restrict the reference of the head noun to a subgroup with the properties or qualities expressed by the adjectival or verbal predicate. Verbal predicates with the restrictor function as restrictive relative clauses (see chapter 11).

The restrictor brings a high tone to a following verb in the way described by the rules of Tone Shift (and Tone Reappearance sub-Rules) and Contour Simplification, cf:

pul **p-ɔparí**

person C-female

the person is female

pul **ɪ-p-ɔparí**

person RES-C-female

the woman (the person who is female)

It cannot itself receive a high tone from a preceding element, but it can have a high realization due to tone bridge. In view of these properties I represent it with a high tone: *í-* (a rising tone would have been possible as well, see 3.8). It has no prepausal realization.

A least some adjectives, however, have a tonal realization that is different from what would be expected, when preceded by the restrictor. Examples include **C-ɔɲí** ‘black’, **C-ɔttê** (or **C-ɔttê**) ‘small, little, young’, **C-ərɪk** ‘big, important’ and **C-ɔkɪtak** ‘bad’. The restrictor brings a high tone to their initial mora replacing their own tone pattern, as, for example in **pul ɪ-p-ərɪk** ‘person who is important’. This is, however, not the case for all adjectives (nor for all adjectives with a L.HL or L.H.L tone pattern).

Morpho-phonologically the restrictor behaves in a regular way: when attached to an adjective or verb with +ATR vowels, its realization may change slightly in the direction of a +ATR realization. Preceding an *ɪ*-initial element a little length is generally retained.

An example with an adjective and a verb phrase preceded by the restrictor follow here:

kəɾet **ɪ-k-ípe** **k-á.ík** **cóné**
 cloth RES-C-old C-be:PR here
 the old cloth is here

tuk **ɪ-t-úkkwá.t** **t-á.ík** **cóné**
 dog RES-C-become_old:COMPL C-be:PR here
 the old dog is here

The following examples concern modification of object nouns through modifiers with and without the restrictor, and placed inside and outside the noun phrase.

cɔɾâŋ ‘stick’ in the first example below in principle allows for a definite as well as an indefinite reading. This is the same when the ‘stick’ is modified by an adjective or verb phrase with the restrictor, provided that this modifier is positioned within the noun phrase, i.e. used attributively (second example below):

k-kw-ʒtúk-w.áté **cúɾáŋ** **n.tɪ** **ɪ-wét**
 3-C-grab:PST stick from in-horizontal_bamboos_of_roof
 s/he grabbed a/the stick from the inside of the roof

k-kw-ʒtúk-w.áté **cúɾáŋ** **í-c-ʒɲɪ** **n.tɪ** **ɪ-wét**
 3-C-grab:PST stick RES-C-black from in-horizontal_bamboos_of_roof
 s/he grabbed a/the black stick from the inside of the roof

It is different when the adjective with restrictor is positioned at the end of the clause, outside of the noun phrase. Now, the adjective (**ɪcɔɲɪ** ‘black’) gives a definite reading to the noun (**cɔɾâŋ** ‘stick’), identifying it as the black one among other sticks:

k-kw-ǵúkw.ǵé **cúráŋ** **n.ti** **i-wet** **i-c-ǵni**
 3-C-grab:PST stick from in-horizontal_bamboos_of_roof RES-C-black

s/he grabbed the black stick from the inside of the roof (implies that there are one or more other sticks: it is the black one that is taken)

The first example below is syntactically comparable to the example above, but lacks the restrictor on the adjective (**c-ǵé** ‘red’). Providing some information about the necklace (**cuccú**), namely that it is red, the adjective establishes an indefinite reading of it. Unlike its counterpart with restrictor, an attributive adjective or verb phrase without restrictor is not placed inside the noun phrase, but comes at the end (second example below).

k-kw-ákó.t **cuccú** **i-cəlák** **c-ǵé**
 3-C-wear:COMPL bead in-neck C-red

she has put a red necklace around her neck

***k-kw-ákó.t** **cuccú** **c-ǵé** **i-cəlák**
 3-C-wear:COMPL bead C-red in-neck

Two examples contrasting a clause with and without the restrictor modifying an object noun follow here. The first is the opening line of a story, introducing the main character, the second identifies a certain jackal amongst others:

m-p-a.ik **p-a.t-éret** **ǵlapaccút**
 1-C-be:PR C-IT:INCOMPL-speak_about:DEPINCOMPL jackal

w-ǵná.t **məre**
 C-bring:COMPL cultivating_party

I am going to talk about a jackal who organized a cultivating party (‘The story of the jackal’)

m-p-a.ik **p-a.t-éret** **ǵlapaccút**
 1-C-be:PR C-IT:INCOMPL-speak_about:DEPINCOMPL jackal

i-ǵná.t **məre**
 RES-(C-)bring:COMPL cultivating_party

I am going to talk about the jackal who organized a cultivating party (implies that there are other jackals who did not organize such a party)

Adjectives which are used independently have the restrictor. In the example below the concord **c** agrees with **corân** ‘stick’:

ɛt-in **i-c-ɔɲi**
 give:IMP-O1 RES-C-black
 give me the black one!

The earlier given example with **icɔɲi** at the end of the clause in fact allows for a reading like this as well (‘s/he grabbed the stick from the inside of the roof, the black one’).

The use of the restrictor on adjectives (and numerals) and on relative clauses is further exemplified in the chapters 10 and 11. The restrictor is not used on connexive constructions, possessors and demonstratives, with the exception of the anaphoric demonstrative **c-ɛn**. **i-c-ɛn** ‘the one’ was discussed in chapter 8.2.4.

The restrictor furthermore forms a fixed combination with **ɔkkwí**, giving **ɔkkwí í-** ‘(the one) who’ (see chapter 6.1.5).

10. Adjectives

Lumun adjectives consist of a concord and an adjectival stem:

C-ADJ

All adjectival stems are vowel-initial. Otherwise, there are no phonological restrictions other than those that apply to all words in the language. There are also no specific restrictions on the tone patterns.

10.1. Adjectives as predicates, attributes and independent forms

In its basic form (C-ADJ) the adjective functions as a predicate, for example:

pul p-ittík

person C-big

the person is big

pul p-ɔká.t p-ímmìn

person C-be:COMPL C-heavy

the person was heavy

Adjectival predicates can occur in any TAM through the addition of an inflected copular verb **ɔká** ‘be’ or **ɔtókka** ‘become’. Adjectives are also used in secondary predication (or depictive) constructions. In the first three examples below the depictive is subject-oriented, in the last it is object-oriented:

ŋəɽi ŋ-aa.t ŋ-ɔttê

water C-come:COMPL C-little

a little water has come (the water came little)

ul w-illé.t w-ɔppót

people C-die,PLUR:COMPL C-many

many people have died (the people have died many)

m-p-ĩcát.ɛ **p-ɔpərɔt**

1-C-lie_down:COMPL C-good

I slept well

a-kw-ĩmma.kat **pápəɾɛk** **ɪ-kaɾɛr** **p-ɔɾɛɾɛt**

CONJ-3-see:DEPPRFV

something

in-road

C-spotted

and he saw something spotted in the road (and he saw something in the road (as) spotted) ('A boy and a goat')

The adjective 'good' is also attested in situations in which it seems to modify a verb:

m-p-a.ɪk **p-aɲáɾɔ** **p-ɔpərɔt**

1-C-be:PR

C-walk:INCOMPL

C-good

I am walking well (implying: I had difficulty walking before)

ɔ-kakká **p-á.ɪk** **p-ére** **p-ɔpərɔt**

PERS-Kakka

C-be:PR

C-speak:INCOMPL

C-good

Kakka is speaking well (implying: she had difficulty speaking before, perhaps because of a sour throat)

It is, however, not actually modifying the verb, but providing information about the state of the subject, functioning not as an adverb, but as a depictive secondary predication. 'Good' agreeing with the subject can, for example, not be used in the next case, irrespective of whether the understood object **ɲuɾú** 'asida' is explicitly mentioned. 'Good' can only modify the object (second example below):

***ɔ-kakká** **p-íɬa** **p-ɔpərɔt**

PERS-Kakka

C-cook:INCOMPL

C-good

Kakka cooks (asida) well

ɔ-kakká **p-íɬa** **ɲuɾú** **ɲ-ɔpərɔt**

PERS-Kakka

C-cook:INCOMPL

asida

C-good

Kakka cooks the asida good (i.e. she cooks good asida)

Also a noun phrase with **lɔn** 'words' modified by an adjective can function adverbially:

m-p-ĩcáṭe **lɔn** **l-ɔpərɔt**
 1-C-lie_down:COMPL words C-good

I have slept well

When used attributively, adjectives are typically preceded by the restrictor **ĩ-**:

pul **ĩ-p-ittík** **p-aát**
 person RES-C-big C-come:COMPL

the big person has come

kəreṭ **ĩ-k-ípé** **ĩ-k-ɔ́térét**
 cloth RES-C-old RES-C-spotted

the old spotted cloth

The restrictor is also present when the adjective is used independently:

cattak **c-a.ɪk** **ĩ-c-ɔ́rɪk** **ana** **ĩ-c-ɔ́ttɛ**
 calabash(k.o.) C-be:PR RES-C-big and RES-C-little

ana.rrúk **ĩ-c-ɔ́ttɛ** **c-ɔ́kəttát.ɛ**
 but RES-C-little C-be_broken:COMPL

there is a calabash which is big and one which is small, but the small one is broken (there is a big calabash and a small one, but the small one is broken)

10.2. Adjectives as a word class

Lumun adjectives are neither nouns nor verbs, but a word class in their own right.

Lumun adjectives are different from nouns because they must be preceded by the restrictor **ĩ-** in order to be used independently. Nouns, on the other hand, are never preceded by the restrictor **ĩ-**, cf.:

ĩ-c-ɔ́ttɛ ‘the small one’ (for example a small **cattak** ‘calabash (k.o.)’
korê ‘left-handed person’

Moreover, there is a difference in predicating constructions of the type ‘X is Y’. A noun X can be juxtaposed with a noun Y or with an adjective Y, but there is an alternative construction with the copula C-á ‘be’ that is possible with nouns, but not with adjectives; and an alternative construction with the Present of ‘be’ C-aík (containing the formative **cík**) that is possible between a noun and an adjective, but not between nouns. Cf.:

pul **pɪɲɲít** / **pul** **p-a** **pɪɲɲít**
 person singer / person C-be:PR singer
 the person is a singer

***pul** **p-a.ík** **pɪɲɲít**
 person C-be:PR singer

pul **p-ərɪk** / **pul** **p-a.ík** **p-ərɪk**
 person C-big / person C-be:PR C-big
 the person is important

***pul** **p-a** **p-ərɪk**
 person C-be:PR C-big

Adjectives resemble verbs more than nouns. Like verbs, adjectives function basically as predicates. The first example has a Completive verb, the second an adjective.

ɔ-laló **p-ɔkɪɲâ.t**
 PERS-Lalo C-become_tired:COMPL
 Lalo is tired

ɔ-laló **p-ɔpərɔt**
 PERS-Lalo C-good
 Lalo is fine

Verbs and adjectives can both occur with a subject pronominal clitic. In the first example the pronominal clitic is attached to a verb, in the second to an adjective:

k-kw-áá.t

3-C-come:COMPL

s/he has come

k-kw-ímmìn

3-C-heavy

s/he is heavy

Adjectives and verbs can both be preceded by the restrictor:

pul ɪ-p-érík p-aát

person RES-C-big C-come:COMPL

the person who is important has come (i.e. the important person has come)

pul ɪ-p-áŋkəne p-aát

person RES-C-teach:INCOMPL C-come:COMPL

the person who teaches (i.e. the teacher) has come

In the same way as verbs, several adjectives allow for the derivation of an abstract noun through replacement of the concord by the noun class prefix **ɿ** and adoption of the tone pattern L*.LH (see 4.6.3). Two examples:

C-ɿpərât ‘good’ vs. **ɿpərât** ‘goodness’C-ɿpók ‘white’ vs. **ɿpók** ‘whiteness’

However, the regular processes of verb-to-verb derivation cannot be applied to adjectives. For example, it is not possible to have a Benefactive derivation with adjectives, while this derivation can be made on the basis of (virtually) all verbs.

A further important difference with verbs is that adjectives cannot inflect. Verbs have inflectional morphology marking the basic TAMs (see 12.5) and they can occur together with auxiliaries. On adjectives, on the other hand, TAMs must be expressed with the help of an inflected copular verb (**ɿkâ** ‘be’ or **ɿtákkâ** ‘become’). Compare the verbal and the adjectival predicate:

ɔ-laló **p-á.kíɲa**
 PERS-Lalu C-become_tired:INCOMPL

Lalu will become tired

ɔ-laló **p-á.tókka** **p-ɔpərɔt**
 PERS-Lalu C-be:INCOMPL C-good

Lalu will become good

Some further examples with **ɔkâ** and **ɔtókka** and an adjective follow here.

kəɽittan **k-ɔká.t** **k-ɔrrô**
 knife C-be:COMPL C-blunt

the knife was blunt

tacɔ **t-ɔtəkká.t** **t-ɔppɔt** **cókɔc-cəkɔt**
 grass C-become:COMPL C-many quickly-REDUP

the weeds have quickly become abundant

takəɽok **t-ɔtəkká.katɛ** **t-ɔɲərâ**
 chicken C-become:PST C-smooth

the chicken became fat

Certain auxiliaries precede a verbal TAM-stem without concord. Adjectival predicates with such an auxiliary make use of a copular verb on which the auxiliary is expressed. Compare the first two examples with the negation auxiliary C-**akónn**. The first has a verbal predicate, the second an adjectival:

ɲəpak **ɲ-akónn-ɔkkəttat**
 beer C-NEG-be_done:DEPCOMPL

the beer is not done (i.e., the beer is not ready)

ɲəpak **ɲ-akónn-ɔká** **ɲ-írrók**
 beer C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL C-cold

the beer is not cold

Compare also the following examples with the irrealis marker (see 12.18). The first has a verbal predicate, the second an adjectival:

ɔ-ttán **p-á-íó.t**
 PERS-father C-IRR-die:COMPL

his/her father would have died

ɔ-ttán **p-á-aká.t** **p-ɔpərôt**
 PERS-father C-IRR-be:COMPL C-good

his/her father would have been fine

There is no reason to analyse adjectives as defective verbs. Even though they share the obligatory presence of the concord with the Non-dependent basic TAMs (Incomplete, Complete and Past), all segmental and tonal characteristics of these verbal TAMs are lacking in the adjective.

10.2.1. Semantic grouping

This section presents adjectives in semantic groups, largely following the semantic types specified in Dixon (2010, p. 73-74). Instead of ‘human propensity’ I use ‘spiritual property’. Some adjectives have a dimensional interpretation with singular head nouns and a quantifying interpretation with plural and mass nouns (C-**ərík** and C-**ttê**, C-**ttê**). This is discussed in section 10.2.6 of this chapter, as are the different plural forms of some of the dimensional adjectives. C-**ttê** and C-**ttê** have a dimensional interpretation (‘small, little’) as well as an age interpretation (‘young’); their reduplicated plurals refer to small size. The plural C-**arran** refers in the first place to young age of living creatures (people, animals, plants). There is an adjective for old age of things (C-**ípe**), but old age of living creatures is expressed with the Complete of the verb **ukkwa** (or **ukka**) ‘become old’ (C-**ukkwât** or C-**ukkât**). An example is found in chapter 9.

Tonally, the adjectives are represented here as they occur as predicates of an all-low noun. However, as remarked in chapter 9, use of the restricator causes unexpected tonal changes in at least some adjectives. Compare:

pul pəkítak ‘the person is bad’

pul ɪ-pókítak ‘the bad person’

dimension, shape

C-ərɪk ‘big, important’ (SG)

C-ittik ‘big’ (SG)

C-ottê, C-ottê ‘small, little, young’ (SG)

C-úkwit ‘long, tall, deep’ (SG)

C-uttôt ‘short’

C-énnaŋ ‘properly sized’

C-ápe ‘wide’

C-ərulókkul ‘round’

plural form

/ C-ittí-C-ittik, C-ittittik (PL)

/ C-ittí-C-ittik, C-ittittik (PL)

/ C-ottó-C-ottê, C-ottóttê,

C-ottó-C-ottê, C-ottóttê

/ C-úkwit-C-úkwit (PL)

age

C-íe ‘new’ (i.e. young age of things)

C-ottê, C-ottê ‘small, little, young’ / C-árran (PL) ‘young’

C-ípe ‘old’ (of things)

value

C-əpərôt ‘good’

C-əkítak ‘bad’

C-íccɪɪɪ ‘marvellous, superb’

C-ərɪk ‘big, important’ (SG) / C-ittí-C-ittik, C-ittittik (PL)

colour

C-əɲɪ ‘black’

C-ɪpók ‘white’

C-əɹě ‘red, ripe’

C-əɹəlō ‘grey, yellowish’

C-íccí ‘green’

C-ələmít ‘light brown, towards green’

C-arorōŋ ‘grey and brown mixed’

C-əlorrō ‘striped’

C-əɹerēt ‘spotted’

C-acallerō ‘spotted (with big spots)’

*physical property*C-**ímmīn** ‘heavy’C-**íppappat** ‘light, easy’⁵⁸C-**íán** ‘wet’C-**íppá** ‘hot, warm’C-**írrók** ‘cold’C-**ṁṁṁmat** ‘hard’C-**ṁṁṁrâ** ‘smooth, soft, infertile (of a man)’C-**akérakkérâ** ‘rough’C-**ṁṁṁṁ** ‘rough’C-**ṁṁṁú** ‘blunt’C-**ṁṁṁṁ** ‘sharp’C-**akírakkír** ‘dim’C-**ípm** ‘not well cooked’C-**ṁṁṁṁ** ‘tasty, sweet’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘sour’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘salty’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘bitter’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘clean, stingy’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘sick’C-**áíṁṁṁ** ‘crippled’C-**ṁṁṁ** (SG)/C-**ṁṁṁ** (PL) ‘female’C-**ṁṁṁ** (SG)/C-**ṁṁṁ** (PL) ‘male’*spiritual property*C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘clean (in spiritual sense)’C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘forbidden’*speed*C-**akókakkók** ‘fast’C-**akókukkók** ‘fast’*similarity*C-**ṁṁṁ** ‘such, like this/that’

⁵⁸ According to JS, younger people tend to use C-**íppappat** while older people tend to use the Completive verb C-**ṁṁṁ** (< **ṁṁṁ** ‘be(come) light’).

*quantification*C-**ṣppôṭ** ‘many, a lot of’ (PL or mass)C-**ərīk** ‘many, a lot of’ (PL or mass)C-**ṣttê**, C-**ṣttê** ‘few, a little’ (PL or mass)C-**ərĕk** ‘some, other’C-**ullúk** ‘only, just’C-**ərúk** ‘only, just’C-**arît** ‘half, half full’*cardinal numbers*

The numerals ‘one’ up to ‘ten’ are adjectives (‘five’, ‘eight’, ‘nine’ and ‘ten’ have an invariable form as well). They are discussed in 10.4.1.

Alamin Mubarak (2002, p. 47) remarks that in Acheron an adjective of size (‘big’) and an adjective of age (‘old’) cannot be combined (i.e. *the big old house). In Lumun (which has cognate items for ‘house’, ‘big’ and ‘old’), this is not a problem. The adjectives can be used in either order:

man	ī-m-ittīk	ī-m-īpe	/	man	ī-m-īpé	ī-m-ittīk
house	RES-C-big	RES-C-old	/	house	RES-C-old	RES-C-big

the big old house

10.2.2. Origins of adjectives

Several adjectives are underived, but there are also adjectives that are derived from verbs, nouns or adverbs. There are also cases in which there is a derivational relationship but in which the direction of the derivation is unclear. In some cases it seems likely that the adjective has served as basis for the derivation.

10.2.3. Verbal origins

C-**ṣṭōmat** ‘hard’ is a clear case of development from the Completive C-**ṣṭōmât** of the verb **ṣṭōma** ‘become dry’. The Completive C-**ṣṭōmât** itself is used for the expression of the quality of being ‘dry’, as the result of the process of drying:

kəret **k-ɔ̃n̄təmâ.t**
 cloth C-become_dry:COMPL

the cloth has dried / the cloth is dry

ɲərə **ɲ-ɔ̃n̄tɔ̃mat**
 work C-hard

the work is hard

The adjective C-**íppappat** ‘light’ can be understood as a development from the adverb **íppáppat** (see 17.1.3 for its adverbial morphology), which relates to the Completive verb C-**ɔ̃pappât** (< **ɔ̃páppa** ‘be(come) light’). An example with the adjective is given first, then an example with the adverb, then an example with the Completive verb.

pul **ɪ-p-ɔ̃ká.t** **p-íppappat**
 person RES-C-be:COMPL C-light

a person who was light

ukul **w-ɔ̃kkɔ̃t.é** **ɲərə** **íppáppat**
 child C-do:COMPL work lightly

the child did the work easily

pul **ɪ-p-ɔ̃ká.t** **p-ɔ̃pappâ.t**
 person RES-C-be:COMPL C-become_light:COMPL

a person who had become light / who was light

The segmental and tonal form of C-**ɔ̃pərɔ̃t** ‘good’ suggest an origin in the Completive form of a verb ***ɔ̃pərɔ̃**, but this verb (irrespective of its tones) does not exist. There is, however, a verb **ɔ̃píra** ‘be(come) good’:

pul **p-a.píra**
 person C-become_good:INCOMPL

the person will get well (s/he is ill now, but shows signs of recovery)

There is surely a historical relationship between C-**ɔ̃pərɔ̃t** ‘good’ and **ɔ̃píra**, but how exactly they relate is not clear.

There are other adjectives that are related to (inchoative) state verbs, which typically —though not in all cases— have a final or last vowel

a. It is not evident which form is derived from which:

C-**ɔkɪ̃tak** ‘bad’ vs. **ɔkɪ̃taka** ‘become bad’

C-**ɪpók** ‘white’ vs. **ɪpóká** ‘become white’

C-**ɔttót** ‘short’ (SG) vs. **ɔttórat** ‘become short’

C-**ípe** ‘old’ vs. **ipa** ‘become old’ (of things)

C-**ɔrě** ‘red, ripe’ vs. **ɔria** ‘become red, ripe’

C-**ɔrě** ‘clean’ vs. **ɔria** ‘become clean’

C-**ɔɲó** ‘sick’ vs. **ɔɲa** ‘become sick’

C-**ɔppôt** ‘many, a lot’ vs. **ɔppât** ‘become full’

C-**ɔɲərâ** ‘smooth, soft, infertile (of a man)’ vs. **ɔɲéra** ‘become smooth’

C-**ɔpôn** ‘bitter’ vs. **ɔpía** ‘become bitter’

C-**ɔrró** ‘blunt’ vs. **ɔrróttat** ‘become blunt’

C-**ɔrrê** ‘sharp’ vs. **ɔrréttat** ‘become sharp’

C-**ápe** ‘wide’ vs. **apekət cik** ‘become wide’

There can be subtle meaning difference between an adjective and the Completive of the related (inchoative) state verb. Compare the examples below. Whereas C-**ípe** ‘old’ reports on a state or property of a non-living thing in a neutral way (in the examples below sorghum that has been stored), the Completive C-**ipât** (< **ipa** ‘become old’), the Completive more strongly evokes a picture of showing signs of age:

mɪl

sorghum

old sorghum

ɪ-m-ípe

RES-C-old

mɪl

sorghum

ɪ-m-ipâ.t

RES-C-become_old:COMPL

sorghum which has become old (picture that comes to mind: it has holes from being eaten by ants, it has probably been stored for several years)

10.2.4. Nominal origins

Some other adjectives have nominal origins. They have developed either from the copula C-á ‘be’ and a noun, or from the connexive (C-ə ‘of’) and a noun. Some examples derived with C-á and noun:

C-**áířilla** ‘crippled’ (< C-á + **řilla** ‘cripple’)

C-**arurǝŋ** ‘grey and brown’ (< and C-á + **turǝŋ** ‘snake sp., with mixed grey and brown colour’)

C-**akǝrǝkkǝrǝ** ‘rough’ (< C-á + **kǝrǝkkǝrǝ** ‘rough spot’)

C-**akířakkır** ‘dim’ (< C-á + **kırakkır** ‘twilight’)

C-**acallerǝ** ‘spotted (with big spots)’ (< C-á + (probably) **calle** ‘ball’ (final **rǝ** (or **tǝ**) is not identified)

Evidence that these adjectives are indeed adjectives and not copulas + nouns comes from the possibility to make constructions with the Present of ‘be’ C-**áık**. Cf.:

pul	p-a	řilla
person	C-COP	cripple

the person is a cripple

pul	p-áířilla
person	C-crippled

the person is crippled

pul	p-a.ık	p-áířilla
person	C-be:PR	C-crippled

the person is crippled / there is a crippled person

In some, there is clear semantic specialization:

ımıt	w-arurǝŋ
goat	C-grey_and_brown

the goat is grey and brown

pıřıl	p-a	turǝŋ
snake	C-COP	snake(sp.)

the snake is a *turǝŋ*

In other adjectives the connexive C-ɔ̌ and a noun can be recognized. Adjectives of this type are similar to normal connexive + noun constructions (see chapter 7.1), but there are differences. In the first place, there are cases with segmental or tonal changes, as in both examples below where the tones of the adjective are not expected on the basis of the composing parts. One also finds semantic specialization in the same examples (the composing nouns function metaphorically):

C-ɔ̌lɔrrɔ̌ ‘striped’ (< C-ɔ̌ + lɔrrɔ̌ ‘ears of maize’)

C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t ‘spotted’ (< C-ɔ̌ + tɛrɛ̌t ‘corn cob’)

A fundamental syntactic difference between adjectives and constructions of connexive + noun has to do with the restrictor. Connexive + noun constructions are not preceded by the restrictor, but adjectives have the restrictor when used as restrictive attributes. This is the case even though some adjectives that are derived from the connexive and a noun may also lack the restrictor as restrictive attributes. An example of this is C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t ‘spotted’. In the example below the restrictor is present, but it could also be absent (second example):

cattak **i-C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t** **C-ɔ̌kəttát̃.ɛ**

calabash(k.o.) RES-C-spotted C-break:COMPL

the spotted calabash has broken

cattak **C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t** **C-ɔ̌kəttát̃.ɛ**

calabash(k.o.) C-spotted C-break:COMPL

the spotted calabash has broken

The possibility to use C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t ‘spotted’ as a restrictive attribute without the restrictor shows that C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t ‘spotted’ does not fully behave as an adjective. Partly it (still) patterns with connexive + noun constructions.

However, like other adjectives, C-ɔ̌tɛrɛ̌t ‘spotted’ must have the restrictor in order to be used independently:

ɪ-c-ɔ̃t̪er̪et **c-ɔ̃kətt̪at̪.ɛ**
 RES-C-spotted C-break:COMPL

the spotted one has broken

The adjectives ‘female’ and ‘male’ have different stems for singular/plural, containing singular and plural nouns, though in the case of ‘male’ the composing nouns are not synchronically attested. These adjectives do not allow for attributive use without the restrictor.

C-ɔ̃**parí** (SG)/C-**aarí** (PL) ‘female’ (< C-ɔ̃ + **parí** ‘wife’/ C-ɔ̃ + **arí** ‘wives’)

C-ɔ̃**cura** (SG)/C-ɔ̃**mura** (PL) ‘male’ (< C-ɔ̃ + ***cura** / C-ɔ̃ + ***mura**)

Two examples:

ɬaməlá **í-ɬ-ɔ̃parí**
 camel RES-C-female.SG

a female camel

laməlá **í-l-áarí**
 camels RES-C-female.PL

female camels

The following example contrasts the adjective -ɔ̃**parí** ‘female’ and the noun **parí** ‘wife’ in an equative relative construction:

pul **ɪ-p-ɔ̃parí** **ɪ-p-a** **parí**
 person RES-C-female.SG RES-C-COP wife

the woman who is a wife

10.2.5. Adverbial origins

One example of derivation of an adjective from an adverbial was mentioned earlier: C-**íppappat** ‘light’. Two others that contain C-**á** ‘be’ and an adverb are:

C-**acókcccəkət** ‘fast’ (< C-**á** + **cəkcccəkət** ‘quickly’)

C-**akúcukkkucuk** ‘fast’ (< C-**á** + **kucukkkucuk** ‘quickly’)

10.2.6. Singular and plural forms

Some adjectives have different forms for singular and plural. ‘Male’ and ‘female’, which are based on singular vs. plural nouns, were mentioned above. A few adjectives obligatorily occur in (partial) reduplicated form when modifying a noun which refers to a plural entity. In the case of ‘big’ the final consonant does not participate in the reduplication; in the case of ‘small’, the first part has a changed final vowel. For this reason, I regard the first part as the reduplicated part. Note also that in ‘big’ and ‘small’, the reduplication can involve or not involve the concord. In the case of ‘long, tall, deep’, the concord always participates in the reduplication. In analogy to the other adjectives, I regard the first part here as the reduplicated part.

C-**ərɪk** / C-**ittí**-C-**ittík** or C-**ittí**-**ittík** ‘big’

C-**ittík** / C-**ittí**-C-**ittík** or C-**ittí**-**ittík** ‘big’

C-**əttê** / C-**əttó**-C-**əttê** or C-**əttó**-**əttê** ‘small’,

or: C-**əttê** / C-**əttó**-C-**əttê** or C-**əttó**-**əttê** ‘small’

C-**úkwît** / C-**úkwít**-C-**úkwît** ‘long, tall, deep’

Some examples follow here.

man **ɪ-m-ittík**

room RES-C-big

a big room

kəmən **ɪ-k-ittí~k-ittík** / **ɪ-k-ittí~ittík**

rooms RES-C-PLR~C-big / RES-C-PLR~big

big rooms

pəɾak **ɪ-p-ittí~p-ittík** / **ɪ-p-ittí~ittík**

group_of_people RES-C-PLR~C-big / RES-C-PLR~big

a group of adults (a group of people who are big)

karí í-k-úkwî

nail RES-C-long

a long nail

kira í-k-úkwîk~k-úkwî

trees RES-C-PLR~C-long

tall trees

In the next example ‘long’ is used in an object-oriented secondary predication:

ṭ-ṭkorranno áí í w-úkwîr~úkwî ṭ-ṭkítak

NOM-let nails C-PLR~(C-)long C-bad

leaving your nails long is bad (i.e.: not cutting your nails is bad)

In **wúkwîrúkwî** ‘long’, in the example above, the segment **r** is the regular outcome of the underlying sequence **t-w** (< **wúkwî-t-wúkwî**).

C-ṭṭê ‘small, little, young’ and **C-ṭṭê**, and their reduplications, are alternative forms. The form with **ṭ** is used in case of **ṭ**-concord (first example below), or when the preceding qualified noun contains a **ṭ** in non-initial position (second example below). The forms with **ṭ** and **t** are both possible in case of **l**-concord or in case of the preceding qualified noun containing an **l** in non-initial position. In other cases the forms with **t** tend to be used.

ṭún ṭ-ṭṭê

onion C-small

the onion is small

naṭa n-ṭṭṭ~ṭṭê

leaves C-PLR~small

the leaves are small

The modifier of plural nouns **C-ârran** ‘young’ is used with living creatures:

appentína **w-ârran**
groundnuts C-young

the groundnuts are young/small (they are still on the plant, not yet fully grown)

ɲokul **ɲ-ârran**
children C-young

the children are young/small

When the children are small-sized for their age C-ɔttɔ-ɔttê or C-ɔttɔ-ɔttê is used:

ɲokul **ɲ-ɔttɔ~ɔttê**
children C-PLR~small

the children are (too) small (suggesting they do not get good food, or not enough)

It is not impossible to use C-ârran ‘young’ outside of its normal domain:

mətɔk **m-ârran**
stones C-young

the stones are small (elic.)

Interestingly, the singular forms C-ərɪk ‘big’, and C-ɔttê and C-ɔttê ‘small’ can also be used in combination with a plural noun, but then take on quantifying instead of dimensional meaning. C-ərɪk then expresses ‘many’ or ‘a lot’; C-ɔttê and C-ɔttê then expresses ‘few’:

ul **w-ərɪk**
people C-big

the people are many

maɾɪ **m-ɔttê**
days C-small

a few days

C-ɔttê (C-ɔttê) also takes on quantifying meaning in combination with a mass noun, namely as ‘a little’:

ɲɔcɔl **ɲ-ɔttê**
sauce c-small

the sauce is (too) little

Reduplication of ‘small’, ‘big’ and ‘long’ (or a subset of these) in case of modification of a plural noun also occurs in some other languages from the Talodi and Heiban groups, including Tocho, Dengebu and Jomang (Schadeberg 1981b, p. 20, 32, 38, 132, 148) as well as Ebang (Schadeberg 1981a p. 23, 47) and Otoro (Schadeberg 2009, p. 202). The use of the non-reduplicated dimensional adjective as a quantifier of plural nouns, too, is found in other Talodi and Heiban languages. Schadeberg (1981b) reports ‘small’/‘few’ for Ngile, Dengebu and Tocho (p. 148), and ‘big’/‘many’ for Dengebu (p. 132). Stevenson mentions ‘small’/‘few’ in Otoro (Schadeberg 2009, p. 202). In Tocho ‘many’ is applied as the (suppletive) plural of ‘big’ (Schadeberg 1981b p. 132).

10.2.7. Intensified forms

Some adjectives have a counterpart with (partial) reduplication and/or an added geminate expressing intensification. In the first and second example below it is unclear in which direction the reduplication has gone. The third and fourth examples are cases of partial reduplication occurring to the left of the root; the fifth has an added geminate to the right of the root. The sixth has an added geminate to the right of the root as well as a changed ending.

C-ɔpún ‘bitter’ vs. C-ɔ-pom-pún ‘very bitter’

C-íccí ‘green’ vs. C-íccí-íccí ‘very green’

C-ɔttôt ‘short’ vs. C-ɔttú-C-úttôt or C-ɔttú-úttôt ‘very short’

C-ôpuré ‘clean (in spiritual sense)’ vs. C-ô-pu-puré ‘very clean (in spiritual sense), holy’

C-ɔkítak ‘very bad’ vs. C-ɔkít-ɛtt-ak ‘very bad’

C-ɔpərât ‘good’ vs. C-ɔpər-əttərɛ or C-ɔp-əttərɛ ‘very good, very nice’

Certain colour adjectives co-occur with a dedicated cognate adverb that intensifies their meaning. These adverbs have the adverbial morphology of gemination of the first consonant of the stem,

preceded by the vowel **ɪ** (see 17.1). The intensifying adverbials tend to fuse with the adjective to an intensified adjective. Some examples:

C-**ḡnî** ‘black’ vs. C-**ḡnî ḡnî** or C-**ḡnîḡnî** ‘very black’

C-**ɪpók** ‘white’ vs. C-**ɪpók ɪppók** or C-**ɪpókɪppók** ‘very white’

C-**ḡtəlḡ** ‘grey, yellowish’ vs. C-**ḡtəlḡ ɪttəlḡ** ‘very grey, yellow’

See 17.1.4 for examples of **ḡnî** ‘very (black)’ and **ɪppók** ‘very (white)’ modifying a verb.

C-**ḡṛě** ‘clean, stingy’ has a different intensified form, which involves reduplication and gemination of **ṛ** to **ll**: C-**ḡṛillṛ** ‘very clean, pure (especially of water)’.

The intensified form of C-**ḡnərâ** ‘smooth, soft, infertile (of a man)’ has the adverbial morphology of a reduplicated first stem consonant preceded by the vowel **ɪ**:

C-**ḡnərâ** ‘smooth, soft, infertile (of a man)’ vs. C-**ɪḡnərâ** ‘very smooth, soft’

C-**íccɪncɪn** ‘marvellous, superb’ is a reduplicated form and has an “intense” meaning, but a non-reduplicated form is not attested.

C-**ḡṛě** ‘red, ripe’ has a specific intensifying adverbial—which does not seem to be cognate—that may fuse with the adjective:

C-**ḡṛe ɪttuǎṅ** or C-**ḡṛettiǎṅ** ‘very red, very ripe’

10.3. Other ways of expressing spiritual property

Lumun has adjectives in diverse semantic fields, but adjectives—as well as verbs and nouns—in the field of spiritual property or human propensity (including emotions) are virtually lacking. C-**ḡṛě** ‘clean’, which is listed under physical property, can be counted here since it also expresses ‘stingy’, possibly as an extension of ‘clean’, as well as some other adjectives which can be used with reference to human behaviour, notably C-**ḡpərôt** ‘good’ and C-**ḡkítak** ‘bad’. Generally,

however, concepts in this field are described rather than expressed by a single word. The expressions for ‘happy’ and ‘angry’ involve a verb and the noun **ka** ‘body’:

m-p-ɔpɪrá.t **nɔ-kâ**
 1-C-become_good:COMPL on-body
 I am happy (lit.: I am good on body)

k-k-úá **kâ**
 3-C-rise:INCOMPL body
 s/he is angry (lit.: s/he rises as to the body)

Some concepts in this field are expressed with C-**ɔnô** ‘have’ (or a form of C-**ɔnâ** ‘bring, have’) and a noun:

ɲ-kw-ɔnó **ɲɔɾɛ**
 2-C-have laziness
 you are lazy

ɔ-lótɪ **p-ɔnó** **tukɔŋkôn**
 PERS-Lótɪ C-have trouble_making
 Lótɪ is a troublemaker

Being stingy can be expressed with the adjective C-**ɔɾɛ**, but also with ‘have’ and the noun **nɔɾɛ** ‘stinginess’:

ɔ-nɛnní **p-ɔnó** **nɔɾɛ**
 PERS-Nenni C-have stinginess
 Nenni is stingy

The same construction is also used for the expression of properties in other semantic fields, for example:

ɲ-kw-ɔnó **míŋâ**
 2-C-have speed
 you are fast

10.4. Numerals and quantifiers

Some numerals consist of a concord and a stem, others have an invariable form. Some invariable numerals are nouns, because they co-occur with modifiers which agree with them; other invariable forms are more difficult to assign to a word class since they do not combine with modifiers. Certain numerals have an adjectival and as well as an invariable form.

10.4.1. Numerals

The numerals ‘one’ up to ‘ten’ have one or more adjectival forms. ‘five’, ‘eight’, ‘nine’ and ‘ten’ also occur as invariable elements. The numerals 1-10 are tonally represented below as in an isolated noun phrase, preceded by an all-low noun, as in **papʊ pulukkû** ‘one thing’, etc.

Table 44 Numerals

	<i>Adjectival numeral</i>	<i>Invariable numeral</i>
one	C- ulukkô	
two	C- ɛɾá	
three	C- ɛɾapóruk	
four	C- ɔcɛɾɪn	
five	C- úkúlúk , C- ukulúk	ukulúk
six	C- ɛɾâkkoruk , C- ɛɾárəporuk	
seven	C- êɾɛ -C- ɛɾapóruk , C- êɾɛɾapóruk , C- ɔcɛɾa -C- ɛɾapóruk	
eight	C- amórəmər	mɔrəmər
nine	C- ɔkullácɛɾɪn , C- ókullácɛɾɪn	ɔkullácɛɾɪn
ten	C- áttol	attol

Schadeberg (1981b, p. 154) mentions “one hand” as the proto-Talodi expression for ‘five’. He reconstructs the proto-Talodi nouns ***tsugwin** / ***ɲugwin** ‘hand / hands’ and the numeral *-**VlIVg** ‘one’, in which V stands for “some vowel”. The Lumun expression for ‘one hand’ is **ɔkun wulukkû**. It can be seen that the invariable **ukulúk** ‘five’, like the items for ‘five’ in other Talodi languages, finds its origin in “one hand”. The adjectives C-**úkúlúk** and C-**ukulúk** can be

assumed to have developed from C-**á** + **ukulúk** (C-**úkúlúk**), and from the connexive C-**ɔ** + **ukulúk** (C-**ukulúk**).

The word for ‘three’ C-**əɽapóruk** and the words for ‘six’, C-**əɽâ-kkuruk** and C-**əɽârəporuk**, seem to be related, but it is not clear how exactly. The full form C-**éɽɛ**-C-**əɽapóruk** ‘seven’, which has a repeated concord, and its shortened form C-**éɽɛəɽapóruk** are built up as C-two-two-(C-)three. An alternative way of expressing ‘seven’ has a repeated concord as well: C-**ɔcɔɽa**-C-**əɽapóruk** (C-four-C-three).

‘Four’ C-**ɔcɔɽɪn** and ‘eight’ **mɔrəmɔr**, C-**amóɽəmɔr** seem related through a (unattested) plural noun from the **c-/m-** class pair, which occurs as a reduplicated form in ‘eight’. C-**ɔcɔɽɪn** ‘four’ seems to contain the connexive C-**ɔ** preceding this C-initial noun. The adjectival form of ‘eight’ C-**amóɽəmɔr** contains the Present of ‘be’ C-**á**. C-**ɔkullácɔɽɪn** ‘nine’ is a compound of ‘five’ and ‘four’.

Four, five, eight and nine find their origins in nouns, but whether or not the invariable variants of five, eight and nine must synchronically be regarded as nouns is less clear, since no examples where they induce concord on a modifier (or verb) were found.

Invariable **attul** ‘ten’ functions as a noun, since ‘twenty’ can be expressed as **attul w-ɛɽá** (lit.: two tens). Its adjectival form, with initial high tone, appears to contain C-**á**.

The adjectival and the invariable form do not communicate precisely the same. The adjectival form is used in case of an exact (i.e. precisely counted) number of items. The invariable form does not suggest meticulous counting, and though it is likely to be accurate (the numbers are small) one more or one less would not be impossible:

ɭɛcɔk mɔrəmɔr	‘(ca.) eight goats’
ɭɛcɔk lámóɽəmɔr	‘eight goats’
ɭɛcɔk ɭɔkát mɔrəmɔr	‘there were (ca.) eight goats’
ɭɛcɔk ɭɔkát lámóɽəmɔr	‘there were (precisely) eight goats’

The numerals eleven up to nineteen are expressed as additions to ten:

attul (C-áttul) ana ikkén cúlúkkû	‘eleven’
attul (C-áttul) ana ikkén keṛá	‘twelve’
attul (C-áttul) ana ikkén kəṛapəruk	‘thirteen’
etc.	

My consultant (JS) associated the word **ikkên** with **cýt/kýt** ‘eye/eyes’, in this context referring to coins. If **ikkên** is indeed based on ‘eye/eyes’, these expressions probably developed only with the emergence of trade involving money.

The word for ‘twenty’, **arriál**, is a noun. It comes from Arabic *riyal* — today the name of the currency of, amongst others, Saudi Arabia— which is itself based on the old Spanish currency *real*. ‘Forty’ is expressed as **arriál w-eṛá** (lit.: two twenties).

The Lumun counting system beyond twenty is based on twenties and an additional **áləkaɪrê** ‘ten’ (not **attul** or C-áttul). The origin of **áləkaɪrê** is unknown.

arriál ana áləkaɪrê	‘thirty’ (twenty and ten)
arriál weṛá	‘forty’ (two twenties)
arriál weṛá ana áləkaɪrê	‘fifty’ (two twenties and ten)
arriál wəṛapəruk	‘sixty’ (three twenties), etc.

kaṭər ‘road’ (plural: **aṭər** ‘roads’) is used for ‘hundred’, but sometimes also for ‘thousand’.

The format for abstract counting and for counting on the fingers is PRO-C-numeral ‘it is one’, ‘they are two’, etc.. Counting on the fingers starts with the digital finger of the right hand touching the little finger of the left hand and moving from there to the thumb (1 to 5), and is continued with the digital finger of the left hand moving from the little finger of the right hand to the thumb (6-10). ‘1’ is preceded by pronominal **c-** and concord **c-**, the other numbers by pronominal **m-** and concord **m-**, referring to **caún/maún** ‘finger/fingers’. For the numbers up to 19 the adjectival form is used:

ccúlukkú '1', mmêṛá '2', mməṛapəruk '3', mmóɔɔɔɔ '4',
mmúkulúk '5', mməṛâkkorok, mməṛâraporok '6',
mmêṛéməṛapəruk, mmêṛéṛapəruk, mmóɔɔɔaməṛapəruk '7',
mmáməɔɔmər '8', mmókulláɔɔɔɔ '9', mmáttul '10', mmáttul ana
ikkén cúlúkkú '11', mmáttul ana ikkén keṛá '12', ..., arriâl '20',
etc.

Pronominal reference changes when items are counted that are referred to with nouns from other noun classes. In the first clause of the example below, 'three' is a numeral modifier of the noun **ɲokul** 'children'. In the second and third clause, the instances of 'three' consist of pronominal **ɲ-** (+ H-tone), referring to **ɲokul** 'children', and the concord **ɲ**.

k-kw-ónu **ɲokul** **ɲ-əṛapóruk**
3-C-have children C-three

ɲ-əṛapóruk **tulluk-î**
PRO.C-three only-Q

ij **ɲ-əṛapóruk** **tullúk**
yes PRO.C-three only

s/he has three children. only three? yes, only three

Adjectival numerals are generally used without the restrictor:

ṭáɽú **ṭ-ónú** **aṭər** **w-əṛapóruk** **ɪ-íttí~íttík**
Ṭaɽu C-have roads C-three RES-(C-)PLR~big

Ṭaɽu has three big roads

ɛṭ-in **mátták** **m-áttul**
give:IMP-O1 bowls C-ten

give me ten bowls

It is, however, possible to use the restrictor with an adjectival numeral. Reference is then made to a specific group consisting of that number of items:

εῖ-ἰν	μάττακ	ἰ-μ-άττολ
give:IMP-O1	calabashes(k.o.)	RES-C-ten

give me the ten bowls, give me the group of ten bowls (lit.: give me the bowls which are ten)

The restrictor cannot be combined with a nominal adjective:

εῖ-ἰν	μάττακ	αττολ
give:IMP-O1	calabashes(k.o.)	ten

give me (ca.) ten bowls

*εῖ-ἰν	μάττακ	ἰ-άττολ
give:IMP-O1	calabashes(k.o.)	RES-ten

Adjectival and invariable numerals can both be used predicatively with a copular verb ('be' or 'become'). For Present TAM the form of 'be' is C-**αῖκ**, not only for adjectival numerals but also for the invariable numerals. Thus, the invariable numerals behave here like adjectives instead of like nouns (in case of nominal behaviour not C-**αῖκ** but the copula C-**ά** would be used).

μάττακ	μ-α.ῖκ	μ-άττολ
calabashes(k.o.)	C-be:PR	C-ten

there are ten bowls

μάττακ	μ-α.ῖκ	αττολ
calabashes(k.o.)	C-be:PR	ten

there are (ca.) ten bowls

A specific group of a number of items, with the number expressed by a nominal numeral, can be referred to through a construction with C-**αῖκ**, preceded by the restrictor:

εῖ-ἰν	μάττακ	ἰ-μ-α.ῖκ	αττολ
give:IMP-O1	calabashes(k.o.)	C-be:PR	ten

give me the (ca.) ten bowls, give me the group of (ca.) ten bowls

Numerals, like adjectives, can be used as secondary predication (cf. 10.1). In the next example the numeral modifies both the object

noun (**mên**) and the verbal complex. The example has a concordial numeral, but an invariable numeral would be possible as well:

ɔ-kukkó p-á.ík p-á.cót mên nɔ-kwəɾɛ m-ɔcɔɾɪn
PERS-Kukku C-be:PR C-string_at:INCOMPL palm_fruits on-pointed_stick C-four

Kukku is stringing four palm fruits on a stick

Plural numbers generally modify a plural noun, but not when clock time is expressed:

cɪŋkɪ c-əɾapóɾok
sun C-three

it's three o'clock (lit.: the sun is three)

Numerals can also be used independently. An example follows here. The concord **k** agrees with **kaun** 'bee, honeycomb'.

n-ánt-ɔrrɛn-in n-tan k-ulukkû
2A-can:DEPINCOMPL-throw_for:DEPINCOMPL-O1 with-up_on:ABS C-one

"please throw to me one (honeycomb) for me!" (App. IV, 87)

10.4.2. **at-C-ut**, **át-C-út** and numeral

The associative marker **attut** (or **áttút**) can be combined with the plural suffix **-ɲɔn** (cf. chapter 6.8), but also with a numeral. Attachment of a numeral shows that **attut/áttút** involves nominal agreement and can (probably) be analysed as **at-C-ut/át-C-út**. The associative marker is combined with a numeral in the following way:

at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL, át-C-út-C-NUMERAL

or shortened:

at-C-NUMERAL, át-C-NUMERAL

t assimilates largely regularly to the following concord, and the resulting (underlyingly) geminated consonants are —as is regular— pronounced without length. When preceded by an all-low noun,

there are two tonal alternatives: **at-C-ut** and **át-C-út**, in the latter case there is tone bridge unto the high tone on the numeral:

ɲukul aɲɲɔɲ-ɲɛɾá, ɲukul áɲɲóɲ-ɲɛɾá	‘both children’
ɲukul aɲɲɔɲ-ɲɛɾapóɾok, áɲɲóɲ-ɲɛɾápóɾok	‘all three’
ɲukul aɲɲɔɲ-ɲɔ́ɔɾɪn, áɲɲóɲ-ɲɔ́ɔɾɪn	‘all four’
ɲukul aɲɲɔɲ-ɲukulúk, áɲɲóɲ-ɲúkúlúk	‘all five’
etc.	

Some examples with different concords follow here, each time the shortened form is given as well. In isolation **kamár** ‘trees (sp.)’ and **lɔ́ɾək** ‘ropes’ have a final high tone, **ɲóɲ** ‘digging tools (k.o.)’ a final falling tone.

kamar ák-k-úk-k-ɛɾá	‘both <i>pamar</i> -trees’
kamar ák-k-ɛɾá	‘both <i>pamar</i> -trees’

lɔ́ɾək ál-l-úl-l-úkúlúk	‘all five ropes’
lɔ́ɾək ál-l-úkúlúk	‘all five ropes’

ɲóɲ án-n-ón-n-ɔ́ɔɾɪn	‘all four <i>tuun</i> -digging tools’
ɲóɲ án-n-ɔ́ɔɾɪn	‘all four <i>tuun</i> -digging tools’

With all concords, **at-C-ut** gives the expected outcome, except with the concord **w**. A sequence **t-w** is expected to be realized as **r** ([r]), but **at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL** is realized as **a-or-NUMERAL**, instead of expected ***ar-or-NUMERAL**. The shortened form **at-C-NUMERAL** can, as expected, be realized as **ar-NUMERAL** before, but also as **a-u-NUMERAL**:

aɾɔɔ á-úr-ɛɾá ‘both things’	< át-w-út-w-ɛɾá	(not expected)
aɾɔɔ ár-ɛɾá ‘both things’	< át-w-ɛɾá	(expected)
aɾɔɔ á-ú-ɛɾá ‘both things’	< át-w-ɛɾá	(not expected)

aɾɔɔ a-or-ɛɾapóɾok ‘all three things’	< a-or-ɛɾapóɾok	(not expected)
aɾɔɔ ar-ɛɾapóɾok ‘all three things’	< ar-ɛɾapóɾok	(expected)
aɾɔɔ a-u-ɛɾapóɾok ‘all three things’	< a-u-ɛɾapóɾok	(not expected)

This raises some doubt whether the underlying form should indeed be analysed as **at-C-ut**, and not rather as **a-C-C-ut**. I rejected this analysis because there is only one possible other case of double concord in the language, namely in the variant **a-C-C-** of the subject focus marker **akk-** (see 19.1), and which may have developed from **ak-C-** rather than from double concord.

Use and semantics

at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL (**át-C-út-C-NUMERAL**) can modify a preceding plural (pro) noun. In such cases it expresses ‘all’ (and in case of two: ‘both’). The notion of ‘added item’ is not so clear here, but there is no doubt that the same formative as used in comitative constructions is involved, as shown further below.

nokul	áp-n-úp-n-érá	(< át-n-út-n-érá)
children	ASS-C-ASS-C-two	
both children (all two children)		

o-kín	át-t-út-t-érá
PERS-3A	ASS-C-ASS-C-two
both of them	

at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL (**át-C-út-C-NUMERAL**) does not convey information about togetherness. In the example below, the persons that were found may have been found together, but also in different places:

m-p-ɪt.é	kín	át-t-út-t-érá
1-C-find:COMPL	O3A	ASS-C-ASS-C-two
I found both of them (in the same place or in different places)		

at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL, **át-C-út-C-NUMERAL** can be used in a comitative construction comparable to the one described in chapter 6.7. In that construction the associative marker **attut** (or **áttút**) expresses that one person is added in order to get the final group, **attunôn** (or **áttúnôn**) that more persons are added. In constructions with **at-C-ut-C-NUMERAL** (**át-C-út-C-NUMERAL**) the numeral does not express the

number of added persons, the number of people of which the group finally consists. Examples:

ɔpakkoʔ.ɛ tʉan ɔn-áʔ-t-éʔá
 return:IMP home 2A-ASS-C-two

go back home with her! (i.e. being two persons in total: you (Ruth) and Orpah) (Ruth 1:15)

kəʀənnɔ-n ɪr-ɛʃ ɪr-áʔ-t-éʔá
 let:IMP-O1 12-go:DEPINCOMPL 12-ASS-C-two

let me go with you! (i.e. being two persons in total: I (Ruth) and you (Naomi)) (Ruth 1:16)

ana ɔ-lót p-ɔɪ.kaʔɛ ɔ-kín áʔ-t-éʔá
 and PERS-Lot C-go:PST PERS-3A ASS-C-two

and Lot went with him (Genesis 12:4)

10.4.3. Ordinal numbers

There is no morphological process to derive ordinal numbers from cardinal numbers. ‘First’ as an adjective can be expressed in more than one way. The first two expressions below are made up of the connexive C-ɔ, a preposition (**nɔ-** ‘on, at’, **tɔ-** ‘up on, up at’) and a noun. The third expression suggests the same make-up but a noun ***môn** is not attested.

C-ɔ-rɔ-kít ‘first’ lit.: ‘of up on eyes’
C-ɔ-nɔ-tʃn ‘first’ lit.: ‘of on mouth’
C-ɔ-nɔ-môn ‘first’ lit.: ‘of on ?’

All three expressions can be collocated with **caʔi** ‘time, day’:

caʔi cónókít, caʔi cónótʃn, caʔi cónómôn ‘the first time, the first day’

For translating ordinals higher than one, the numerals listed above can be used in different constructions. The first example, which has the restrictor preceding the numeral, presents a translation of ‘the

second day’, the second, which has the numeral in extraposition, of ‘April’, i.e. ‘the fourth month’.

a-l-óka.kat **maɾɪ** **ɪ-m-εɾá**
 CONJ-PRO-be:DEPPRFV times RES-C-two

and it was the second day (lit.: and it (**lɔn** ‘words, matters’) was days which were two) (Genesis 1:8)

ámmá **ánók** **w-aa.t** **w-óćóɾín ...**
 if moons C-come:COMPL C-four

when the moons/months have reached four (i.e. in April)

10.4.4. Quantifiers

Most quantifiers are adjectives, but some have an invariable form. The adjectival quantifiers, mentioned also in section 10.2.1, are repeated here:

C-ɔppôt ‘many’
C-ərɪk ‘many, a lot of’
C-ɔttê / C-ɔttê ‘few, a little’
C-ərúk ‘only, but’
C-ullúk ‘only, just’
C-arît ‘half, half full’

The following quantifiers have an invariable form (a form which is reminiscent of the shape of certain adverbs, starting with a vowel and a geminate).

appɪk ‘all, whole’
attel ‘many’

Two examples follow with **appɪk** ‘all, whole’:

ɲokul **appɪk** **ɲ-εô.t**
 children all C-go:COMPL

all children have left

a-kuṭu	ɔll.at	n-nɔ	ká	appik
CONJ-skin	run:DEPPRFV	with-on	body	all

and the whole skin came off from the body / and the skin came off from the whole body

A special case are the items **pəllék/ṭəllék** ‘alone, different’ (also **pərék/ṭərék**). They function as adjectives, stating a quality of the head noun, but are morphologically different from adjectives, since their only attested forms are **pəllék** and **ṭəllék**. Initial **p** and **ṭ** do not agree with the noun class of the head noun, as can be seen in the examples below, but agree with its singular or plural reference:

kálam	k-aŋ	k-a.ɪk	p-əllék
pen	C-POSS2	C-be:PR	C-alone

your pen is different

álam	w-aŋ	w-a.ɪk	ṭ-əllék
pens	C-POSS2	C-be:PR	C-alone

your pens are different

pəllék and **ṭəllék** could, on the basis of their morphology, be nouns from the **p**- and **ṭ**- noun classes in singular-plural opposition. They do not, however, function like nouns. **C-aík** ‘be’, as in the examples above, cannot be used in equations of nouns. Moreover, **pəllék** and **ṭəllék** never function as the subject or object argument of a verb. All in all, **pəllék** and **ṭəllék** resemble adjectives more than nouns. Note that initial **p**- and **ṭ**- have a parallel in the **p**-concord of singular (pro)nouns with the persona prefix **ɔ**- and the **ṭ**-concord of nouns that are marked with the associative plural marker **-ŋɔn** (see 5.2 and 5.3).

Notes on the use of some quantifiers

C-ullúk ‘only, just’

C-ullúk ‘only, just’ has an invariable adverbial counterpart with initial **t**: **tullúk** ‘only, just’. An example with **tullúk** ‘only, just’ is given in 17.1.4. An example with the adjective **C-ullúk** follows here:

compóran **c-ulluk** **ákk-ɔká.t** **l.ccífk** **k-ɔ-mǎn**
 monkey c-only FOC-be:COMPL near c-of-house

the monkey only was the one who was near the house (i.e.: it was only the monkey who was near the house)

C-ərúk ‘only, just’

Like **C-ullúk**, **C-ərúk** has an invariable adverbial counterpart with initial **t**: **tərúk** ‘only, just’. The adverb is typically used together with the conjunction word **ana** ‘and’, forming the contrasting conjunction word **anarrúk** ‘but’. Adjectival **C-ərúk** is typically used in clauses introduced by **ana** ‘and’. It conveys the same notion of contrast, but follows the noun that it modifies. Note in the second example below that the verb in the clause introduced by **ana** is a dependent perfective, however, a (non-dependent) past—which is generally much more common in clauses introduced by **ana**—would be possible here as well. Alternatively, instead of **ana** conjunctive **ǎ** could be used; the verb will then be a dependent perfective.

ana **ól** **w-ərúk** **w-ella.káte** **pəɾɪn**
 and people c-only c-be_absent:PST finally

... but people were only completely absent (i.e. nobody was there)

k-kw-ɔtj.áte **turumpíl** **n-tán** **a-t-ɔnek.at** **áɾok**
 3-C-send:PST car with-up_on:ABS CONJ-PRO-take:DEPPRFV bags

ana **ól** **w-ərúk** **ɔɲkat** **n-tacók**
 and people c-only go:DEPPRFV with-legs

s/he sent the car there and it took their bags, but the people (themselves) went on foot

10.5. The adjective **C-ərěk** ‘some, other’

C-ərěk ‘some, other’ is used for the expression of an unspecified time, place or person (‘some time’, ‘somewhere’, ‘somebody’)

၁-၇၇	ák-k-áṇwət	kamətə	k-árró	
PERS-1A	FOC-guard:INCOMPL	celebration	C-of.Lumun_people	
akka	a-k-órat	cík	túpót	t-əṛək
that	CONJ-PRO-become_lost	VREF	year	C-some

we are the ones who keep the Lumun celebration so that it does not get lost
some day

m-p-a.ík	p-a.əṣ	nə-karə́n	k-əṛək
1-C-be:PR	C-go:INCOMPL	on-place	C-some

I am going somewhere

līcək	l-a.ṛəkíne	pól	p-əṛək	mīl
goats	C-eat_for:INCOMPL	person	C-some	sorghum

the goats will eat somebody's sorghum

In combination with **papu** ‘thing’, generally shortened to **papəṛək** or **papəṛək**, it expresses an unspecified thing (‘something’) or animal:

paun	p-ānn-əṛəkə	pap.əṛək
rat	C-NEG-eat:DEPCOMPL	something

the rat did not eat anything

C-əṛək is a fixed part of the opening clause of many stories ‘once upon a time ...’ or ‘one day ...’. Following this opening clause, the character(s) introduced in the same sentence are not modified with **C-əṛək**:

caṛi	c-əṛək	c-əká.t	cík	a-puṭún	p-aṭṭ-íət
time	C-some	C-be:COMPL	VREF	CONJ-marten(?)	C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL
ṇərrón	á-ṇ-ṇ-á.ík	áppuṭa ⁵⁹		nóṛá	w-ṣ-pira
squirrel	CONJ-PRO-C-be:PR	(CONJ-PRO-)play:DEPINCOMPL		on_top	C-of-tree

one day a marten(?)⁶⁰ found a squirrel playing in the tree top

⁵⁹ underlyingly the verb is: **a-ṇ-ṇ-á-ík a-ṇ-áppuṭa**

⁶⁰ Described as a furry animal with a hole in the ground. It can be grey or brown and sometimes has white on its back.

As mentioned by Stirtz (2012) C-**əṛĕk** ‘some, other’ can be used for the introduction of a new character, as in the next example:

caṛi **c-én** **a-kəllán** **k-əṛĕk** **k-əká.t** **cík**
 day C-DEM CONJ-old_woman C-some C-be:COMPL VREF
a-k-ókəṭaccé-k **n.ti** **i-əṛĕn**
 CONJ-PRO-watch:DEPINCOMPL-O3 from in-firewood

that day, some old woman was watching him while she was collecting firewood (fr. written story)

C-**əṛĕk** cannot be preceded by the restrictor (í-). It can, however, be used independently, as in the earlier given example, which is repeated here. The high-toned **a** preceding (w)**əṛĕk** (agreeing with **ul** ‘persons’) is probably the same pronominal base as found in independent possessors (see 7.3.7), I have therefore given it the same gloss:

á-əṛĕk **w-a.fk** **kəren** **i-ókullácəṛm**
 PROBS-(C-)some C-be:PR where RES-(C-)nine

where are the other nine? (Luke 17:17)

In the example below, C-**əṛĕk** functions independently without this **a**. In the chapter on possessor pronouns a comparable example was given of an independent possessor without the pronominal base (‘look at my feet and yours’).

arriṛṛ.ə **wək** **w-əṛĕk** **cic-cénəkət** **ána** **w-əṛĕk** **cic-cénəkət**
 make_cross:IMP leg C-some LOC-there_not_far and C-some LOC-there_not_far
 put one foot just there and the other one just there! (fr. written story)

As shown in the previous example C-**əṛĕk** ... C-**əṛĕk** expresses ‘one ..., the other ...’, or ‘some ..., other ...’. Another example:

ul **w-əṛĕk** **w-əṇó** **ə-purukó-n** **ṭ-əppót**
 people C-some C-have PERS-friend-PL C-many
á-əṛĕk **w-əṇó** **ə-purukó-n** **ṭ-əttê**
 PROBS-(C-)some C-have PERS-friend-PL C-little
 some people have many friends, others have few friends

10.6. Some remarks on syntax

Adjectives with the restrictor (i.e. adjectives as attributive modifiers) typically come after other modifiers in the noun phrase:

[t̪uk	t̪-ín	én-t̪-í	í-t̪-ókitak] _{NP}	t-əkəɔ.t	ókul
dog	C-POSS1	DEM-C-NEARSP	RES-C-bad	C-bite:COMPL	child

this bad dog of mine has bitten a child

There can be more than one attributive adjective with restrictor in the noun phrase. No conjunction is used between them:

[takəɔk	í-t̪-ótté	í-t̪-óɾe] _{NP}	t̪-aá.t
chicken	RES-C-small	RES-C-red	C-come:COMPL

the little red hen has come

Attributive adjectives can occur outside the noun phrase, as in the first example below, where **ɪnârran** ‘young’ comes after the verbal predicate, in apposition to **jukul** ‘children’. In the second example it is positioned within the noun phrase. In both cases, the invariable quantifier **appik** ‘all’ is positioned outside the noun phrase.

jukul	j-ənó	ittí	j-á.ɲotta	í-j-ârran	appik
children	C-have	that	PRO.C-be_killed.PLUR:INCOMPL	RES-C-young	all

all little children must be killed (Matthew 2:16)

jukul	í-j-árrán	j-ónó	ittí	j-á.ɲotta	áppik
chickens	RES-C-young	C-have	that	PRO.C-be_killed.PLUR:INCOMPL	all

the little children must all be killed

There is a difference in informational value between the sentences. The first states the properties of the children that must be killed (it concerns small children and it concerns all of them), the second refers to an already identified group of children.

Another example is the following. In the text, ‘male’ lacks the restrictor, but it could also be present:

a-áppə ákkakat w-ómora⁶¹ ana i-áari n-əṭən
 CONJ-Tocho come:DEPPRFV C-male.PL and RES-female.PL with-baskets(k.o.)
 and the Tocho, male and female, came with baskets (fr. written story)

An earlier mentioned example with a numeral placed outside of the noun phrase is the following:

á-əṭek w-a.ík kəren i-ʊkollácəɾɪn
 PROBS-(C-)other C-be:PR where RES-(C-)nine
 where are the other nine? (Luke 17:17)

⁶¹ In the written text, the concord is absent, but this is because it is not audible: after t (realized as r) w is regularly deleted.

11. Relative clauses

Relative clauses are clauses that function as modifiers of a noun or pronoun in the matrix clause. Lumun has subject and non-subject relative clauses, and different constructions for a restrictive and a non-restrictive relative clause. Restrictive relative clauses restrict the reference of their head to a subgroup with certain properties; non-restrictive relative clauses just provide additional information.

Relative clauses contain a concord that agrees with the (pro)noun in the matrix clause that they modify. This (pro)noun from the matrix clause functions as subject in a subject relative clause and as a something other than subject in a non-subject relative clause. A locative relative clause uses the (fixed) locative relative **ná** ‘where’.

Restrictive relative clauses, whether subject, non-subject or locative relative clauses have the restrictor (**í**-, see chapter 9), non-restrictive relative clauses lack the restrictor.

A special use of non-restrictive non-subject relative clauses is in cleft constructions. Such constructions are discussed in 11.2.4.

11.1. Subject relative clauses

A subject relative clause contains a non-dependent verb. The concord on the verb agrees with the head in the matrix clause. In a restrictive subject relative clause the concord is preceded by the restrictor **í**:-

C-verb (non-restrictive)

I-C-verb (restrictive)

The verb in a subject relative construction can be an Incomplete, a Complete, the Present of ‘be’, the copula **C-á** or a complex verb starting with an auxiliary in non-dependent TAM. One non-dependent TAM, the Past, is not used in subject relative clauses. The Past, like its dependent counterpart the Dependent Perfective, is a narrative TAM that must be preceded in the discourse by another verb, if only a verb that provides “background” information about a

state or situation. This is not compatible with use in a relative clause. A verb in a relative clause typically provides background information itself, either as additional information or in order to restrict the reference of its head.

11.1.1. Restrictive subject relative clauses

Restrictive subject relative clauses typically function as attributive modifiers. Examples follow here:

pul i-p-aẽ	‘the person who will go’
pul i-p-əkát cənέ	‘the person who was here’
pul i-p-aṭ-əṭəkō	‘the person who will come and eat it’

Restrictive subject relative clauses can modify (pro)nouns from the matrix clause in different syntactic functions. In the first example below **əkīn** ‘they’ is modified; in the second **əkakkā** ‘Kakka’; in the third a **maṭi** ‘days’.

ámmá	ó-kín	í-t-á.pókō	t-əppóṭ.ε	ṇacək	i-cá ...
if	PERS-3A	RES-C-be_beaten:INCOMPL	C-put_on:COMPL	amounts_of_mud	in-head
as soon as those who are beaten have put mud on their heads ... (fr. written story)					

ṇ-kw-ɪṭ.έ	ó-kakká⁶²	í-p-ére	íṇkəlísɪ
2-C-find:COMPL	PERS-Kakka	RES-C-speak:INCOMPL	English
did you meet the Kakka who speaks English?			

ó-kukkó	p-aa.t	maṭi	m-εṭa	i-m-ε̃.t
PERS-Kukku	C-come:COMPL	days	C-two	RES-C-go:COMPL
Kukku arrived two days ago (two days which have gone)				

The next is an example with the copula C-á ‘be’:

⁶² When the first born child is a girl she is called Kakka. There are therefore many people called Kakka.

pul **ɪ-p-a** **párɛʔan**
 person RES-C-COP rich_person

a person who is a rich

Syntactic position

In case of more attributive modifiers, a relative clause comes last:

nokul **ɛn-n-ɪ** **ɪ-n-árrán** **í-n-á.ík** **n-áppuʔa**
 children DEM-C-NEARSP RES-C-young RES-C-be:PR C-play:INCOMPL

these small children who are playing

A restrictive subject relative clause can also be placed outside the noun phrase, after the predicate. This is typically done when the relative clause is rather long. In the next example it happens twice: the first relative clause is a modifier of the subject of the matrix clause **nɪlɪ** ‘leaders’, the second of **ul** ‘people’, which functions as object in the first relative clause. Postposition of the relative clauses makes the sentence easier to follow:

a-nɪlɪ **n-ʒ-móʔtʔú** **ɪat** **kín**
 CONJ-leaders C-of-Arabs find:DEPPRFV o3A

[í-n-álɪkɪnɛ **úl** **cɪk** **ɪ-aʔɛr]**
 RES-C-stop:INCOMPL people VREF in-roads

[ɪ-úra **ʒkúʔɛt** **tórrô]**
 RES-(C)-escape:INCOMPL move_up:DEPINCOMPL Lumun_country

and the Arab leaders who stopped the people in the roads who were escaping going up to Tórrô (Lumun homeland) found them (fr. written description)

Independent use of the restrictive relative construction

Like adjectives with the restrictor, and like the anaphoric demonstrative (C-**en**) with the restrictor, a verb phrase with the restrictor can function independently. In the example below, the relative clause **ɪpɛlɪkkákɛt** ‘who was released’ modifies the unexpressed object **pul** ‘the person’ of the matrix clause

akwókarənnə ‘while s/he let’. The object of the matrix clause is understood from the preceding clause.

k-kw-é-ɛlɪkk.áɛ pól ém-p-í a-kw-ókarənnə ɪ-p-ɛlɪkkákə.t
 3-C-IRR-release:PST person DEM-C-NEARSP CONJ-3-let:DEPINCOMPL RES-C-be_released:COMPL

s/he should have released this person and not the one who was released (i.e. and leave the one who was released)

11.1.2. Non-restrictive subject relative clauses

A non-restrictive subject relative clause does not restrict the reference of its head but provides additional information about it. It functions as a predicative modifier:

k-kw-ócoróɛ ɪ-pól p-óccó.t kəɾan ɪttɪ ɔ-tuttô
 3-C-come_across:COMPL in-person C-receive:COMPL name that PERS-Tuttu

s/he came across a person called Tuttu

Compare also the following examples, in which the object noun from the matrix clause is modified. The first has a non-restrictive subject relative clause, the second a restrictive:

m-p-ɔcumə.t márt m-untáɛ nɔ-capó
 1-C-take.PLR:COMPL beans C-be_poured_on:COMPL on-ground

I have picked up some beans, which had fallen on the ground

m-p-ɔcumə.t márt ɪ-m-untáɛ nɔ-capó
 1-C-take.PLR:COMPL beans RES-C-be_poured_on:COMPL on-ground

I have picked up the beans that had fallen on the ground

In the following example the presence of a preceding main verb, the absence of a pronoun (clitic) on the verb, and the lack of a conjunction word or clitic between the clauses provide the cue that we are dealing with a modifier of the subject pronoun of the matrix clause, and not an additional main clause. The non-restrictive relative clause comes after the full matrix clause:

m-p-aa.t **n-ṭɔ-mɪɾuk** **p-átṭ-ɔŋáẽɔ**
 1-C-come:COMPL with-at-bush C-ITVEN:COMPL-urinate:DEPINCOMPL

I come from the bush, having gone to urinate

11.2. Non-subject relative clauses

Non-subject relative clauses are introduced by the copula **C-á**. The same distinction that is found in subject relative clauses between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clause is found in non-subject relative clauses. In case of a restrictive non-subject relative clause, the restrictor precedes the copula. The concord of **C-á** agrees with the noun in the matrix clause that is modified. **C-á** (which is realized low in context) is followed by a (pro)nominal subject and verb which, depending on the verbal TAM, has or lacks a concord:

C-a SUBJ (C)-*verb* (non-restrictive non-subject relative clause)
I-C-a SUBJ (C)-*verb* (restrictive non-subject relative clause)

The verb in a non-subject relative clause is a Dependent Incompletive, a Completive, the Present of ‘be’, or a complex verb starting with one of these. So, while a subject relative clause takes the non-dependent Incompletive, the non-subject relative clause takes its dependent counterpart. Compare:

pul **i-p-a.ɾəkɔ** **ṭɔɾít**
 person RES-C-eat:INCOMPL food

the person who eats the food

ṭɔɾít **í-ṭ-á** **pól** **ɔɾákɔ**
 food RES-C-COP person eat:DEPINCOMPL

the food which the person eats

Predicates with the same structure as the non-restrictive non-subject relative clause (**C-a** SUBJ (C)-*verb*) will be discussed in 11.2.4.

11.2.1. Morpho-phonology and constructions with personal pronouns

Across a morpheme boundary there is often assimilation between adjacent **a** and **ɔ**, either to **a** or to **ɔ** (see, for example, 2.2.8). After

c-á, however, whether with or without the restrictor, a sequence a-ɔ is generally realized as a diphthong: a remains, ɔ —though to a lesser extent— tends to remain audible as well (first example below). The persona prefix ɔ-, on the other hand, typically coalesces with the vowel of (ɪ-)C-á (second example). An example is further given with non-geminated ŋ after (ɪ-)C-á, which is regularly deleted (third example).

aɾəpu ia ɔcaŋ ɔɾəkɔ̌ ‘things which the lizards(sp.) eat’

aɾəpu ia-kumánɣ ɔɾəkɔ̌ (< **ia ɔkumánɣ**) ‘things which Kumanɣ eats’

aɾəpu ia ŋərrɔŋ ɔɾəkɔ̌ ‘things which the squirrel eats’

A singular personal pronoun follows (ɪ-)C-á in its clitic form, a plural personal pronoun either in its clitic or its full form. The clitic form of the 3PL pronoun is not used in this environment. Unlike the initial ɔ of a common noun, the persona prefix of the full personal pronouns coalesces with the a of (ɪ-)C-á to short a. For this reason I write the relative marker and the full plural pronouns connected (as I do in case of the 2SG clitic).

The table below presents the paradigm of personal pronouns as part of a restrictive non-subject relative clause with a Dependent Incomplete verb. The geminated allomorph of the 2PL pronoun clitic (**nn-** ‘you’) is used before the vowel-initial verb in this environment. Some length of the nasal is indeed audible here (and mentally experienced by the speakers), disambiguating the 2PL form from the 1SG form.

Table 45 Restrictive non-subject relative clauses with personal pronoun and Dependent Incomplete

	<i>with full pronoun</i>	<i>with clitic pronoun</i>
things which I eat		aɾəpu ia n-ɔɾəkɔ̌
things which you eat		aɾəpu iaɾəkɔ̌ (ia ŋ-ɔɾəkɔ̌ > ia ɔɾəkɔ̌ > iaɾəkɔ̌)
things which s/he eats		aɾəpu ia kw-ɔɾəkɔ̌

things which we (12) eat	arəpu iarit ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟrɪt)	arəpu ia ir-ɟəkəʃ
things which we (1A) eat	arəpu ianin ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟnɪn)	arəpu ia in-ɟəkəʃ
things which we (12A) eat	arəpu iarun ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟrʊn) arəpu iarɔn ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟrɔn)	arəpu ia un-ɟəkəʃ
things which you (PL) eat	arəpu ianɔn ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟnɔn)	arəpu ia-nn-ɟəkəʃ
things which they eat	arəpu iakín ɟəkəʃ (< ia ɟkɪn)	

The modified noun from the matrix clause can have different syntactic functions in a non-subject relative clause; this function is not related to its syntactic function in the matrix clause. Examples of different syntactic functions in restrictive and non-restrictive non-subject relative clauses (as well as in the matrix clause) follow here.

11.2.2. Restrictive non-subject relative clauses

The modified noun from the matrix clause can be object in the relative clause. Two examples follow here. In the first, **lon** ‘words’ functions as object in the relative clause, in the second, **urrêt** ‘lines’.

m-p-ellá.t	lɔn	nə-ɕikɨt	ɪ-l-a	n-əkúccet	caɾɪ	c-ên
1-C-not have:COMPL	words	on-heart	RES-C-COP	1-prepare:DEPINCOMPL	day	C-DEM

I lacked matters in my heart that I do that day (i.e. I did not plan anything that day)

... á-kw-ʒt-ómmɔ	ɲaak	á-kw-ʒtʃt
... SUBJ-3-IT:DEPINCOMPL-take:DEPINCOMPL	oil	SUBJ-3-rub at:DEPINCOMPL

í-úrrét	ên-n-ərik	ɪ-a	k-kw-ókurro.t	ŋ-kurɪn
in-lines	DEM-C-NEARADDR	RES-(C-)COP	3-C-engrave:COMPL	with-awl

... she must go and take the oil to rub it into those grooves that she has drawn with the awl (App. III, 9-11)

When the relativized noun is part of a prepositional phrase, an absolute preposition is used (see 16.6). Cf. the following pairs of examples. Each time, the second has the non-subject relative clause:

m-p-ɔ̌cɔ́rárɔ̌t.ɛ **ɪ-úl** **én-n-í** **ṭɔ̌ɹí**
 1-C-come_across_each_other:COMPL in-people DEM-C-NEARSP ṭɔ̌ɹí
 I met with these people in ṭɔ̌ɹí

ul **ɪ-a** **m-p-ɔ̌cɔ́rárɔ̌t.ɛ** **tít** **ṭɔ̌ɹí**
 people RES-(C-)COP 1-C-come_across_each_other:COMPL in:ABS ṭɔ̌ɹí
 the people with whom I met in ṭɔ̌ɹí

m-p-ɪcá̌t.ɛ **na-aɾaŋkal** **én-n-í** **méccín**
 1-C-lie_down:COMPL on-bed DEM-C-NEARSP yesterday
 I slept on this bed yesterday

aɾaŋkal **ɪ-a** **m-p-ɪcá̌t.ɛ** **nán** **méccín** **w-ɔ̌cɔ̌ttá.t**
 bed RES-(C-)COP 1-C-lie_down:COMPL on:ABS yesterday C-break:COMPL
 the bed on which I slept yesterday has broken down

In the second example below the relativized noun is part of a comitative construction. The relative construction makes use of the associative marker **á̌ttút**. Compare:

k-kw-ɔ̌ká.t **p-ɔ̌nú** **ɪtti** **k-kw-á̌pə̌rə̌tta**
 3-C-be:COMPL C-have that 3-C-be_beaten_while_running:INCOMPL
ɔ̌-kín **ɔ̌-patt-ɔ̌n**
 PERS-3A PERS-person-PL

she should have been beaten while running together with those people (lit.: she had had to be beaten while running together with those people)

ɔ̌-patt-ɔ̌n **í-t-á** **k-kw-ɔ̌ká.t** **p-ɔ̌nú** **ɪtti**
 PERS-person-PL RES-C-COP 3-C-be:COMPL C-have that
k-kw-á̌pə̌rə̌tta **ɔ̌-kín** **á̌t-t-út** **t-á.ccɪ̌rɔ̌-k** **ŋ.ŋm**
 3-C-be_beaten_while_running:INCOMPL PERS-3A ASS-C-ASS C-laugh:INCOMPL-O3 with:ABS

the people together with whom she should have been beaten while running will laugh at her because of it (because she is pregnant without having undergone the rite of passage of being beaten while running) (fr. written description)

Possessors can also be relativized. In the second example, with relative clause, the possessor pronoun **C-én** ‘their’ expresses the possessor relation. Compare:

l̥ɛk **l-ɔ-ɔl** **l-ɔɾəttâ.t**
 goats C-of-people C-be_eaten:COMPL
 the goats of the people have been eaten

ɔl **ɪ-a** **l̥ɛk** **l-ɛn** **l-ɔɾəttâ.t**
 people RES-(C-)COP goats C-POSS3A C-be_eaten:COMPL
 the people whose goats have been eaten (lit.: the people which their goats have been eaten)

There are other ways to relativize possessor-noun constructions, as illustrated in the following examples. In the first example the possessor relation is expressed through a benefactive verb, in the second through the verb ‘have’. In the first, the semantic possessor is encoded as object of a benefactive verb in the non-subject relative clause; in the second the possessor is modified by a subject relative clause. The verb **l̥ɔɾəttâ** functions as a non-restrictive subject relative clause, adding information about the goats.

ɔl **ɪ-a** **l̥ɛk** **l-ɔɾəttâne.t**
 people RES-(C-)COP goats C-be_eaten_for:COMPL
 people whose goats have been eaten (lit.: people who the goats have been eaten to)

ɔl **ɪ-ɔnu** **l̥ɛk** **l-ɔɾəttâ.t**
 people RES-(C-)have goats C-be_eaten:COMPL
 people whose goats have been eaten (lit.: people who have the goats eaten)

11.2.3. Non-restrictive non-subject relative clauses

The modified noun from the matrix clause can be object in the relative clause. Two examples follow here. In the first, **pul** ‘person’ functions as object in the relative clause, in the second, **măn** ‘house’. In the matrix clause they function as subject and as object. Like in non-restrictive subject relative clauses, the relative clause comes after the matrix clause, but is not another main clause:

pul **p-ɪ.t** **p-a** **tuk** **t-ɔkkwɔt.ê**
 person C-die:COMPL C-COP dog C-kill:COMPL

the man died, killed by a dog (the man died whom the dog killed)

m-p-ɔnô **man** **m-a** **m-p-ɔkerɔ.t** **kátókəlɪ**
 1-C-have house C-COP 1-C-trade:COMPL Kadugli

I have a house, which I bought in Kadugli

Interestingly, in the next example the relative clause has a reason reading, suggesting that the verb **ɔkéréllɔ** ‘bite’ takes a double object: the person bitten (‘I’) as well as the result of the biting (the marks).⁶³

m-p-ɔnô **nepilá** **n-á** **ɔték** **w-ɔkéréllɔ.r-m**⁶⁴
 1-C-have marks C-COP ants(sp.) C-bite:COMPL-O1

I have marks because the ants (sp.) have bitten me

The following sentence also makes use of a non-restrictive non-subject relative clause. **nɔténɛtá** ‘of what’ is the predicate, **na ɲkwɔnô** ‘that you have’ modifies the (plural) noun **nɔtɛ** ‘fear’ from the matrix clause:

nɔtɛ **n-ɔténɛtá** **n-á** **ɲ-kw-ɔnô**
 fear C-of_what C-COP 2-C-have

the fear that you have is for what? (i.e. why are you afraid?)

The construction in the first example below relativizes a possessor phrase (compare the second example below which contains a possessor phrase modifying **tɔrɪt** ‘food’). The concord on C-á is **t**, agreeing with **tɔrɪt** ‘food’. The antecedent, however, is in fact the whole preceding clause ‘the food got spoilt just like that’. The possessor element is subsumed in absolute connexive C-**en**, which actually establishes the reference to the antecedent, while the concord (only) establishes grammatical agreement:

⁶³ The sentence forms a tonal minimal pair with an example given in 11.3, which is interpreted as containing the locative relative **ná**.

⁶⁴ Alternative realization: **wɔkéréllɔrín** (with tone bridge). Both realizations don’t need anything to follow.

tuṛít t-ɔkíták.aṭe nuṭuk t-a-rən t-ɔmma lón l-en
 food C-get_spoilt:PST for_no_reason C-COP.PERS-12A C-not_know:INCOMPL words C-of:ABS
 the food got spoilt just like that, the reasons of which we do not know (lit.:
 ‘the food that got spoiled just like that, which we do not know the words
 of’) (fr. written text)

ɔ-rən t-ɔmma lón l-ɔ-tuṛít í-t-ɔkíták.aṭe nuṭuk
 PERS-12A C-not_know:INCOMPL words C-of-food RES-C-get_spoilt:PST for_no_reason
 we do not know why the food got spoilt just like that (lit.: ‘we do not know
 the words of the food which got spoilt just like that’)

A temporal phrase is relativized in a variant of the standard opening of Lumun stories ‘once upon a time ...’. The variant with relative clause (first example below) lacks the conjunctive particle **á-**. Compare:

caṛi c-əṛək c-ɔká.t cɪk c-a-átəṛəpé ana cɪməntəri ...
 day C-some C-be:COMPL VREF C-COP-rabbit and hedgehog
 once upon a time, the rabbit and the hedgehog ... (more lit.: there was some
 day on which the rabbit and the hedgehog ...) (fr. written story)

caṛi c-əṛək c-ɔká.t cɪk a-átəṛəpé ana cɪməntəri ...
 day C-some C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-rabbit and hedgehog
 once upon a time, the rabbit and the hedgehog ... (more lit.: there was some
 day, and the rabbit and the hedgehog ...)

The following is also an interesting case, relativizing a comitative construction:

m-p-árəṭuk p-a-rən t-a.ík
 1-C-still C-COP.PERS-12A C-be:PR

I am still (staying) with you (for example in answer to the question ‘when will you be going?’, more lit.: ‘I am still being we are’)

11.2.4. Cleft constructions: topicalization of a patient, instrument or comitative constituent

Non-restrictive non-subject relative clauses also function in cleft constructions. This cleft-construction topicalizes the patient of an

action by putting it into subject position, however, unlike a construction with a passive verb, without downplaying the agent of the action. The construction focuses the topic (or theme). The construction can also be applied to constituents with instrument role or in comitative construction. Such constituents are typically grammatically encoded as adjuncts, but now function as subject of the copula. The copula is the main verb, linking the subject with a clausal constituent.

The sentences below are full statements answering the questions ‘what happened to the man’ and ‘what happened to the goat’, respectively. My consultant (JS) translated the Lumun expressions into English with a passive construction. The topicalized argument is part of the core of the sentence, and not in extraposition: ‘C-a SUBJ verb’ is not a grammatical format for a main clause. Moreover there is regular assimilation across the word boundary, which would not be the case if the ‘person’ and the ‘goat’ in the examples below were extraposed. Note also the absence of an object pronoun on the verb ‘kill’ in the first example below. It is not possible for the topicalized argument to be pronominally referenced in the embedded clause.

The verb used in the embedded clause is a Dependent Incompletive, a Completive, the Present of ‘be’, or a complex verb starting with one of these. The examples following here have a Completive verb, the last the Present of ‘be’.

pul	p-a	tuk	t-ɔkkwɔt.ê	[pul ʔβa ðu tɔkʷɔðê]
person	C-COP	dog	C-kill:COMPL	

the man was killed by a dog (lit.: the man is the dog killed)

imɨt	w-a	tuk	t-ɔkkwɔt.ê	[imir a ðu tɔkʷɔðê]
goat	C-COP	dog	C-kill:COMPL	

the goat was killed by a dog (lit.: the goat is the dog killed)

The following sentence could be a reply to someone who says that he likes to have a certain dog. The answer, which makes use of the patient-topicalizing cleft, communicates that the dog cannot be given away because Lalo already gave it to somebody else.

tuk t-a-laló p-étet ɔ-lóttí
 dog C-COP.PERS-Lalu C-give:COMPL PERS-Lótti

the dog has (already) been given to Lótti by Lalu (lit.: the dog is Lalu has given to Lótti)

In the next example a constituent with instrumental role is topicalized, taking up subject function. The sentence can be a reply to the question ‘what was done with this stick?’

kurrónj é-η-kí k-á píɲɪl p-ɔkkottát.ɛ η.ηɪn
 stick DEM-C-NEARSP C-COP snake C-be_killed:COMPL with:ABS

with this stick a snake was killed (lit.: this stick is a snake was killed with)

In this example a comitative constituent is topicalized. It can be an answer to ‘where is your brother?’:

ɔ-paŋ-k-ín p-á-nín t-á.ík ín-át-t-út
 PERS-sibling-C-POSS1 C-COP.PERS-1A C-be:PR 1A-ASS-C-ASS

my brother is with me

11.3. The locative relative **ná** ‘where’

Non-subject relative clauses modifying a noun with locative semantics and expressing that something takes place at that location make use of a different construction. In such cases the locative relative marker **ná** (realized low) is used: **na** SUBJ-(C)-*verb*. **ná** selects the same TAMs as the marker of non-subject relative clause (ɪ-)C-á (a Dependent Incompletive, a Completive, the Present of ‘be’, a defective verb, or a complex verb starting with an auxiliary in non-dependent TAM). I represent **ná** with a high tone since its behaviour is compatible with that of a monomoraic element with a high or a rising tone (it cannot receive a high tone from a preceding element; it can only be realized with a high tone due to tone bridge). The choice between a high and a rising tone is arbitrary because the element has no prepausal realization.

The exact phonological and morphological make-up of **ná** ‘where’ is not clear. Instead of assimilating to **n**, as would be expected (see

2.1.1 in the chapter on phonology), a preceding word-final **t** or **k** undergoes lenition before **ná**, as it would before a vowel-initial word (some examples of this are given in section 2.1.1). Lenition of a preceding **t** and **k** suggests that the locative relative is actually **n-ná**, with a moraic initial nasal. Moreover, at least one speaker spelled it as <ina>, but the presence of a vowel before the nasal was rejected by JS. Writing a vowel might then also point at an underlying form **n-ná**. Length of the nasal is, however, not audible, nor was it intuitively acceptable for my consultant (JS). For this reason I represent the element as **ná**.

In addition, it is not clear whether the element **ná** is itself morphologically complex or not. **ná** could be a realization of **C-á**, which introduces a non-restrictive non-subject relative clause. An argument in favour of this is that **ná** selects the same TAMs as **(ɪ-)C-á**. However, if **ná** historically is a realization of **C-á**, it is unclear what the concord **n** would have agreed with. Would Lumun have had locative nouns, like the Bantu languages, perhaps with a **n**-initial locative prefix, relating to the current preposition **nɔ**- ‘on, at’? Since a convincing analysis is lacking, I just represent the element as **ná** and gloss it as a single unit.

Like the non-subject relative, the locative relative fuses with the persona prefix (**ǝ-**) of a following personal pronoun, kinship term or personal name (first example below). It does not fuse with the initial vowel **ɔ** of a common noun:

k-kw-á.ík	ná-lálô
3-C-be:PR	where:REL.PERS-Lalu
s/he is (at the place) where Lalo is	

m-p-ɔnó	nɛpɪlâ	na	ǝ́ɛ́ék	w-ǝ́kǝ́réllɔ.r-m ⁶⁵
1-C-have	marks	where:REL	ants(sp.)	C-bite:COMPL-O1
I have marks where the ants (sp.) have bitten me				

⁶⁵ Alternative realization: **wǝ́kǝ́réllɔ́rín** (with tone bridge). Both realizations don’t need anything to follow. Tonal minimal pair with an example given in 11.2.3, with non-restrictive non-subject relative construction.

Another example with the locative relative follows here.

m-p-ɔká.t ɬáɬu na m-p-ɔkwɔntá.t.ɛ
 1-C-be:COMPL ɬáɬu where:REL 1-C-be_born_at:COMPL

I was in ɬáɬu, where I was born

In the following example, the relative clause introduced by **ná** modifies the noun **kaɾɛn** ‘place’. **kaɾɛn** cannot be left out here, since the benefactive verb **ɔ́ɛ** ‘go to’ is used: the verb needs an object noun expressing the goal-argument:

... a-kw-ɔ́ɛ.kantɛt káɾɛn na k-kw-á.ɪk p-á.kkwɔ́t karran
 CONJ-3-go_to:DEPPRFV place where:REL 3-C-be:PR C-construct:INCOMPL wall

and then he goes to the location where he is constructing the wall

In combination with the non-benefactive **ɛ́** ‘go’ the locative phrase **nɔ-káɾɛn** ‘at place’ can be present, but also absent:

... a-kw-ɔ́ɛkat (nɔ-káɾɛn) na k-kw-á.ɪk p-á.kkwɔ́t karran
 CONJ-3-go:DEPPRFV on-place where:REL 3-C-be:PR C-construct:INCOMPL wall

and then he goes to the location where he is constructing the wall

ná is commonly used without antecedent:

na ɪkkɔ cɪk m-p-ɪkkɔ cɪk
 where:REL (2-)sit:DEPINCOMPL VREF 1-C-sit:INCOMPL VREF

where you will stay, I will stay

(Ruth 1:16)

k-kw-á.ɪk ná kɔ́pá k-á.ɪk
 3-C-be:PR where:REL meat C-be:PR

s/he is (at the place) where the meat is (this expression can be used in the market: the person is in the part of the market where the meat is sold).

Note in the following example that a Present of ‘be’ is absent in the clause introduced by **ná**. An other example of this was presented above (**kkwáɪk náɪálô** ‘s/he is where Lalô is’). In both cases the subject of the relative clause is human.

m-p-a.nékɔ kómmok na kəllân
 1-C-take:INCOMPL pot where:REL old_woman

I will take the pot to where the old woman is

In order to express ablative ‘from where’, the absolute preposition **ŋŋm** ‘with, by, from’ is added:

k-kw-á.kənn-iɛ na k-kw-áa.t ŋŋm
 3-C-NEG-say:DEPCOMPL where:REL 3-C-come:COMPL with:ABS

s/he did not say where s/he came from

12. Verbs

This chapter discusses verbal inflection: the morphological marking of verbs for mood, tense and aspect, modality, negation, irrealis and deixis, as well as verbal complexes.

In section 12.1 I present some terminology I use in this chapter. Section 12.2 mentions the form for citing a verbal lexeme; 12.3 presents the morphological structure of the verbal word. In 12.4 I give the base forms of verbs and their segmental and tonal characteristics. Section 12.5 discusses the so-called ‘basic TAMs’ and in 12.6 I make some general remarks about verbs with defective inflection. 12.7 is devoted to the verb *ɔkâ* ‘be’, a verb that has an extra TAM-stem and a basic TAM based on this TAM-stem. ‘Be’ can function as copular verb, as main (locative/existential) verb, or as auxiliary verb. Auxiliary verbs other than *ɔkâ* are discussed in 12.8 to 12.20. Some defective verbs are discussed in 12.21 and 12.22. The final section of this chapter (12.23) presents some combinations of auxiliary verbs.

12.1. TAMs and TAM-stems

In order to describe Lumun verbal inflection, I distinguish between “TAM-stems” and “TAMs”. In “TAM-stems”, TAM is short for tense-aspect-mood and refers to inflectional morphology expressing these grammatical categories. In addition, the inflectional morphology of TAM-stems reflects “dependency” versus “non-dependency”, so that TAM-stems (and also TAMs) can be divided into dependent and non-dependent ones. TAM as in “TAMs” refers to the inflectional structure of a whole verbal word or even a whole verbal complex, involving also negation, irrealis, deixis and categories of modality.

TAM-stems are building stones of verbal words. A verbal word contains at least one TAM-stem. Some TAM-stems can themselves form a complete verbal word, other TAM-stems are obligatorily combined with a concord (i.e. a marker of agreement with the verbal subject).

When a verbal word contains just one TAM-stem I call it a simple verbal word, when it contains more than one TAM-stem I call it a complex verbal word. In a complex verbal word a least one TAM-stem is of an auxiliary verb, while at most one TAM-stem is of a main verb. An example of a complex verbal word is the following. It contains three TAM-stems: a TAM-stem of the negation auxiliary, a TAM-stem of the auxiliary ‘again’ and a TAM-stem of the main verb ‘drink’:

m-p-änn-ápp-íkkə

1-C-NEG-again:DEPINCOMPL-drink:DEPINCOMPL

I will not drink it again

A verbal word can also consist of one or more TAM-stems of auxiliary verbs only; in such cases the verbal word forms part of a verbal complex and the TAM-stem of the main verb is part of a separate verbal word within that complex. In a verbal complex there is one main verb TAM-stem. The following is an example of a verbal complex consisting of two verbal words. The first verbal word contains one TAM-stem of an auxiliary verb (‘be’), the second has two TAM-stems, one of the negation auxiliary and one of the main verb ‘lie down’:

m-p-a.ík

1-C-be:PR

p-änn-ícat

C-NEG-lie_down:DEPINCOMPL

I am not lying down

Whereas TAM-stems are building stones of verbal words and complex verbs, I use the notion TAM to name the inflectional structure of a verbal word as a whole. The inflectional structure (‘TAM’) of a complex verbal word can thus involve more than just the categories expressed by TAM-stems (tense-aspect-mood and dependency); this is the case when an auxiliary verb is present that expresses another notion, such as, e.g., negation, possibility or deixis. The TAM of the verb in the example below is Negative Incompletive (consisting of a concord, a TAM-stem of the negation auxiliary and a TAM-stem of the main verb ‘work’). Note that I use small letters for the names of TAM-stems and initial capitals for the names of TAMs.

ɔkɔl w-ǎnn-ɔrékɔ
 child C-NEG-work:DEPINCOMPL
 the child does not work

In some cases I also give a name to the inflectional structure (TAM) of a whole verbal complex. I only do this for certain common types of verbal complexes. The verbal complex in the example ‘I am not lying down’ (see above) is a case of a verbal complex which, as a whole, can be called a Negative Present Continuous. The Negative Present Continuous is composed of the Present TAM of ‘be’ and the Negative Incompletive TAM of ‘lie down’.

Verbs typically have seven separate TAM-stems, which can be divided into three groups: the non-dependent TAM-stems (i.e. the incompletive, completive and past TAM-stem), the dependent TAM-stems (i.e. the dependent incompletive, dependent completive and dependent perfective TAM-stem), and the imperative TAM-stem. The dependent incompletive TAM-stem is the base form (i.e. the uninflected form) of the verb. The other TAM-stems are described in terms of changes applied to this base.

Based on the TAM-stems, verbs typically have six ‘basic TAMs’ (see 12.5.2-12.5.7). One of the TAM-stems, the dependent completive, has a status that is different from the others, and no basic TAM is based on it. Using data presented in the sections 12.14 to 12.16, I argue in 12.17 (on negation) that after a negation auxiliary main verbs have an additional TAM-stem, which can be called a dependent completive TAM-stem. Data presented in 12.14 to 12.16 lead to the analysis that this dependent completive TAM-stem is a development of the dependent incompletive TAM-stem, brought about by inflectional reduction (grammaticalization) of a historical Completive auxiliary. The auxiliary discussed in 12.14 actually still has this Completive form, alongside a reduced variant, demonstrating its tonal effects on the main verb TAM-stem. The auxiliaries discussed in 12.15 and 12.16 have a partly reduced Completive auxiliary, next to a more fully reduced variant. The various stages of grammaticalization of these different auxiliaries show how the dependent completive TAM-stem has developed from the dependent incompletive TAM-stem.

One verb has an eighth TAM-stem: ‘be’ has an additional present TAM-stem (see 12.7.1).

There are two positions for inflectional morphology, determining the TAM-stem: the TAM1-position, replacing the initial vowel of the stem, and the TAM2 position, replacing the final (or last) vowel of the stem or following it. In addition, the TAM-stems are marked by tone patterns. Verbs inflect differently depending on their segmental, tonal and morphological make-up (section 12.5). In order to give an idea at this stage, the seven TAM-stems of the verb **ɔrékɔ** ‘work’ are presented here. The segments marking the different TAM-stems are underlined. +H denotes a floating high tone. This tone does not manifest itself in prepausal position. In context, however, it can surface on a following element.

TAM-stems of ɔrékɔ ‘work’:

ɔrékɔ +H	dependent incomplete TAM-stem
arékɔ +H	incomplete TAM-stem
ɔrekáte	past TAM-stem
ɔrékat +H	dependent perfective TAM-stem
ɔrekôṭ	completive TAM-stem
ɔrékɔ +H	dependent completive TAM-stem
ɔrekí	imperative TAM-stem

12.2. Citing the verb as lexeme

When referring to a verb as a lexeme, I use its base form: the dependent incomplete TAM-stem. This TAM-stem functions without any addition as Dependent Incomplete TAM and can thus be cited in isolation without problem. It displays the segmental and tonal structure of the verb. It is noted, however, that several dependent incomplete TAM-stems have a floating high tone. This high tone can surface on a next element, but if there is no such element, it leaves no trace. Using the citation form as an isolated form, I therefore do not represent an (eventual) floating high tone.

The base form of the verb will often just be called “the verb”. Thus, for example, **ɔɾékí** and **wakénnɔɾéko** are TAMs of the verb **ɔɾéko** ‘work’ (respectively Imperative and Negative Incompletive). In this chapter, the verb will sometimes be presented between parentheses next to the example that contains a form (TAM) of it.

12.3. Morphological structure of verbal words

In its shortest form, a Lumun verbal word consists of just a TAM-stem – and TAM-stems themselves are morphologically marked (through segments and/or tone) as compared to the base form (the dependent incomplete TAM-stem). A verbal word can also be longer than just a TAM-stem: a number of clitic morphemes can precede the TAM-stem and some can follow it. There are three slots for auxiliaries (other than irrealis) in the scheme below, though it is not impossible that longer strings could be constructed. They would, however, be uncommon in natural speech.

slot 1: conjunctive **á-**, subjunctive **â-**, the restrictor **í-**, focus marker (**akk-** or **a-c-c**-⁶⁶)

slot 2: subject pronominal

slot 3: concord (nb. concord in Lumun is always subject concord)

slot 4-6: auxiliary (TAM-stem)

slot 7: irrealis auxiliary

slot 8: main verb TAM-stem

slot 9: object pronominal, vague reference clitic **-ik**

slot 10: clitic adverbial particles **-a**, **-na**, **-ti**, **-mé**, **-mɛ**, clitic question particles **-i**, **-ɛ**, **-a**.

Certain auxiliaries can be proclitic to the main verb. They have a reduced set of TAM-stems: some have just one (non-dependent) TAM-stem, others have a non-dependent vs. a dependent TAM-stem, again others have a three way distinction: an incomplete, a dependent incomplete and a complete TAM-stem.

⁶⁶ **a** followed by double concord.

There are restrictions on combinations of morphemes occupying different slots. Some observations:

1. if slot 1 contains a focus marker, slots 2 and 3 are empty;
2. non-dependent TAM-stems are immediately preceded by the focus marker (slot 1), a concord (slot 3), or the irrealis auxiliary (slot 7).
3. dependent TAM-stems are not immediately preceded by a concord. If the main verb is a non-dependent TAM-stem, slot 3 can only be filled if slot 4 contains a non-dependent auxiliary.

Some verbs must be combined with the vague reference particle **cɪk**. In principle **cɪk** is a separate word. In the Present of ‘be’, however, it only occurs as enclitic **-ɪk** (slot 8). In certain other cases it can alternatively be realized as a separate word or as enclitic **-ɪk** (see chapter 15.2 about **cɪk**).

TAMs can consist of more than one verbal word. This is the case for auxiliary + main verb constructions, whether or not containing the conjunctive marker **á**, e.g.,

pul	p-ɔká.t	cɪk	a-p-ɔ́ɾəkɔ	kəpá
person	C-be:COMPL	VREF	CONJ-PRO-eat:DEPINCOMPL	meat

the person was eating meat

pul	p-a.ɪk	p-a.ɾəkɔ	kəpá
person	C-be:PR	C-eat:INCOMPL	meat

the person is eating meat

The sections in this chapter on basic and complex TAMs present the minimal structure of these TAMs. The basic TAMs either consist of just the TAM-stem (the imperative TAM-stem and the dependent TAM-stems), or of concord + TAM-stem (the non-dependent TAM-stems). As stated before, TAMs which have the concord can only lack it when it is replaced by a focus marker.

The tones of TAM-stems —whether of main verbs or of auxiliaries— are represented in the way they surface in an environment where

they do not undergo tonal influence from other elements. Non-dependent TAM-stems are presented as if only preceded by a low-toned noun (for example **pul** ‘person’) and a concord; dependent TAM-stems of low verbs as if preceded by the conjunctive particle **á** and a low noun (for example **á-** + **pul**, giving **a-pôl**), dependent TAM-stem of verbs with a high (or falling) tone by the conjunctive particle **á** and a noun with final high tone (for example **á-** + **parí**, giving **a-parí**): in these cases no high tone will be added to the verb, nor will a verbal high tone be changed to low. In practice, tones will often surface differently, due to various influences of the environment.

All TAM-stems form the basis of a basic TAM, except the dependent completive TAM-stem. This TAM-stem only occurs after a negation auxiliary (see 12.17).

12.4. Segmental and tonal shape of verbs

12.4.1. Segmental shape

Underived verbs (i.e. verbs in their base form) are predominantly bimoraic or trimoraic, derived verbs are often longer. An example of a long verb (seven morae) is **ɔkkápərəttakɪə** ‘make sb./sth. return’. Monomoraic verbs, that is verbs with only one tone-bearing unit, are not attested.

Verbs are vowel-initial and end in a vowel or in vowel + **t**. The initial vowel can be any vowel (**i**, **ɪ**, **u**, **ʊ**, **ɔ**, **ɛ**, **a** or **ə**), the last vowel, whether or not a final **t** still follows, is restricted to **ɔ**, **ɛ** or **a**. Initial **ə** is very rare. The vowel **ɔ** is very common, both initially and as last vowel. Of the vowels in last position, **ɔ** is the only “neutral” one, not having any association of its own with meaning. Both as initial vowel and as last vowel, **ɔ** can be replaced by another vowel in inflection, as last vowel it can also be replaced in derivation. This suggests that initial and last **ɔ** are, unlike other vowels in those positions, not part of the actual lexical root or stem, but default “fillers” to complete the structure of the verb.

The initial vowel, the last vowel and the presence or absence of a final **t** are elements that are relevant for the subdivision of verbs because they correlate with differences in the TAM-stems (and thus with different inflectional forms). Both for the initial vowel and for the last vowel of the verb, a distinction must be made between the vowel **ɔ** and the other vowels. Thus, for inflection, the following segmental differences between verbs are important:

- The vowel **ɔ** as initial vowel differs from other initial vowels in that it is subject to inflectional change, whereas the other initial vowels always remain the same. Initial **ɔ** changes into **a** in the incomplete TAM-stem.
- A final (or last) vowel **ɔ** is replaced by an inflectional morpheme in the imperative, past and dependent perfective TAM-stems. Other final (or last) vowels do not change: an inflectional element is only added after it.
- Presence or absence of a final **t** correlates with differences in the formation of imperative and complete TAM-stems. In the past and dependent perfective TAM-stems, the presence or absence of a final **t** is neutralized.

A distinction on grounds of differences in TAM-stem formation must also be made between benefactive verbs, ending in **me**, **ene** or **ane**, or in **intet**, **entet** or **antet**, versus non-benefactive verbs ending in **e** or **et** (this will be further explained in the section on basic TAMs).

Finally, passive verbs ending in **-akɔ(t)** or **-ekɔ(t)** and derived from verbs ending in **-a(t)** and **-e(t)** respectively, have a deviating past and dependent perfective formation.

12.4.2. Tone patterns

In their citation form, all verbs have a low tone on the first mora. The main (surface) tone patterns of verbs are L.L* (all morae have a low tone) and L.H.L* (the second mora has a high tone).⁶⁷ There are

⁶⁷ In the tonal representations of verbs (*) stands for ≥ 1 . For example, L.L* refers to verbs of any length (that is, of two morae or more) that are completely low.

two minor tone patterns: L.HL and L.L.HL (in both cases the final mora has a HL-contour).

L.L*	ɪmma ‘see’, ɛnɛkke ‘try’, ɔkkɔnakɔ ‘smell’
L.H.L*	ɔkɛrɔ ‘trade’, ɔpɔlle ‘fear’, ɔkwáɾɪccat ‘search’
L.HL	ɛɔ ‘go’, ɔrâ ‘cultivate’
L.L.HL	ɔɾəkɔ ‘eat’

These patterns can be divided into a low tone class (I) and a high tone class; the latter is again subdivided into the main pattern L.H.L* (IIA) and the smaller pattern L.HL/L.L.HL (IIB). These three groups correlate with inflectional differences.

I	L.L*
IIA	L.H.L*
IIB	L.HL/L.L.HL

In class IIB, most verbs with a final HL-contour consist of two morae only, L.L.HL is rare. This suggests that the pattern is basically the L.H.L (class IIA) pattern realized on two tone-bearing units instead of three or more. This is supported by longer derivations of L.HL verbs: the Low part of the falling tone is now realized on the following mora:

ɔllɔ ‘run’ vs. **ɔllíne** ‘run because of something’

The trimoraic verbs with a final HL-contour are a very limited set. All attested trimoraic verbs with a final HL-contour have the vowel **ə** as their second mora, and this **ə** either precedes or follows a rhotic sound. Possibly, these verbs were bimoraic L.HL verbs in an earlier stage of the history of the language and have only become trimoraic through **ə**-insertion, dissolving a disallowed consonant cluster.

ɔɾəkɔ	‘eat’
ɔrəpɔ	‘move down’
ɔrəpɛ	‘make move down, put down’

ᵛkəɾɛ̃	‘burn’
ᵛkəɾɔ̃	‘bite, get burnt; untie’

In longer derivations based on these verbs, the High tone surfaces on the second mora. These longer derivations are thus an exception to the general rule that derived verbs retain the tone pattern of the underived verb:

ɔɾəkɔ̃ ‘eat’ / ɔɾəkɪnɛ ‘eat for’

12.4.3. Correlation between initial vowels and tone patterns

Any vowel can constitute the initial vowel of a verb, but there is a correlation between the initial vowel of the verb and its tone pattern. When the initial vowel is ɔ, the tones cannot be predicted:

ᵛkɪɔ	‘cut’	L.L
ɔɾáttɔ	‘fight’	L.H.L
ɔllɔ̃	‘run’	L.HL
ɔɾəkɔ̃	‘eat’	L.L.HL

Verbs with an initial vowel other than ɔ have a L.L* tone pattern:

ɪkkɔ	‘drink’	L.L
ɪttarɔt	‘help’	L.L.L
unɔ	‘pour’	L.L
ʊrəkɔ	‘get up, start’	L.L.L
əɾa	‘refuse’	L.L
ɛɛ	‘speak’	L.L
akkarɔ	‘call’	L.L.L

There are a few exceptions, all starting with ɛ. These verbs have a L.HL pattern:

ɛɔ̃	‘go’	L.HL
ɛɛ̃	‘stab, blow’	L.HL
ɛɾɛ̃t	‘give’	L.HL

12.4.4. Overview of segmental and tonal properties relevant for TAM-inflection

Summarizing, the following divisions in verbs are relevant for TAM-inflection:

- the three tone patterns: L.L*, L.H.L* and L.HL/L.L.HL
- **ɔ**-initial versus non-**ɔ**-initial verbs
- vowel-final versus **t**-final verbs
- **ɔ**-final versus **ɛ** or **a**-final verbs, **ɔt**-final versus **ɛt** or **at**-final verbs
- benefactive verbs ending in **mɛ**, **ɛnɛ**, **anɛ**, **mɛtɛt**, **ɛnɛtɛt** or **anɛtɛt** versus non-benefactive verbs ending in **ɛ** or **ɛt**

The six basic TAMs (based on six of the seven TAM-stems), are discussed in the next section. A few verbs have partly irregular TAM-stems. Verbs that do not have the full paradigm of TAMs (some verbs have only one) are discussed in sections 12.8-12.22, which deal with auxiliaries and other verbs with defective inflection.

12.5. The basic TAMs

Lumun verbs have six basic TAMs:

- Imperative
- Incompletive
- Dependent Incompletive
- Past
- Dependent Perfective
- Completive

As remarked earlier, TAMs are built on the basis of TAM-stems. The dependent completive TAM-stem is only part of complex verbs with a negation auxiliary, it does not form a basic TAM. The Incompletive, the Past and the Completive contain a concord that agrees with the subject, the others do not. A list of the basic TAMs of the verb **ɔllɔ** ‘run’ follows here. The segmental marking in the TAM-stems is underlined. TAMs have basic tone patterns which correlate with the tone pattern of the verb.

<i>TAM</i>	<i>Structure of the TAM</i>	<i>example</i>
Imperative	= imperative TAM-stem	ɔllɔ
Incompletive	= concord + incompletive TAM-stem	C- allɔ
Dep. Incompletive	= dependent incompletive TAM-stem	allɔ
Past	= concord + past TAM-stem	C- alláte
Dep. Perfective	= dependent perfective TAM-stem	allât
Completive	= concord + completive TAM-stem	C- allɔt

The Locative-applicative suffix and TAM-marking

Verbs with the Locative-applicative suffix have basic TAM-morphology that is different from the basic TAM-morphology of vowel-final verbs. The presence (or absence) of the Locative-applicative suffix can be recognized in Imperatives, Incompletives (both non-dependent and dependent) and Completives, but not in Pasts and dependent Perfectives. In the latter TAMs the difference between vowel-final and *t*-final verbs is neutralized. The examples below contrast TAMs of the verbs **ɔtɛɔ** ‘push’ and **ɔtɛɔt** ‘send’ (see 14.2 for some remarks about the semantics of these related verbs):

Table 46 TAMs of **ɔtɛɔ** ‘push’ and **ɔtɛɔt** ‘send’

	ɔtɛɔ ‘push’	ɔtɛɔt ‘send’
Imperative	ɔtɛɛ	ɔtɛɔtɛ
Incompletive	C- atɛɔ (+ H)	C- atɛɔt (+ H)
Dep. Incompletive	ɔtɛɔ (+ H)	ɔtɛɔt (+ H)
Completive	C- ɔtɛɔt	C- ɔtɛɔtɛ
Past	C- ɔtɛáte	C- ɔtɛáte
Dep. Perfective	ɔtɛát (+ H)	ɔtɛát (+ H)

12.5.1. Non-dependency versus dependency

Dependent TAMs or TAM-stems lack agreement with the subject, i.e. they are not preceded by a concord. If dependency is not mentioned in the gloss (irrespective of whether it concerns a main verb, an auxiliary or a copular verb), the TAM-stem is non-dependent. Likewise, I speak of Incompletive vs. Dependent Incompletive TAM and Past vs. Dependent Perfective TAM.

Dependent TAMs occur in specific syntactic environments, in which there is typically preceding discourse that allows for the lesser grammatical marking on the verb. The sections on the Dependent Incompletive and the Dependent Perfective specify such environments. Only when the subject is a speech participant (so that subject reference is clear from the extra-textual situation), preceding discourse can be absent, i.e. in hortatives and mild commands.

Arguably, the Imperative is a dependent TAM as well, and the imperative TAM-stem a dependent TAM-stem. However, since non-dependent counterparts are lacking, dependency does not need to be specified.

The six basic TAMs are discussed below.

12.5.2. The Imperative

Lumun Imperatives address a singular addressee. They consist of the imperative TAM-stem:

Imperative = imperative TAM-stem

Verbs that end in **a** or **ε** mark the imperative stem (and thus the Imperative) only through tone. Irrespective of the tone pattern of these verbs, their Imperative is completely low. This includes the tonally irregular verb **εε** ‘stab, blow’. The Imperative of **ɔ**-final verbs is marked both tonally and segmentally: the final **ɔ** changes into **í** or **ʊ**⁶⁸. The first group thus has a final high tone (pattern L*.H), the Imperatives in **ʊ** are completely low. There is some correlation between the tone pattern of an **ɔ**-final verb and the shape of its imperative stem:

- imperative stems based on an **ɔ**-final verb with all-low tone pattern

⁶⁸ In some +ATR items (i.e. with an **ĩ** and/or **u** in the verb root), harmonization effects were observed. The final vowel of the Imperative was articulated as [i], or towards [i] rather than as [ɪ]. In other such items however, harmonization effects were not perceived by the researcher, nor by her consultants. In all cases, **ɪ** is used in the spelling. +ATR items with an Imperative ending in **ʊ** are not attested.

mostly end in *í*;

- the great majority of imperative stems based on an *ɔ*-final verb with L.H.L* tone pattern end in *í*;
- the imperative stems of *ɔ*-final verbs with a L.HL/L.L.HL pattern all end in *ʊ*.

Verbs ending in *t* form imperative stems by changing the final *t* into *ʔé*, with a H tone on the final *ɛ* (pattern L.L*.H). Verbs ending in *-ne*, *-ene* or *-ane* (i.e. benefactive stems) form imperative stems by adding a final *t* and taking an all-low tone pattern. Verbs ending in *inʔet*, *enʔet* or *anʔet* do not change segmentally, but adopt an all-low tone pattern. The verb *ɛʔét* ‘give’ patterns with the verbs ending in *inʔet*, *enʔet* or *anʔet*.

The patterns of imperative stem formation are presented in the table below. If a kind of marking is rare for verbs with a certain shape and tone pattern this is mentioned in the third column.

Table 47 Imperatives

<i>verbal ending and tone pattern</i>	<i>verb examples</i>	<i>marking of imperative TAM-stem</i>	<i>Imperative</i>
<i>-ɔ</i> ; L.L*, L.H.L*	<i>ɪɔ</i> ‘die’ <i>ɔccɪɾɔ</i> ‘laugh’ <i>ɔrékɔ</i> ‘work’ <i>ɔmárəttɔ</i> ‘finish’	<i>-í</i> ; L*.H	<i>ɪ.í</i> <i>ɔccɪɾ.í</i> <i>ɔrek.í</i> <i>ɔmarətt.í</i>
<i>-ɔ</i> ; L.HL/L.L.HL	<i>ɔllɔ</i> ‘run’ <i>ɔɾəkɔ</i> ‘eat’	<i>-ʊ</i> ; L.L*	<i>ɔll.ʊ</i> <i>ɔɾək.ʊ</i>
<i>-ɔ</i> ; L.L*	<i>ɔllɔ</i> ‘move aside’	<i>-ʊ</i> ; L.L* (rare)	<i>ɔll.ʊ</i>
<i>-ɔ</i> ; L.H.L*	<i>ɔkókɔwɔ</i> ‘blow PLUR’ ⁶⁹	<i>-ʊ</i> ; L.L* (rare)	<i>ɔkukw.ʊ</i>

⁶⁹ This is the Pluractional form of *ɔkwɔ* ‘blow’, which (also) has an Imperative in *ʊ*. There may be more such cases. It is, however, not the case that Pluractionals with L.H.L* pattern ending in *ɔ* and based on L.HL/L.L.HL verbs always (or even generally) have *ʊ* in the Imperative. Compare: *ɔʔɪ* ‘pull!’ (< *ɔʔɪ*) vs. *ɔʔɪʔɪ* ‘pull repeatedly!’ (< *ɔʔɪʔɪ*), and: *ɔkəɾɪ* ‘bite!’ (< *ɔkəɾɪ*) vs. *ɔkəɾɪllí* ‘bite repeatedly!’ (< *ɔkəɾɪllɔ*).

-a, -e (except Benefactive stems); all tone patterns	ɔra 'escape' ɔkʰa 'look' ɔccā 'scoop' ere 'speak' ɔkʰne 'show' ɔkê 'shave'	L.L*	ɔra ɔkʰa ɔcca ere ɔkʰne ɔkê
Benefactive stems (-ne, -ene, -ane); all tone patterns	ɔpétine 'divide for' erene 'explain to' ɔnáne 'bring to'	-t ; L.L*	ɔpettine.t erene.t ɔnane.t
-t (except Benefactive + Locative-applicative stems); all tone patterns	ɔt 'find' eet 'arrange' ɔɽikʰɔt 'wait'	-tʰé ; L.L*.H	ɔt.é eet.é ɔɽikʰɔt.é
Benefactive + Locative-applicative stems (-inɽet, -enɽet, -anɽet); all tone patterns	ɔkkínɽet 'do for' erenɽet 'talk to sb. about' ɔkwáriccanɽet 'search for sb' <i>also:</i> et̚et 'give'	L.L*	ɔkkínɽet erenɽet ɔkwáriccanɽet et̚et

An example with the Imperative of ɔɽəkʰ 'eat' follows here, showing that there is no high tone involved. **mart** 'beans' is itself all-low and remains low:

ɔɽəkʰ mart
 eat:IMP beans
 eat the beans!

An Imperative can in principle be formed from all verbs, except for a small set of defective verbs. Passive verbs are in principle open to Imperative formation. The Imperatives in the examples below refer to rites of passage involving getting beaten and scarification of the body.

apəɾetta **tɔpɔt** **ɛn-t-í** (< apəɾetta)
 be_beaten:IMP year DEM-C-NEARSP
 get beaten this year!

ɔmekɪ **tɔpɔt** **ɛn-t-í** (< ɔmekɔ)
 be_scarified:IMP year DEM-C-NEARSP
 get scarified this year!

‘Go’ and ‘come’ have an irregular Imperative:

Table 48 Imperatives of **ɛɔ** ‘go’ and **ɔɔ** ‘come’

<i>verb</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>type of irregularity</i>
ɛɔ ‘go’	ɪkɔ	suppletive form
ɔɔ ‘come’	aɪk	a + ɪk (related to cɪk ‘place(s)’ and/or the vague reference particle cɪk (chapter 15))

A few verbs allow for omission of the initial **ɔ** in the Imperative. This omission makes the Imperative more urging. In the Imperative of **ɔkəɾənnɔ** ‘let’ the initial **ɔ** is always left out.

Table 49 Imperatives with omission of initial **ɔ**

<i>verb</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Imperative with urge</i>
ɔcɔɪ ‘stand, wait’	ɔcɔɪ	cɔɪ
ɔkəɪ ‘look’	ɔkəɪ	kəɪ
ɔkəɾənnɔ ‘let’	kəɾənnɪ	

Nothing can be attached before the Imperative, but clitics can be attached at the end of it. Some Imperatives undergo a change upon attachment of a vowel-initial object pronominal clitic. For example, final **ɪ** and **ʊ** change into **ɔ**, and the H-tone of final **ɪ** is deleted:

ɔmɪccɔ-k (< ɔmɪccɪ; verb: ɔmɪccɔ)
 advise:IMP-O3
 greet him/her!

ɔccɔ-kɔk (< ɔccʊ; verb: ɔccɔ)
 receive:IMP-O3
 take him/her!

Forms and attachment of object pronominal clitics to specific TAM stems are discussed in detail in chapter 6.4.

Two Imperatives cannot be coordinated. Instead the second command is expressed by a Dependent Incompletive:

ɔllo	ana	írro
run:IMP	and	jump:DEPINCOMPL
run and jump!		

Other commands (to first, second and third persons) are not based on the imperative TAM-stem but on the dependent incomplete TAM-stem.

12.5.3. The Incompletive

Form of the Incompletive

Incompletives consist of a concord and the incomplete TAM-stem:

Incompletive = concord + incomplete TAM-stem

Incompletive stems take different shapes depending on the initial vowel of the verb and its tone pattern. Incompletives are the only TAM-stems that, if segmentally marked, are marked in the TAM1-position.

A stem-initial vowel **ɔ** changes into **a**, and a high tone appears on the initial vowel of all-low stems. Some verbs with an all-low tone pattern have a falling tone on the initial vowel. Unless in careful speech, this falling tone can also be realized as high. Which verbs belong to this group is lexically determined. Some have a long nasal or a nasal and stop after the initial vowel, others a geminated (= voiceless) stop. The group does not seem to contain verbs with a single consonant after the initial vowel. It is possible that instances have been missed, since in normal speech the falling tone is not always realized.

Stems that are not ɔ-initial do not change their initial vowel, and stems with another tone pattern than L.L* retain their stem tones.

Incompletive TAM-stems (and thus Incompletives) have a floating high tone, except Incompletives of verbs with a final falling tone. Incompletives of such verbs lack the floating high tone also upon attachment of a third person pronoun clitic, which changes the tones of the verb. Compare the examples based on *ere* ‘speak’ and *ɔkɔ́ta* ‘look at’ with those based on *ɔkwɔ́* ‘blow away’ and *ɔɾəkɔ́* ‘eat’. The object nouns are themselves all-L:

mpére lɔn	‘I will speak words’
kkwére lɔn	‘s/he will speak words’
mpakɔ́ta máit	‘I will look at the beans’
kkwákɔ́ta máit	‘s/he will look at the beans’
mpakwɔ́ lɔn	‘I will blow matters away’
kkwákɔ́ lɔn	‘s/he will blow matters away’
mpaɾəkɔ́ máit	‘I will eat beans’
kkwáɾəkɔ́ máit	‘s/he will eat beans’

A floating high tone is represented as +H.

Table 50 Incompletives

<i>initial vowel and tones of the verb</i>	<i>verb examples</i>	<i>marking of incompletive TAM-stem</i>	<i>Incompletive⁷⁰</i>
ɔ, L.L*	ɔkɔ́ ‘cut’	a ; H.L* +H	C-á.kɔ́ +H
ɔ, L.H.L*	ɔkɔ́ta ‘look’	a ; +H	C-a.kɔ́ta +H
ɔ, L.HL	ɔllɔ́ ‘run’	a	C-a.llɔ́
ɔ, L.L.HL	ɔɾəkɔ́ ‘eat’	a	C-a.ɾəkɔ́
i, ɪ, u, ʊ, ɛ, a, L.L*	ɪt ‘find’ ʊmmɔ́ ‘take, pick up’ ere ‘speak’ aɲkɔ́ ‘be hot’	H.L* +H	C-íɪt +H C-ómmɔ́ +H C-éere +H C-áɲkɔ́ +H

⁷⁰ The tones of the Incompletives are represented as in an environment that causes no tonal change, for example as in: **pul pákɔ́** ‘the person will cut it’.

L.L*	ɔŋkəne ‘teach (PLUR)’ ɪncet ‘find (PLUR)’ akkarɔ ‘call’ ekkɪe ‘measure’	a ; HL.L* + H / H.L* + H	C- â.ŋkəne + H / C- á.ŋkəne + H C- încet + H / C- íncet + H C- âkkarɔ + H / C- ákkarɔ + H C- êkkɪe + H / C- ékkɪe + H
ɛ, L.HL	ɛɛ ‘stab, blow’ ɛtɛt ‘give’	–	C- ɛɛ C- ɛtɛt

There are only few incomplete TAM-stems which show no marking at all as compared to the dependent incomplete TAM-stem (the citation form). This is because there are only few verbs which are both not ɔ-initial and containing a H-tone. The attested cases are given in the last row of the table).

Some examples with an Incomplete follow here. The first examples have forms of the verbs **ame** ‘come to’ and **ɔíne** ‘go to’. The Incompletives of these verbs differ only tonally. When preceded by the 3rd person pronoun clitic and concord (third example below) their realization is identical. The verb **ɔɾəkɔ** ‘eat’ (last examples) lacks a floating high tone.

ɔ-kakká **p-áme** **úkɔl** (< **ame**)
 PERS-Kakka C-come_to:INCOMPL child

Kakka will come to the child

ɔ-kakká **p-a.íne** **úkɔl** (< **ɔíne**)
 PERS-Kakka C-go_to:INCOMPL child

Kakka will go to the child

k-kw-áme / k-kw-á.me **úkɔl** (< **ame**, < **ɔíne**)
 3-C-come_to:INCOMPL / 3-C-go_to:INCOMPL child

s/he will come to the child / s/he will go to the child

əlla **w-a.ɾəkɔ** **aun** (< **ɔɾəkɔ**)
 cats C-eat:INCOMPL rats

cats eat rats

w-á.ɾəkɔ **aʊn** (< ɔɾəkɔ)

PRO.C-eat:INCOMPL rats

they (the cats) will eat rats

The following verbs have an irregular Incompletive.

Table 51 Irregular Incompletives

<i>verb</i>	<i>Incompletive</i>	<i>type of irregularity</i>
aw ‘come’	C- â.nɾán (also regular: C- áo)	nɾán ‘towards the deictic centre’ is part of the verb
ɛɛ̃ ‘go’	C- a.ɛɛ̃	added a
ɔɔ ‘cry’	C- ɔɔ + H	no change of initial ɔ to a
ɔmmâ ‘not know’	C- ɔmmá	no change of initial ɔ to a + tonal irregularity
ina ‘know’	C- iná	tonal irregularity
ella ‘be absent, lack’ (intr.)	C- ellâ	tonal irregularity
ella ‘not have, lack’ (tr.)	C- ellâ	tonal irregularity

Meaning of the Incompletive

The Incompletive basically expresses that, at a certain moment in time, something will still happen. This moment in time can be prior to the moment of speech, at the moment of speech or after the moment of speech.

(< ɔkkɔt)

ɔ-kín **ɬ-erettárenɛ.t** **ittɪ** **ɔ-kín** **ɬ-á.kkɔt** **ɲím-p-ên**

PERS-3A C-discuss:COMPL that PERS-3A C-do:INCOMPL what-C-DEM

they discussed what they would do

(< ɔkkɔt)

ɲ-kw-a.kkɔt **ɲɔré** **éɲ-ɲ-í** **ítí** **kát-ɬa**

2-C-do:INCOMPL work DEM-C-NEARSP that how-QW

how will you do this work?

(< ɔɾəkɔ̌)

kəllán k-á.ɾəkɔ̌ túrít ámmá k-k-íammâ.t
 old_woman C-eat:INCOMPL food if PRO-C-become_hungry:COMPL
 the old woman will eat the food when she is hungry

Incompletives can give expression to a speaker's attitude in terms of necessity or desirability of an event that is still to happen, or to a readiness for it to take place.

ɲ-kw-a.ccɪkɔ̌ itti á-ina cík (< ɔccɪkɔ̌)
 2-C-hear:INCOMPL that SUBJ-(2-)know:DEPINCOMPL VREF
 you must listen so that you know

tuttəruk t-ápakɔ̌ (< apakɔ̌)
 pig C-be_roasted:INCOMPL
 the pig can be roasted (it is ready to be roasted)

The Incompletive sometimes allows for an irrealis reading:

m-p-a.cóməkkɪɛ ɲm-ɬa n-a-ôn (< ɔcóməkkɪɛ)
 1-C-disturb_for:INCOMPL what-QW on-PERS-1
 why would I disturb you? (I did not do that!)

Incompletives are used in general truth expressions and can express habitual aspect: something happened in the past and is expected to happen again.

ɲilláɲker ɲ-ónɔ̌ nɔ̌né nɔ̌-kerɔ̌ɲ (< ɔnɔ̌)
 birds(sp.) C-build:INCOMPL nests on-palm_trees
 ɲilláɲker-birds build their nests in palm trees

(< ɔɾâ)

ul w-a.rá aɾəpu ámm.akka tún ana áttópâ
 people C-cultivate:INCOMPL things like onion and tobacco
 the people cultivate crops such as onions and tobacco

12.5.4. The Dependent Incompletive

Form of the Dependent Incompletive

Dependent Incompletives consist of the dependent incomplete stem:

Dependent Incompletive = dependent incomplete TAM-stem

Dependent incomplete TAM-stems (and thus Dependent Incompletives) have a floating high tone unless the TAM-stem has a final HL-contour.

Table 52 Tone patterns of Dependent Incompletives

<i>tones of the verb</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Dependent Incompletive</i>
L.L*, L.H.L*, L.HL	ɔkɪɔ 'cut' ɔkɔʔa 'look' ɔllɔ 'run'	ɔkɪɔ + H ɔkɔʔa + H ɔllɔ
L.L.HL	ɔʔəkɔ 'eat'	ɔʔəkɔ

Dependent Incompletives cannot take a concord. The examples below contrast an Incompletive (first example) and a Dependent Incompletive (second and third example).

ɬuk **ɬ-a.ʔəkɔ**
dog C-eat:INCOMPL

the dog will eat it

á-ɬuk **ɔʔəkɔ**
SUBJ-dog eat:DEPINCOMPL

and the dog must eat it / let the dog eat it

... a-ɬ-ɔʔəkɔ
CONJ-PRO-eat:DEPINCOMPL

... and/while it (the dog) eats it

Meaning and environments in which it is used

Typically the Dependent Incomplete is connected —through a conjunction word or particle, or also through juxtaposition—, to a preceding verb or verb phrase. In same-subject coordinations with **ană** ‘and’, the Dependent Incomplete adopts the tense/aspect and/or modality interpretation of the preceding verb. It can also be used for background information about an aspect of a larger event, such as an action performed simultaneously with the main action, the purpose of an action, or the way in which it is done. It can, however also be used alone, i.e. not in some kind of conjunction with another verb. In such cases it expresses a (mild) command.

Environments in which the Dependent Incomplete is used include the following:

- a) in a clause introduced by the subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that, in order to’;
- b) in a clause introduced by conjunctive particle **á** ‘and, while’;
- c) as the second verb coordinated through **ană** ‘and’ with another verb, sharing the same subject;
- d) as the second verb in a verb sequence expressing the way in which something is done, or expressing the “path” in a verb sequence of motion and path;
- e) as a complement of **əŕa** ‘refuse, insist’, **ma** ‘know’, **ommâ** ‘not know’;
- f) In negative commands (with **əkórənnə** ‘let, leave, allow’);
- g) with a second person plural pronoun clitic expressing a mild command; with a hortative pronoun, expressing an obligation or duty of a first person;
- h) in constructions with fronted question words and in non-subject focus constructions with **akka** ‘that’;
- i) in non-subject relative constructions (see 11.2), topicalizing cleft constructions (11.2.4), and clauses introduced by the locative relative **ná** (11.3)

A verb in Dependent Incomplete TAM can furthermore be part of a complex TAM with the auxiliary verb **c-arəʃtok** ‘be still’. More commonly, complex verb constructions involve the dependent

incompletive TAM-stem as part of a larger word with one or more auxiliaries. These cases are discussed in the sections on auxiliaries.

In the following, the environments mentioned above are exemplified and explained in some more detail.

*Ad a) in a clause introduced by the subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that, in order to’*

The subjunctive particle **â**- ‘so that, in order to’ links the action expressed by the Dependent Incompletive to the preceding action. The verb in the clause introduced by **â** typically denotes the purpose or goal of the action expressed in the preceding clause (see also chapter 18.2.2):

ɔ-rən	ʈ-a.rékɔ	káɾuŋ-kəɾuŋ	á-rən	íɔt	tuɾít
PERS-12A	C-work:INCOMPL	seriously-REDUP	SUBJ.PERS-12A	find:DEPINCOMPL	food

we must work hard so that we have food

*Ad b) in a clause introduced by conjunctive particle **á** ‘and, while’*

The conjunctive particle **á**, when introducing a clause with a Dependent Incompletive, expresses an action that happens or happened more or less at the same time as the previous action (see also chapter 18.2.1):

a-átúrán	śíŋkat	tuán	ʈán-en
CONJ-thieves	go:DEPPRFV	home	at_place-POSS3A

a-íɾet	ká	k-én	ítí ...
CONJ-(C-)tell:DEPINCOMPL	body	C-POSS3A	that

and the thieves went home, saying to themselves ...

The Dependent Incompletive preceded by **á** ‘and, while’ is part of some complex TAMs, for example of the Past Continuous (first example below) and of a complex TAM involving **ikkɔ cɪk** ‘sit, stay’ as an auxiliary expressing the start of an action (second example below):

m-p-óká.t **cık** **a-n-ómente** **ittĩ ...**
 1-C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-1-say.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL that

I was saying all the time that ...

... a-n-íkk.at **cık** **a-n-ípət** **ńómporúŋ**
 CONJ-1-sit:DEPPRFV VREF CONJ-1-dig:DEPINCOMPL potatoes

and I started digging potatoes

*Ad c) as the second verb coordinated through **ană** ‘and’ with another verb, sharing the same subject*

In constructions of two verbs with the same subject coordinated through **ană** ‘and’, the second can be a Dependent Incompletive. In the example below (which continues on the example above) it is coordinated with a Dependent Incompletive that is preceded by a subject pronoun:

... a-n-íkk.at **cık** **a-n-ípət** **ńómporúŋ**
 CONJ-1-sit:DEPPRFV VREF CONJ-1-dig:DEPINCOMPL potatoes

ana **íkkə** **marĩ**
 and drink:DEPINCOMPL fruits(k.o.)

and I started digging potatoes and eating *marĩ*-fruits

An example with an Incompletive first verb follows here. The second verb can be a Dependent Incompletive, but also, just like the first, an Incompletive. The actions are not presented as consecutive, but just as both taking place:

ul **w-íkkə** **ńópak** **eppin-eppin**
 people C-drink:INCOMPL beer always-REDUP

ana **ńárə / w-a.ńárə** **n-əɽittăŋ**
 and walk:DEPINCOMPL / C-walk:INCOMPL with-knives

the people drink beer all the time and carry knives (fr. written essay)

This is an example with a Future Continuous TAM (see 12.7.5) coordinated with a Dependent Incompletive:

nɔ-caŋi c-én ul w-a.ka w-a.ŋwó ana ókkwɔ
 on-day C-DEM people C-be:INCOMPL C-sing:INCOMPL and dance:DEPINCOMPL
 on that day, the people will be singing and dancing

ană can also coordinate a Completive and a Dependent Incompletive verb with the same subject. The Dependent Incompletive adopts the same temporal/aspectual reference as the Completive:

ɪ-l-ên akka m-p-icánɬet mɛccɪn ɲ-cɪk ɪ-cɪŋkɪ
 RES-C-DEM that 1-C-lie_down_for:COMPL yesterday with-VREF in-sun
ana órəkɔ a-cɪŋkɪ c-ɛ́.t cɪk-ɪ-tɪɬɔt
 and get_up:DEPINCOMPL CONJ-sun C-go:COMPL LOC-in-sky
 and that is why I slept yesterday from sunrise and I got up (only) when the sun had left the sky

Two Imperatives cannot be coordinated. Instead, the second command is expressed by a dependent verb, in the example below a Dependent Incompletive:

ɔkaki mɪl ana ɔkkót ɲucul
 grind:IMP sorghum and do:DEPINCOMPL sauce
 grind the flour and make the sauce!

Ad d) as the second verb in a verb sequence expressing the way in which something is done, or expressing the “path” in a verb sequence of motion and path

l-ómma itti m-p-éren-ɔŋ ôkurro
 PRO.C-know_not:INCOMPL that 1-C-speak_to:INCOMPL-O2 engrave:DEPINCOMPL
 I don’t know how to explain this to you in writing (lit.: they (the words) do not know that I say it to you writing)

The second verb in a motion and path construction typically denotes whether the motion is upward, downward or remains at (more or less) the same height.

a-lótti **ɔll.át** **ʊɔ** **ʈɔ-rɔk**
 CONJ.PERS-Lótti run:DEPPRFV descend:DEPINCOMPL at-well

and Lotti ran down to the well

Ad e) as a complement of ʌɾa ‘refuse, insist’, ma ‘know’, ɔmmâ ‘not know’, ɔkárənnɔ ‘let, leave, allow’

The verbs ʌɾa ‘refuse, insist’, ma ‘know’, ɔmmâ ‘not know’ and ɔkárənnɔ ‘let, leave, allow’ can take a Dependent Incompletive as a direct complement, without a complementizer. There is no reference on the Dependent Incompletive to the subject.

kálám **éŋ-k-í** **k-əɾá.t** **ɔkurɔ**
 pen DEM-C-NEARSP C-refuse:COMPL engrave:DEPINCOMPL

this pen refuses to write

kálám **éŋ-k-í** **k-íná** **ɔkurɔ**
 pen DEM-C-NEARSP C-know:INCOMPL engrave:DEPINCOMPL

this pen works

m-p-ɔmma **ɔkurɔ**
 1-C-know_not:INCOMPL engrave:DEPINCOMPL

I cannot write

Ad f) In negative commands (with ɔkárənnɔ ‘let, leave, allow’)

Commands with ɔkárənnɔ can immediately be followed by a Dependent Incompletive. The construction functions as a prohibitive:

kəɾənn.ɪ **ɔpélle**
 let:IMP fear:DEPINCOMPL

don’t be afraid!

n-ɔkárənnɔ **ɔŋɔkɔ**
 2A-let:DEPINCOMPL rest:DEPINCOMPL

don’t rest! (to plural addressee)

Ad g) with a pronoun clitic expressing a mild command to ‘you (PLUR)’; with a hortative pronoun expressing an obligation or duty of a first person

Commands to a second person plural consist of one of the variants of the second person plural addressee pronoun (see 6.5) and a Dependent Incompletive. They are somewhat less pressing than Imperatives:

n-úrəkɔ

2A:get_up:DEPINCOMPL

stand up! (to plural addressee)

Commands to first persons, ‘I and you’ or ‘we (INCL)’, consist of a hortative pronoun (see 6.6) and a dependent incomplete stem:

tír-éś

HRT12-go:DEPINCOMPL

kéccôk

market

let us go to the market

Ad h) in constructions with fronted question words and in non-subject focus constructions with akka ‘that’

Dependent Incompletives are used in non-subject focus constructions, whether non-contrastive, with a content question word (first example below), or contrastive (second example below). More examples can be found in the chapters on question words and focus.

ŋín-ɬa

what-Q

akka

that

ɪn-ɔkkôt

1A-do:DEPINCOMPL

what should we do? / what can we do?

ɔ-śk

PERS-3

akka

that

ɔ-rɔn

PERS-12a

ɔnáne

bring_to:DEPINCOMPL

ɲorô

asida

he is the one to whom we bring asida

akka can also be combined with an Incompletive verb, as in the next sentence, which is structurally very similar to the previous sentence:

kəllán akka ɔ-kukkú p-ípɪnɛ aôn
 old_woman that PERS-Kukku C-collect_for:INCOMPL. bees
 it is for the old woman that Kukku collects honey

Ad i) in non-subject relative constructions (see 11.2), topicalizing cleft constructions (11.2.4), and clauses introduced by the locative relative ná (11.3)

Topicalizing cleft constructions and non-subject relative constructions (with or without the restrictor í-) are introduced by the copula C-á. In the sentence introduced by the copula an incomplete verb occurs in the form of a Dependent Incomplete. The first example shows a non-subject relative construction; the second example a topicalizing cleft, which forms a full (topic- or theme-focussed) sentence (see 11.2.4).

aɾəpu i-a ɔ-un ɔɾəkɔ
 things RES-(C-)COP PERS-1 eat:DEPINCOMPL
 the things which I eat

kəpa k-a ɬok ɔɾəkɔ
 meat C-COP dog eat:DEPINCOMPL
 the meat will be eaten by the dog

A clause introduced by the locative relative **ná** ‘where’ can have a Dependent Incomplete verb:

na ɕɪŋkɪ ɔɾɔŋkɔ
 where:REL sun disappear:DEPINCOMPL
 where the sun sets / (in) the west

More details on relative constructions are provided in chapter 11.

12.5.5. The Past

Form of the Past

Pasts consists of a concord and the past TAM-stem:

Past = C + past TAM-stem

Past stems are segmentally marked in the TAM2 position: a past marker replaces the final vowel of the verb or is attached after it. Pasts are further marked by a special tone pattern.

Verbs which end in **ɔ(t)** are marked differently for Past than verbs which end in **ɛ(t)** or **a(t)**. In verbs which end in **ɔ** or **ɔt**, the final **ɔ** or **ɔt** is replaced by **aṭɛ**. Verbs which end in **ɛ** or **a** add a past marker **kaṭɛ**. In verbs which end in **ɛt** or **at**, the final **t** is replaced by **kaṭɛ**. In Passive derivations of **ɛ(t)** and **a(t)** final verbs ending, respectively, in **ɛkɔ(t)** and **akɔ(t)** final **ɔ(t)** is not replaced by **aṭɛ** but by **akaṭɛ**. This has the effect of disambiguating the Pasts of underived verb and those of their Passive derivations ending in **kɔ(t)**, for example:

imma ‘see’ C-**immakáṭɛ**
immakɔ ‘be seen’ C-**immakákáṭɛ** (instead of C-**immakáṭɛ**)

The Pasts of Locative-applicative derivations (ending in **t**) and their underived counterparts are, on the other hand, neutralized.

The Past imposes a tone pattern on the verb that is independent of the tones of the verb. A Past has a H-tone on the second mora, if there are three morae, and on the third mora if there are more than three. The Past does not generate a H-tone on a following constituent.

Table 53 Pasts

<i>final segment(s) of the verb</i>	<i>segmental marking of the past TAM-stem</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Past</i>
ɔ, ɔt two morae	aṭɛ H on 2nd mora	ɪɔ ‘die’ ɪɔt ‘find’	C- ɪ.áṭɛ C- ɪ.áṭɛ
ɔ, ɔt three or more morae	aṭɛ H on 3rd mora	ɔkɪɔ ‘cut’ ɔṭórakɔ ‘stretch oneself’	C- ɔkɪ.áṭɛ C- ɔṭorák.aṭɛ

ε, ετ a, at	kaṭe, kaṭe H on 3rd mora	ere ‘speak’ eret ‘talk about’ ɔkɔ́ta ‘look’ ɔkwáriccat ‘search’	C-ere.káṭe C-ere.káṭe C-ɔkɔ́ta.káṭe C-ɔkwáricca.káṭe
Passives ending in eko(t), ako(t)	akaṭe H on 3rd mora	immako ‘be seen’ etiéko ‘be made cool, be blessed’	C-immak.ákaṭe C-etiék.akaṭe

An example illustrating that no H tone comes on the next constituent:

pul p-i.áṭe pəlla (*< iɔt*)
 person C-find:PST cat
 the man found the cat

Benefactive verbs inflect somewhat differently. In verbs ending in **ne**, the Past is formed by replacing **ne** by **anṭet**. In verbs ending in **ene** or **ane**, the final **ne** changes into **kantet**. In verbs ending in **inṭet** the **i** is replaced by **a**. In verbs ending in **enṭet** or **anṭet**, **ka** is inserted before the final **nṭet**. Like in non-benefactive verbs, the difference between non-t-final and t-final verbs is neutralized in the Past.

Tonally, Past of benefactive verbs behave the same as other Past verbs: there is a H-tone on the second mora in case of three morae, and on the third mora if the past stem is longer.

Table 54 Past of Benefactive derivations

<i>ending and length of the Benefactive derivation</i>	<i>marking of the past TAM-stem</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Past</i>
ne, inṭet three morae	anṭet H on 2nd mora	ɔɣwíne ‘sing for’ ipmṭet ‘dig for’	C-ɔɣw.ánṭet C-ip.ánṭet
ne, inṭet more than three morae	anṭet H on 3rd mora	ɔrékine ‘work for’	C-ɔrék.ánṭet

ɛ.nɛ, ɛ.n̩tɛt a.nɛ, a.n̩tɛt three morae	kan̩tɛt kan̩tɛt , H on 2nd mora	ɛrɛnɛ ‘talk to’ ɛrɛn̩tɛt ‘talk to sb about’ ɔnánɛ ‘bring to sb’	C-ɛrɛ.kán̩tɛt C-ɛrɛ.kán̩tɛt C-ɔna.kán̩tɛt
ɛ.nɛ, ɛ.n̩tɛt a.nɛ, a.n̩tɛt more than three morae	kan̩tɛt kan̩tɛt H on 3rd mora	ɔkéccɛnɛ ‘cut for (PLUR)’ ɔkwáríccan̩tɛt ‘search sth for’	C-ɔkéccé.kan̩tɛt C-ɔkwarícca.kan̩tɛt

Some examples:

< **apintet** ‘open for somebody’

ᵛ-kakká p-aṇántet ukul kəṭát

PERS-Kakka C-open_for:PST child door

Kakka opened the door for the child

< ὀρέκινε ‘work for somebody’

ul w-ɔrekántét púl í-p-ə̀rɨk

people C-work_for:PST person RES-C-big

the people worked for the big man

A few verbs have an irregular Past:

Table 55 Irregular Pasts

<i>verb</i>	<i>irregular Past</i>	<i>type of irregularity</i>
ао ‘come’	C-akkakáŋte	suppletive form
aine ‘come to’	C-akkakánŋet	suppletive form
еџ ‘go’	C-ɔŋkáŋte	suppletive form
ɔíne ‘go to’	C-ɔŋ.kánŋet	suppletive form
ɔɾəkɔ ‘eat’	C-ɔɾək.káŋte	doubling of k
ɔɾəkɔt ‘eat at’	C-ɔɾək.káŋte	doubling of k
ɔɾəkíne ‘eat for’	C-ɔɾək.kánŋet	doubling of k
ɔɾəkínɛt ‘eat for at’	C-ɔɾək.kánŋet	doubling of k
ɛŋŋet ‘give’	C-ɛɛ.káŋte / C-ɛ.káŋte	replacement of ŋŋet by the past ending

Use of the Past

The Past is a TAM which in principle demands a context. It is not easily used in an isolated expression, since it has no implications for the situation at the time of the speech act. Pasts describe actions or events which have taken place before the moment of speech, but otherwise bear no relation to the time of speech. Pasts typically need a time anchor, which is usually set by a Completive or Past Completive verb preceding the Past verb at some place in the discourse. The Past refers to an action or event in its entirety, without drawing attention to aspectual notions such as completion or result. The sentence below describes how the speaker felt at the moment that he found a lost goat. The sentence gives no information about his feelings at the time of speech: he may, or may not be still happy about it.

an-ákka m-p-ɪt.é m-p-ɔpɪrá.káʔé nɔ-kâ
 and-when 1-C-find:COMPL 1-C-become_good:PST on-body
 and when I found it, I was happy

I call these verbs Past and not Perfective because, unlike the Incompletive and the Completive, they refer to a moment that is necessarily anterior to the time of speech.

In the examples below a Completive verb provides the time anchor for the Past verb.

mən.ákka m-p-aa.t ɪccɪk k-úŋ ana k-kw-ɪrr.áʔe (< ɪrrɔ)
 when 1-C-come:COMPL near C-POSS3 and 3-C-jump:PST
 when I had come near him, he jumped

ɔ-lɔʔti p-ɔká.t tuan ana k-kw-ɔʔəkək.áʔé ŋúʔú (< ɔʔəkɔ)
 PERS-Lɔʔti C-be:COMPL home and 3-C-eat:PST asida
 Lotti was at home and ate asida

ʊʔɪt w-ɔkɪccé.t ŋurak ana w-ɔkkw.áʔe (< ɔkkwɔt)
 young_men C-chase:COMPL monkey and PRO.C-kill:PST
 the young men had chased the monkey and (then) they killed it

Pasts can be used in non-subject relative clauses (see 11.2), they were at least given in elicitation. Their nature of drawing attention to the action itself, however, tends to conflict with the information structure of the sentence as a whole. The example below aims to provide information about the ‘things’, stating that they were many, not about what the man did. A Completive would be better:

(?) **atəpu** **ɪ-a** **púl** **p-əkɛr.átɛ** **w-əká.t** **w-əppót**
 things RES-(C-)COP person C-trade:PST C-be:COMPL C-many

the things that the man traded were many

12.5.6. The Dependent Perfective

Form of the Dependent Perfective

Dependent Perfectives consist of the dependent perfective TAM-stem:

Dependent Perfective = dependent perfective TAM-stem

The dependent perfective TAM-stem is segmentally marked in the TAM2 position and has the basic tone pattern of the verb. Like the Dependent Incompletive, the Dependent Perfective can be directly preceded by a lexical or pronominal subject (the latter can be a free pronoun or a clitic).

Unlike the Past, the Dependent Perfective generates a H-tone on the following constituent, unless it is based on a verb with a final falling tone.

Table 56 Dependent Perfectives

<i>final segment(s) of the verb</i>	<i>marking of the dep. perf. TAM-stem</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Dep. Perfective</i>
ɔ, ɔt	at	ɔkɪ ‘cut’ ɪt ‘find’ əkérɔ ‘trade’ ɔllɔ ‘run’	ɔkɪ.at + H ɪ.at + H əkér.at + H ɔll.ât

ε, ετ a, at	ε.kat a.kat	ερε ‘speak’ ερετ ‘talk about’ ɔkɔ́ʈa ‘look’ ɔkwáriccat ‘search’	ερε.kat + H ερε.kat + H ɔkɔ́ʈa.kat + H ɔkwáricca.kat + H
----------------	----------------	---	---

In the table below, Dependent Perfective are contrasted to Pasts. Whereas Past forms end in **(k)áʈe**, Dependent Perfectives end in **(k)at**. The table below contrasts Dependent Perfectives and Pasts.

Table 57 Dependent Perfectives and Pasts contrasted

<i>verb</i>	<i>Dep. Perfective</i>	<i>Past</i>
ɔkɪɔ ‘cut’	ɔkɪ.at + H	C-ɔkɪ.áʈe
ɪɔt ‘find’	ɪ.at + H	C-ɪ.áʈe
ɔkéɪɔ ‘trade’	ɔkéɪ.at + H	C-ɔkéɪ.áʈe
ɔllɔ ‘run’	ɔll.át	C-ɔll.áʈe
ερε ‘speak’	ερε.kat + H	C-ερε.káʈe
ερετ ‘talk about’	ερε.kat + H	C-ερε.káʈe
ɔkɔ́ʈa ‘look’	ɔkɔ́ʈa.kat + H	C-ɔkɔ́ʈa.káʈe
ɔkwáriccat ‘search’	ɔkwáricca.kat + H	C-ɔkwáricca.káʈe

The irregular Pasts relate to the Dependent Perfectives in the same way:

Table 58 Irregular Pasts and Dependent Perfectives contrasted

<i>verb</i>	<i>Dep. Perfective</i>	<i>Past</i>
aɔ ‘come’	akkakat + H	C-akkakáʈe
aɪne ‘come to’	akkakanʈet + H	C-akkakánʈet
εɔ ‘go’	ɔɪŋkat + H	C-ɔɪŋkáʈe
ɔɪne ‘go to’	ɔɪŋ.kanʈet + H	C-ɔɪŋ.kánʈet
ɔɾəkɔ ‘eat’	ɔɾək.kât	C-ɔɾək.káʈe
ɔɾəkɔt ‘eat at’	ɔɾək.kât	C-ɔɾək.káʈe
ɔɾəkíne ‘eat for’	ɔɾək.kánʈet + H	C-ɔɾək.kánʈet
ɔɾəkínɛt ‘eat for at’	ɔɾək.kánʈet + H	C-ɔɾək.kánʈet
εʈɛt ‘give’	εε.kât / ε.kât	C-εε.káʈe / C-ε.káʈe

The Dependent Perfective and the Past of a benefactive verb are segmentally identical, but tonally different. Like other Dependent Perfectives, Dependent Perfectives of benefactive verbs have the basic tones of the verb.

Table 59 Dependent Perfectives of Benefactive derivations

<i>ending of Benefactive derivation</i>	<i>marking of the dep. perfective TAM-stem</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Dep. Perfective</i>
ne, ntet	antet	ɔŋw.íne ‘sing for’ ip.intet ‘dig for’	ɔŋw.ántet + H ip.antet + H
ɛ.ne, ɛ.ntet a.ne, a.ntet	ɛ.kantet a.kantet	ere.ne ‘talk to’ ere.ntet ‘talk to sb about’ ɔpírane ‘thank’ ɔkwáriccantet ‘search sth for’	ere.kantet + H ere.kantet + H ɔpíra-kantet + H ɔkwáricca-kantet + H

The table below contrasts Dependent Perfectives and Pasts of benefactive verbs.

Table 60 Dependent Perfectives and Pasts of Benefactive derivations

<i>verb</i>	<i>Dep. Perfective</i>	<i>Past</i>
ɔŋwíne ‘sing for’ ipintet ‘dig for’	ɔŋw-ántet + H ip-antet + H	C-ɔŋw-ántet C-ip-ántet
erene ‘talk to’ erentet ‘talk to sb. about’ ɔpírane ‘thank’ ɔkwáriccantet ‘search for’	ere-kantet + H ere-kantet + H ɔpíra-kantet + H ɔkwáricca-kantet + H	C-ere-kántet C-ere-kántet C-ɔpírá-kantet C-ɔkwarícca-kantet

Absence of concord

Like Dependent Incompletives, Dependent Perfectives cannot be preceded by a concord. Compare the Past in the first example below, with the Dependent Perfectives in the second and third:

ṭmcccṭ ṭ-aṭəntá.kəṭe

old_man

C-dream:PST

the old man dreamt

... a-ṭmcccṭ aṭəntakat

CONJ-old_man

dream:DEPPRFV

... and (then) the man dreamt

... a-kw-áṭəntakat

CONJ-3-dream:DEPPRFV

... and (then) s/he dreamt

Use of the Dependent Perfective

The Dependent Perfective is the dependent counterpart of the Past. I call it Dependent Perfective, because it does not only denote actions or events that happened in the past, but also actions or events that are still to happen at the moment of speech or reference. While the Dependent Incompletive in a verbal complex typically denotes an action that forms part of a larger event, the Dependent Perfective typically denotes a consecutive action: an action that follows upon another in time.

The Dependent Perfective is used in the following environments:

- a) a clause introduced by the conjunctive particle **á** expressing ‘and, while’;
- b) a clause introduced by the subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that, in order to’;
- c) As a second command coordinated through **ană** ‘and’ with an Imperative.

A verb in Dependent Perfective TAM can furthermore be part of a complex TAM with the auxiliary verb C-**arəkât** ‘as always’. More

commonly, complex verb constructions involve the dependent perfective TAM-stem as part of a larger word with one or more auxiliaries. These cases are discussed in the sections on auxiliaries.

Ad a) Clauses introduced by the conjunctive particle á ‘and, while’

Attestations of the conjunctive particle á ‘and, while’ introducing a clause with the Dependent Perfective are abundant. The first verb, which sets the time anchor, is usually in Completive TAM (see 12.5.7). The Dependent Perfective is typically used for telling what happened next. The sentence below states that the man saw the hyena in the well, but does not present this as the purpose for which the man was taken along; it is just something that happened next.

m-p-ɔ̃nekó.t pól a-p-ɔ̃t-ɔ̃kə́ta.kat ɲaŋkór i-rɔ́k
 1-C-take:COMPL person CONJ-C-go-look_at:DEPPRFV hyena in-well

I took the man along and (then) he saw the wild dog in the well

á + Dependent Perfective is typically used in narratives, expressing consecutive actions or events as in English ‘and then ... and then ... and then ...’. In the example below, **mɔ̃nɔ** ‘until’ is followed by the conjunctive particle á (realized with a H-tone through tone bridge) and a Dependent Perfective. Pronominal **p** refers to **papɛn** ‘that thing’ (< **papɔ p-ɛn**), which itself refers to the leopard (**papɔkɪra** < **papɔ p-ɔ-kɪra** ‘thing of the forest’):

(< ɔ̃tɔmɔt ; < ɔ̃néɛmɔ ; < ɪɔ)

a-pápɔkɪra ɔ̃tɔm.at t̥ɔ̃mɔccɔ
 CONJ-leopard attack:DEPPRFV old_man
a-t̥ɔ̃mɔccɔ ɔ̃néɛm.at kaɬok i-t̥ɔ̃n t̥-ɔ̃-pá-p-ɛn
 CONJ-old_man press:DEPPRFV spear in-mouth C-of-thing-C-DEM
mónɔ á-p-í.at
 until CONJ-PRO-die:DEPPRFV

and the leopard attacked the old man, and the old man pressed the spear into the mouth of that thing (the leopard), until it (the leopard) died (fr. written story)

The examples below show that in some environments the conjunctive **á** + Dependent Perfective and **ană** ‘and’ + Past can be used alternatively. **á** cannot be combined with a Past, nor can **ană** be combined with a Dependent Perfective. In both sentences Lottu was not at home for the purpose of eating asida: it is just something that happened (the eating of asida as a purpose would be expressed with the particle **â** and a Dependent Incompletive).

ɔ-lɔtti p-ɔká.t toan a-kw-ɔʔəkk.at ɲurû

PERS-Lottu C-be:COMPL home CONJ-3-eat:DEPPRFV asida

Lottu was at home and he ate asida

ɔ-lɔtti p-ɔká.t toan ana k-kw-ɔʔəkk.áʔé ɲurû

PERS-Lottu C-be:COMPL home and 3-C-eat:PST asida

Lottu was at home and he ate asida

The conjunctive particle with a Dependent Perfective verb can also be used as the second command after an Imperative. The use of the Dependent Perfective in the example below conveys that the washing must be done after the sweeping. **ană** + Past verb is not an option here.

ɔlla cɪk nɔ-ppan a-íme.kat ərét

sweep:IMP VREF on-house CONJ-wash:DEPPRFV cloths

sweep the room and then wash the clothes!

*Ad b) Clauses introduced by the subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that, in order to’*

The use of **â** + Dependent Perfective in the example below conveys explicitly that the telling is regarded as a consecutive event:

ámmá k-kw-éʔ.t á-kw-ɪʔe.kat kín ittĩ ...

if 3-C-go:COMPL SUBJ-3-tell:DEPPRFV O3A that

when s/he has arrived (lit.: has gone), let him/her then tell them (that) ...

Dependent Perfectives occur in fewer environments than Dependent Incompletives. Their use is restricted by the notion of consecutiveness they convey. A Dependent Perfective cannot occur as the second verb in a sequence expressing (manner of) motion and path, nor as a complement of *əɽa* ‘refuse’, *ma* ‘know’, *ɔmmâ* ‘not know’ or *ɔkórənnɔ* ‘let, leave, allow’. It does not directly follow the conjunction words *mɔnɔ* ‘until’ and *məna* ‘until, then’. However, constructions of *mɔnɔ* ‘until’ and *məna* ‘until’ followed by the conjunctive particle *á* and a Dependent Perfective are abundant.

12.5.7. The Completive

Form of the Completive

Completives consists of a concord and the completive TAM-stem:

Completive = C + completive TAM-stem

Completives are segmentally marked in the TAM2 position. Vowel-final verbs get a final *t*, verbs which end in *t* change into *ɽe*, and *t*-final benefactives remain segmentally unchanged.

The Completive imposes a tone pattern on the verb which is independent of the basic tones of the verb, but which has some correlation with the final vowel of the verb and the length of the verb (counted in morae). The tendencies are described below.

Bimoraic and trimoraic verbs which end in *ɔ* have *t*-final Completives with either a final falling tone or a final H-tone. An apparently deviating Completive is C-*ɔŋɔ́kɔt* (< *ɔŋɔkɔ* ‘rest’). An explanation would be that this verb underlyingly has four morae. This is supported by the Incompletive of this verb, which is not *C-*áŋɔkɔ*, but C-*áŋɔkɔ*.

Bimoraic and trimoraic verbs which end in *a* or *ɛ* have *t*-final Completives with a final falling tone. A deviating case is the Completive of the pluractional verb *ɔkálɛ* ‘shave (PLUR)’, related to

Completives of vowel-final verbs with four or more morae get the High tone on the third mora.

Completives based on a trimoraic or longer verb ending in *t* have, in most cases, a H-tone on the third (non-final) mora.

The Compleatives of the verbs **ɔɾəkɔt** ‘eat at’ and **ɔŋkikkəɾɔt** (also **ɔŋkikkəɾɔt**) ‘squeeze (PLUR)’ deviate from the main patterns. They are rare cases of, respectively, a HL contour on the fourth mora (C-**ɔɾəkɔtê**) and a H-tone on the second (C-**ɔŋkikkəɾɔtɛ**).

Table 61 Completives

<i>shape and length of verb</i>	<i>completive marking</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>Completive</i>
bi- or trimoraic, ɔ-final	ɔ̌-t	ɔɾɔ 'land' ʊnɔ 'build' ɔkkwɔ̌ 'hit' ɔcómɔ 'collect' ɔɾəkɔ̌ 'eat'	C-ɔɾɔ̌-t C-ʊnɔ̌-t C-ɔkkwɔ̌-t C-ɔcómɔ̌-t C-ɔɾəkɔ̌-t
bi- or trimoraic, ɔ-final	ɔ̌-t	ɔɾɔ 'open' ɔllɔ̌ 'run' akkarɔ̌ 'call' ɔtátɔ̌ 'fight'	C-ɔɾɔ̌-t C-ɔllɔ̌-t C-akkarɔ̌-t C-ɔtátɔ̌-t

bi- or trimoraic, a- or ε-final	â-t ê-t	imma ‘see’ rama ‘be(come) hungry’ ɔʔəlla ‘be(come) weak’ ille ‘die (PLUR)’ ɔkɪccɛ ‘chase’ ɔkê ‘shave’	C-immâ-t C-ramâ-t C-ɔʔəllâ-t C-illê-t C-ɔkɪccê-t C-ɔkê-t
four morae or more, vowel-final	-t, H on third mora	apəɾɪlakɔ ‘hang’ ɔcɪmittɔ ‘advise’ ɔkəʔaccɛ ‘watch’	C-apəɾɪlakɔ-t C-ɔcɪmittɔ-t C-ɔkəʔaccɛ-t
bimoraic, ɔt-final	ɔ-tê	ɪɔt ‘find’ ɔkkwɔt ‘kill’	C-ɪɔt-ê C-ɔkkwɔt-ê
bimoraic, ending in at or et	á-tɛ é-tɛ	ittat ‘become fat’ ɔppêt ‘fill’	C-ittát-ɛ C-ɔppét-ɛ
trimoraic or longer, t-final	-tɛ, H-tone on third mora	ɔɾiat ‘become red’ ɔnəkket ‘put down’ ɔkwárəttikɔt ‘recall’	C-ɔɾiát-ɛ C-ɔnəkkét-ɛ C-ɔkwárəttikɔt-ɛ

The Completive does not generate a H-tone on a following constituent, as can be seen from example below.

pul **p-ɔkwarɪccaɪ.ɛ** **pəlla** (< ɔkwarɪccat)
 person C-search:COMPL cat
 the man has looked for the cat

The Completive is marked in Benefactive verbs which end in **-ɪnɛ**, **-ɛnɛ** or **-anɛ** through addition of a final **t** and a tone pattern which is different from other **ɛ**-final verbs. A H-tone surfaces on the second mora when the Completive has three morae, and on the third mora when the Completive is longer.

Completives based on verbs ending in **-ɪntɛt**, **-ɛntɛt** or **-antɛt** (Benefactive + Locative-applicatives derivations) are only tonally marked. Here too, the H-tone surfaces on the second mora in case of three morae, and on the third in case of four or more. In some cases the result is identical with the tones of the citation form.

Table 62 Completives of Benefactive verbs

<i>verb</i>	<i>ending and length of verb</i>	<i>completive marking</i>	<i>Completive</i>
erene ‘speak to’	vowel-final, trimoraic	H-tone on 2nd mora, final t	C-eréne-t
erentet ‘speak to sb. about’ akkintet ‘do for’	t-final, trimoraic	H-tone on 2nd mora	C-eréntet C-akkintet
ɔrékine ‘work for’ ɔɔ́kine ‘eat for’ ɔpíraɛ ‘thank sb.’	vowel-final, four morae or longer	H-tone on 3rd mora, final t	C-ɔrékine-t C-ɔɔ́kine-t C-ɔpíraɛ-t
ɔkwáriccantet ‘search for’	t-final, four morae or longer	H-tone on 3rd mora	C-ɔkwáriccantet

A few verbs have an irregular Completive, though in the first case below one might also say that it is rather the verb stem **ɔ** that is irregular, since usually adjacent **a** and **ɔ** assimilate:

Table 63 Irregular Completives

<i>verb</i>	<i>Completive</i>	<i>irregularity</i>
ɔ ‘come’	C-aá-t	change of final ɔ to a
et̚et̚ ‘give’	C-ét̚et̚	resemblance to benefactive verbs ending in int̚et̚ , ent̚et̚ or ant̚et̚ as to retaining the same segmental shape, but different tones

Meaning and use of the Completive

The Completive basically expresses that the action or event has just been completed: it has just stopped or ceased to occur. The second example has a pluractional verb which translates here as an habitual:

ɲokul ɲ-ɔ́tattɔ̌.t (**< ɔ́táttɔ̌**)
 children C-fight:COMPL
 the children have fought (but they have stopped)

ɔ̌-lɔ́ccɔ̌ p-ɔ́kǎkɛ.t ul (**< ɔ́kǎkɛ**)
 PERS-Lɔ́ccɔ̌ C-shave.PLUR:COMPL people
 Lɔ́ccɔ̌ used to shave people (but he has stopped)

The Completive often implies a resulting state:

m-p-ɔ́ccɔ̌.t kǎɾan itti ɔ̌-nɛnnɪ (**< ɔ́ccɔ̌**)
 1-C-receive:COMPL name that PERS-Nɛnnɪ
 my name is Nɛnnɪ (lit. I have received the name Nɛnnɪ)

ɬɪɾɔ̌ ɬ-ɔ́ɾɔ̌.t nɔ̌-máɪt (**< ɔ́ɾɔ̌**)
 mould C-land:COMPL on-beans
 there is mould on the beans (lit. mould has landed on the beans)

m-p-ɔ́ccɔ̌.t cik (**< ɔ́ccɔ̌**)
 1-C-receive:COMPL VREF
 I am late (lit.: I have taken time)

l-ɛ́kkɔ̌.t (**< ɛ́kkɔ̌**)
 PRO.C-fit:COMPL
 enough!

The action expressed by the Completive is not necessarily fully completed. In the following example it is just a period of eating that has passed by:

akka ɔ̌-kín ɬ-ɔ́ɾǎkɔ̌.t ɲuɾú pɔ́ccók
 when PERS-3A C-eat:COMPL asida for_some_time
a-kw-ɔ́mɛ.kat̩-ɔ́k itti ant-ɔ́nɔ̌t
 CONJ-3-tell:DEPPRFV-O3 that can:DEPINCOMPL-taste:DEPINCOMPL

when they had been eating the asida for some time, he said to him, “Please taste it (the sauce)” (App. IV, 25-26)

In the following expression, commonly said upon leaving, the Completive refers to a state in the immediate future:

m-p-εῶ.t (**< εῶ**)

1-C-go:COMPL

I am gone (i.e. I am leaving now)

Completives of (inchoative) verbs often have a stative interpretation:

m-p-ᾰκίῃ.t **ana** **m-p-iamâ.t** (**< ᾰκίῃ, < iama**)

1-C-become_tired:COMPL

and

1-C-become_hungry:COMPL

I am tired and I am hungry

This is especially clear in the following example, where the Completive verb does not imply that the child was not fat before:

υkul **w-ittât.ε** (**< ittât**)

child

C-become_fat:COMPL

the child is fat/healthy

In context, however, the Completive of an (inchoative) verb may also have a changed-state interpretation:

αῖρεψ **w-ᾰῖῃ.ῥε** **ι-παῖ-κ-ῖν** (**< ᾰῖῃ**)

things

C-become_red_at:COMPL

in-sibling-C-of:ABS

the fruits have become ripe between their siblings (i.e. between other fruits)

Completives denoting a state can function syntactically in the same way as adjectives, for example with an auxiliary of ‘be’ denoting a future state, or with a negated auxiliary of ‘be’ negating a state. The examples below contrast clauses with tense/aspect and negation expressed on the main verb with clauses where tense/aspect and negation are marked on the auxiliary (as would be the case in an adjectival construction):

υkul **w-a.κίῃ**

child

C-become_tired:INCOMPL

the child will get tired

ʊkʊl **w-a.ka** **w-ɔkɪnâ.t**
 child C-be:INCOMPL C-tired:COMPL

the child will be tired

mart **m-a.kónnn-ekkɔ**
 beans C-NEG-fit:DEPCOMPL

the beans are not enough

mart **m-a.kónnn-êkkɔ**
 beans C-NEG-fit:DEPINCOMPL

the beans will not be enough

mart **m-ɔká.t** **m-a.kónnn-ekkɔ**
 beans C-be:COMPL C-NEG-fit:DEPCOMPL

the beans were not enough

mart **m-a.kónnn-ɔká** **m-ékkɔ.t**
 beans C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL C-fit:COMPL

the beans are not enough

mart **m-a.kónnn-ɔka** **m-ékkɔ.t**
 beans C-NEG-be:DEPINCOMPL C-fit:COMPL

the beans will not be enough

mart **m-ɔká.t** **m-á.kónnn-ɔká** **m-ékkɔ.t**
 beans C-be:COMPL C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL C-fit:COMPL

the beans were not enough

mart **m-a.ka** **m-êkkɔ**
 beans C-be:INCOMPL C-fit:INCOMPL

the beans may be enough (at some specific occasion which is still to come, for example a party, there may be enough beans (it is not sure))

mart **m-a.ka** **m-ékkɔ.t**
 beans C-be:INCOMPL C-fit:COMPL

the beans will be enough (at some specific occasion which is still to come, for example a party, there will (surely) be enough beans)

mart m-êkkə

beans C-fit:INCOMPL

the beans will be enough (for example upon buying a certain amount: this amount is all we need)

mart m-a.ɪk m-êkkə

beans C-be:PR C-fit:INCOMPL

the beans are turning out to be enough (for example while distributing portions to a group of people)

States of mind, emotional states and some sensory perceptions tend to be expressed with a Completive:

m-p-əŋəʔ.é itti ŋ-kw-ântán

1-C-like:COMPL that 2-C-come:INCOMPL

I want you to come

m-p-əʔá.t

1-C-refuse:COMPL

I don't want / no thanks (for example as a refusal of more food)

m-p-əpɪrá.t nɔ́-kâ

1-C-become_good:COMPL on-body

I am happy / I am grateful

m-p-əccɪkɔ́ʔ.ɛ

1-C-hear:COMPL

I understand / I hear / I have heard it

Also a state of 'resembling' takes a Completive:

ʔ-ʔ-úŋkwɔ́.t ŋín-ʔa

PRO-C-resemble:COMPL what-Q

what does it look like? (reference is to the lion, ʔɛpa)

In narratives, the Completive is typically used in backgrounded phrases, whereas the main action tends to involve a Past or

Dependent Perfective. The Completive can refer to a moment in the past, in the present or in the (relative) future. Some examples:

mən.ákka k-kw-óná.t ɲáák

when 3-C-bring:COMPL oil

a-kw-íp.anɬet ʔakəɽok ɪ-ʊɽəccô

CONJ-3-dig_for:DEPPRFV chicken in-feathers

after s/he had brought the oil, s/he applied it between the feathers of the chicken

akka k-kw-áá.t tón-é̃

that 3-C-come:COMPL HRT1.2A-go:DEPINCOMPL

now that s/he has arrived, let us go

ámma ɔ-nón ʔ-ɔccɪkɔʔ.e lɔn ɪ-ɔ-ʔɽák

if PERS-2A C-hear:COMPL words C-of-war

á-nn-ɔkəɽənnɔ ɔpəlle

SUBJ-2A-let:DEPINCOMPL be_afraid:DEPINCOMPL

when you hear about war, do not be afraid

Completives are also used in a number of environments requiring the dependent counterparts of the Incompletive and/or the Past. One such environment is the conjunctive particle **á** ‘and, while’. The particle can precede a Completive verb:

... a-kw-ímma.kat ɕɪpɪt á-c-c-óná.t cɪl

CONJ-3-see:PST ant CONJ-PRO-C-bring:COMPL grain_of_sorghum

and s/he saw the ant (just) having brought a grain of sorghum

The following example has the combination **akkă ... á** ‘when ... then’:

akka ɔ-ɾɪt ʔ-erét-ɔk a-k-kw-íɔ.t n.tít

that PERS-12 C-speak_about:INCOMPL-O3 CONJ-3-C-die:COMPL from:ABS

when we talked about him, he had already been dead for some time

The next example contains two clauses with **á** and a Completive. The first sets the time for the event, the second presents the going to the

market as anterior to the events that are going to be told, not as already part of it:

... **a-caɾɪ** **c-én** **c-ɔká.t** **cɪk** **a-m-p-ɛɔ.t** **ɬallattá** ...
 CONJ-day C-DEM C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-1-C-go:COMPL market
 ... and that day I had gone to the market

Completives are used in non-subject relative constructions:

lɔn **ɪ-l-a** **ɬómɔccɔ** **ɬ-ɔlləkkéntét** **ká** **k-úŋ**
 words RES-C-COP old_man C-put_down_for:COMPL body C-POSS3
 things which the old man promised himself

k-kw-érekántet **imɪt** **lɔn** **áppík** **ɪ-l-a** **k-kw-ɔkkɔt.ɛ**
 3-C-speak_to_about:PST goat words all RES-C-COP 3-C-do:COMPL
 she spoke to the goat about everything she had done (fr. written story)

The Completive commonly occurs in constructions with fronted question words and **akka** ‘that’:

ŋín-ɬa **akka** **ɪn-ɬ-ɔkkɔt.ɛ** (**< ɔkkɔt**)
 what-Q that 1A-C-do:COMPL
 what have we done?

I did not find Completives in combination with the subjunctive particle **â** ‘so that, in order to’.

12.6. Auxiliaries and other special verbs – defective inflection

Verbs typically function as main verb and have six basic TAMs as described in the previous section. Some verbs, however, (also) function as auxiliary verb, or as both auxiliary and copular verb. Many of these verbs have a defective inflection. Verbs with a defective inflection typically have:

- just one form (in this case I only gloss its meaning)
- non-dependent and a dependent TAM-stem (in this case I add DEP in the gloss of the dependent TAM-stem)

- three TAM-stems which can be viewed as non-dependent incompleted (glossed as INCOMPL), dependent incompleted (glossed as DEPINCOMPL) and completive (glossed as COMPL)
- four TAM-stems. In addition to the three afore-mentioned stems, there is also an imperative TAM-stem (glossed as IMP)

Several of these verbs have a deviating phonological shape. All have specific tonal characteristics, though an underlying pattern can often not be assigned.

Auxiliary verbs precede the main verb, either as a separate word, or as part of the same word as the main verb. In constructions with more than one auxiliary, an auxiliary can also form a word with another auxiliary. Examples of combinations of auxiliaries of ‘be’ are given in 12.7.5, examples of other auxiliary combinations elsewhere in chapter 12, including 12.23.

The (reconstructed) auxiliary verb **arəka* ‘as always’, discussed in 12.14, has inflectional forms from which tonal phenomena on the main verb can be understood. The same tonal phenomena on main verbs are found in combination with some auxiliaries that synchronically lack revealing surface forms. In those cases I use **arəka* as model for the analysis.

The auxiliaries, to different degrees, display loss of inflectional marking, due to loss of segments and/or tonal changes. In several cases variant forms exist next to each other and in one case (the negation auxiliary) a process of loss of functionality of the inflectional marking is clearly in progress.

A few verbs with a defective inflectional paradigm function only as main verb. They are discussed in 12.21 and 12.22.

12.7. ɔkâ ‘be’

The six basic TAMs of ɔkâ ‘be’ are entirely regular. It has, however, an additional basic TAM, which no other verb has: the Present. This is the paradigm:

Imperative	ɔka
Present	C-a-ík
Incompletive	C-a.kâ
Dep. Incompletive	ɔkâ
Past	C-ɔka.káte
Dep. Perfective	ɔká.kat + H
Completive	C-ɔkâ.t

The dependent completive TAM-stem of ɔkâ is ɔká. Furthermore, there is a copula based on ɔkâ: C-á.

12.7.1. The copula and the Present

The copula consists of a concord and the segment **a**, and it can generate a H-tone on a following element. It cannot itself receive a high tone from a preceding element, unless through tone bridge, so that, as a monomoraic element, it can have a high or a rising tone. It has no prepausal realization, so that both options remain. In such cases I assign a high tone (see 3.8): C-á.

The Present of ‘be’ has the copula and a remnant of the vague reference particle **ɪk** as formatives: C-a-ík⁷¹. The Present functions as locative/existential verb and as auxiliary verb, and can also function as copular verb.

Before discussing (common) copula clauses and the TAMs of ‘be’ as copular verb, locative/existential, and auxiliary verb, some remarks about syntactic constructions in which the Present and the copula appear follow here.

Syntactic environments in which the Present of ‘be’ can be used

In section 12.5 of this chapter it was shown that in certain syntactic environments the dependent counterpart of the Incompletive (i.e. the Dependent Incompletive) is selected, and in certain, partly different

⁷¹ In glossed Lumun text, I write the Present of ‘be’ as C-a.ík, not glossing **ík** separately.

environments, the dependent counterpart of the Past (i.e. the Dependent Perfective). In some environments in which a dependent TAM is selected, a Completive can occur as well. Such environments also allow for use of the Present, irrespective of whether it functions as main verb or as (initial) auxiliary. Like the Completive, the Present lacks a dependent counterpart. These environments include:

- Clauses preceded by the conjunctive particle **á-**:

ṭomaccə	ṭ-a.ṛəkə	ṇuṛú	
old_man	C-eat:INCOMPL	asida	
á-ṭ-ṭ-á.ɪk	á-ṭ-íkkə	cɪk	nə.ppǎn
CONJ-PRO-C-be:PR	CONJ-PRO-sit:DEPINCOMPL	VREF	inside

the old man eats asida while remaining inside

- Cleft constructions with **akka** ‘that’:

ṇ-kw-ónṭa	akka	ṇ-kw-a.ɪk	cí.nán	ṇ-cɪk-akkómân
2-C-why	that	2-C-be:PR	where_you_are	with-LOC-since

why are you just still there?

Environments in which the copula is used

The copula C-**á** has already been introduced in chapter 11 on relative clauses. Preceded by the restrictor **í-**, C-**á** introduces a restrictive non-subject relative clause, without restrictor a non-restrictive non-subject relative clause. In section 11.2.4 it was shown that the copula functions in topic constructions. In such constructions C-**á** links a topicalized patient or instrument subject to what is stated about it (11.2.4). The use of C-**á** in common copula clauses is discussed here.

Common copula constructions

Common copula constructions, i.e. constructions of the type ‘X is Y’ with X and Y both being a noun phrase, make use of the copula. In case of a pronominal subject, the full pronoun, but also the clitic can be applied (second example below).

၁-နဲင် **ပ-ာ** **ပဲာ်** **ပ-မ**
 PERS-Nenni C-COP name_sharer C-my

Nenni is my name-sharer (i.e. Nenni and I have the same name)

၁-ဟ **ပ-ာ** **kwat** **ခဲ** / **၇-kw-a** **kwat** **ခဲ**
 PERS-2 C-COP stranger here 2-C-be:PR stranger here

you are a stranger here

In common copula constructions (not in other constructions with the copula), the copula can also be left out. Such verbless clauses do not allow for use of a pronoun clitic:

၁-ဟ **kwat** **ခဲ**

PERS-2 stranger here

you are a stranger here

12.7.2. 'Be' as copular verb

The TAMs of 'be', except the Present C-**ai**k, can be used as copular verbs in nominal copula constructions. For example:

နုတ် **န-ခါ** **ကုတ်** **ခ-ပပ**
 pigs C-be:COMPL crowd C-many

the pigs were a large herd (Mark 5:11)

လ **၇-၇-ခါ-ခါ** **ပု**
 words RES-C-NEG-let:DEPINCOMPL person

၇-ခါ **ပု** **၇-၇-ခါ** **၇-၇-ခါ**
 CONJ-PRO-be:DEPINCOMPL person like PRO-C-like:COMPL

things which do not allow a person to be the person s/he wants to be

'Be' as a copular verb has an inchoative counterpart **၇-ခါ** 'become':

ပု **၇-၇-ခါ** **၇-ခါ** **ပု** **၇-၇-ခါ**
 person DEM-C-NEARSP C-become:INCOMPL person RES-C-show:INCOMPL

this person will become a teacher

12.7.3. ‘Be’ in adjectival constructions

TAMs of ‘be’, including the Present, can be used in adjectival constructions. The copula (C-á) cannot be used in this environment.

attɪ ɔ-nɔn ʔ-a.ɪk ʔ-ɔpərɔt
 I_hope_that PERS-2A C-be:PR C-good
 I hope you (PL) are fine

ɪn-ʔ-ɔká.t ʔ-əɽapóruk
 1A-C-be:COMPL C-three
 we were three (i.e. there were three of us)

Referring to the present situation, the Present is often absent:

m-p-ɔpərɔt
 1-C-good
 I am fine

Other TAMs are more often stated explicitly. Yet, they too, can be absent. In the next example the TAM-interpretation of the adjectival predicate just follows from the preceding clause:

ɔ-kakká p-ɔnekɔ.t ɲəɽɪ ána ɲ-ɲ-ɪmmɪn
 PERS-Kakka C-take:COMPL water and PRO-C-heavy
 Kakka carried the water and it was heavy

The inchoative counterpart of ‘be’, **ɔʔákka** ‘become’, can be used in a construction with an adjective as well:

attɪ ɲ-kw-ɔʔəkká.t p-ɔpərɔt pá-p-ɔttê
 I_hope_that 2-C-become:COMPL C-good thing-C-little
 I hope you feel somewhat better? (lit.: I hope you have become good a little)

12.7.4. ‘Be’ as a locative or existential verb

In locative constructions, a TAM of ‘be’ is normally present:

ηαττəkκóλ η-á.ík nó-cénâ
 calabash(k.o.) C-be:PR on-grinding_table
 the calabash is on the grinding table

m-p-əká.t nə-ttək tórrô
 1-C-be:COMPL on-stone Lumun_country
 I was in Lumun country

A presentative clause with a locative constituent can contain the Present of ‘be’, but also be verbless:

m-p-a.ík cənέ / ɔ-ɔn cənέ
 1-C-be:PR here PERS-1 here
 I am here / here I am

In the absence of a locative phrase ‘be’ has an existential interpretation:

pul p-ɔ-nəppət p-a.ík ɪcat
 person C-of-Nəppət C-be:PR really
 the person of Nəppət really exists

Other TAMs than the Present, when used existentially, co-occur with the vague reference particule **cɪk** (see 15.2). An example is the typical opening line of a story:

caɾɪ c-əɾək c-əká.t cɪk ...
 day C-some C-be:COMPL VREF
 once upon a time ...

12.7.5. ‘Be’ as auxiliary verb

The Present, the Incompletive and the Completive of ‘be’ can function as auxiliaries in complex TAMs. Some of these TAMs contain, or can contain, the vague reference particle **cɪk**. In general, **cɪk** makes the hearer dwell a little longer at the action or situation presented. Some complex TAMs contain the conjunctive particle **á-**, in such cases the TAM involves clause chaining.

When used after the conjunctive particle **á-** (an environment where a dependent TAM is selected) the auxiliary of ‘be’ changes to its dependent form (if such a form is available) and the main verb is preceded by **á-** as well. For some verbs this will involve no change because the main verb is already preceded by **á-**, for others **á-** is added but the main verb itself does not change because it has no dependent counterpart, for again others added **á-** before the main verb changes it to its dependent counterpart.

Some complex TAMs with ‘be’ are the following (for ease of reference I have given some of them a name):

1. C-**aɪk** C-verb:INCOMPL, or C-**ak**-C-verb:INCOMPL (*Present Continuous*)
a-C-**aɪk** a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL (*Dependent Present Continuous*)
2. C-**aka** C-verb:INCOMPL (*Future Continuous*)
a-C-**ɔká** a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL (*Dependent Future Continuous*)
3. C-**ɔkát** a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL, or
C-**ɔkát** **cɪk** a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL (*Past Continuous*)
4. C-**ɔkát** C-verb:INCOMPL, or C-**ɔkát** **cɪk** C-verb:INCOMPL
5. C-**ɔkát** C-verb:COMPL, or C-**át**-C-verb:COMPL (*Past Completive*)
C-**ɔkát** a-PCL-C-verb:COMPL (*Dependent Past Completive*)

Ad. 1. Present Continuous:

C-**aɪk** C-verb:INCOMPL, or shortened:

C-**ak**-C-verb:INCOMPL

The Present Continuous consists of the Present of ‘be’ + Incompletive main verb: C-**aɪk** C-verb:INCOMPL. It describes an action or event that is going on at the time of speech or at the reference point in time:

m-p-a.ɪk

1-C-be:PR

I am grinding

p-a.kákɔ

C-grind:INCOMPL

ɔ-cɛccé

PERS-Cɛccé

Cɛccé is washing the bowls

p-á.ɪk

C-be:PR

p.íme

C-wash:INCOMPL

máttak

calabashes(k.o.)

The Present Continuous is also used for expressing that an action is about to begin at the moment of speech or at the time of reference. The example above could also express ‘I am about to grind’ and ‘Cεccε is about to wash the dishes’, respectively. An example with time reference point in the past is the following:

k-kw-átt-ɪɔt

3-C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL

ɔ-kumán

PERS-Kuman

á-k-kw-á.ík

CONJ-3-C-be:PR

á-kw-ɔrɔkɔ

CONJ-3-eat:DEPINCOMPL

kópá

meat

s/he found Kuman while she was eating meat / about to eat meat

The Present Continuous has a shortened form:

C-**ak**-C-verb:INCOMPL, whereby **ak** is what remains of **aík**. **k** of **ak** then assimilates to the concord on the main verb. Thus:

m-p-a.ík

1-C-be:PR

p-á.korrɔ /

C-engrave:INCOMPL

m-p-a.p-p-á.korrɔ

1-C-be:PR-C-engrave:INCOMPL

I am writing

In the Present Continuous C-**aík** can not be separated from the verbal word containing the main verb TAM-stem by another constituent. In the example below **mpaík** ‘I am’ is followed by another constituent, for which reason it does not function as part of the Present Continuous. A Present Continuous follows, on which the subject pronoun is not repeated:

m-p-a.ík

1-C-be:PR

cəne

here

p-a.ík

C-be:PR

p-ókkɔ

C-dance:INCOMPL

ikkítəttak

very_badly

I am here, dancing the best I can (lit.: very badly) (fr. written story)

Dependent Present Continuous:

C-**aík** a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL

The Dependent Present Continuous is the dependent variant of the Present Continuous. It is attested in one specific environment, namely after the conjunctive particle **á**-. The subject of the clause

introduced by **á-** can be the same as the subject of the preceding clause, but can also be different. The Present auxiliary does not have a dependent counterpart, and thus remains the same, but **á-** is repeated before the main verb, so that it occurs as a Dependent Incompletive (not as an Incompletive). In the example below, the subject pronominal clitic **ḡ-** ‘you (SG)’ is deleted between the conjunctive particle and the initial vowel of the Dependent Incompletive main verb.

ḡ-kw-érekot	a-ḡ-kw-a.ik	a-ṛəkə	ḡurú
2-C-grumble_in_oneself:INCOMPL	CONJ-2-C-be:PR	CONJ-(2-)eat:DEPINCOMPL	asida

akaín-ṭa
why-Q
why are you grumbling while eating asida?

In the example below, there is a change of subject, from the leopard (**papəkira**) to the lion (**ṭəpa**), which is pronominally referred to:

papəkira	p-akkakáté	á-ṭ-ṭ-á.ík	á-ṭ-ḡḡəkə
leopard	C-come:PST	CONJ-PRO-C-be:PR	CONJ-PRO-rest:DEPINCOMPL

the leopard came while it (the lion) was resting

By contrast, in a non-subject relative clause (an environment which would select a Dependent Incompletive) the Present Continuous does not change to its dependent shape:

ṭurít	i-ṭ-a	m-p-a.ik	p-á.ṛəkə
food	RES-C-COP	1-C-be:PR	C-eat:INCOMPL

the food which I am eating

Ad. 2. Future Continuous:

C-aka C-verb:INCOMPL

The Future Continuous consists of the Incompletive of ‘be’+ Incompletive main verb. It expresses an action or event that will be going on at a later time than the time of speech or the time of reference. The action or event is expected with a high degree of certainty.

nə-caɾɪ **c-ɔ̌-kamoɟɛ**
on-day C-of-celebration

ul **w-a.ká** **cɪk** **w-a.pírane** **kápík** **nɔ̌-kâ**
people C-be:INCOMPL VREF C-thank:INCOMPL God on-body

on the day of the celebration, the people will be praising God

ámamá **ɲ-kw-ɔ̌íne.t** **kín**
if 2-C-go_to:COMPL O3A

ɲ-kw-a.ka **p-a.ɬáttɔ** **ɪ-úl** **w-aɲ**
2-C-be:INCOMPL C-fight:INCOMPL in-people C-POSS2

if you join them (lit.: when you will have gone to them), you will be fighting against your (own) people

Dependent Future Continuous

After the conjunctive particle **á-**, the Incompletive auxiliary changes to its dependent form and **á-** is repeated on the main verb, which changes to the Dependent Incompletive as well:

ɲín-ɬa **akka** **a-kw-ɔ̌ká** **á-kw-ɔ̌táttme** **ɪ-úl** **w-úɲ**
what-Q that CONJ-3-be:DEPINCOMPL CONJ-3-fight_for:DEPINCOMPL in-people C-POSS3

why will he be fighting against his (own) people?

Ad. 3. Past Continuous:

C-ɔ̌kát **a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL**, or

C-ɔ̌kát **cɪk** **a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL**

The Past Continuous consists of the Completive of ‘be’ + **á** + Dependent Incompletive main verb. **cɪk** can be present or absent on the auxiliary. The Past Continuous has a clause chaining structure, i.e., consists of two separate clauses. It expresses an action or event that was going on in the past, but has stopped at the time of speech or the time of reference. The presence of **cɪk** draws more attention to the action having some duration.

m-p-ɔ̌ká.t **á-n-íɾe** **ittĩ ...**
1-C-be:COMPL CONJ-1-say:DEPINCOMPL that

I was saying (that) ...

amóṭa **p-ṭká.t** **cík** **a-kw-ṭkijə** **lɪcɔk**
 PERS.Amoṭa C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-3-push:DEPINCOMPL goats

Amoṭa was pushing the goats together (fr. written story)

ṭ-kín **ṭ-ṭká.t** **cík** **a-kín** **ṭmóttə** **aôn ...**
 PERS-3A C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ.PERS-3A break_in_two:DEPINCOMPL bees

they were breaking off the honeycombs ...

The clause chaining structure allows for an additional constituent in the first clause, coming before the conjunctive particle **á**:

ṭ-kw-ṭká.t **cík** **maṭót** **ǎ-mpəppəne** **lɪcɔk** **akain-ṭa**
 2-C-be:COMPL VREF long_time_ago CONJ-(2-)miss.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL goats why-Q

why were you always losing goats in the past?

This is also possible when **cík** is absent. In the example below the Completive of ‘be’ in the first clause functions as copular verb, but the whole construction still functions as a Past Continuous:

nuṭṭaruk **n-ṭká.t** **cujkut** **c-əppət** **a-n-ṭṭəkɔ** **cík**
 pigs C-be:COMPL crowd C-many CONJ-PRO-eat:DEPINCOMPL VREF

í.ccík **k-ṭ-cəṭəṭ**
 near C-of-mountain

a large herd of pigs was feeding on the nearby hill (lit.: the pigs were a large crowd while feeding on the nearby hill) (Mark 5:11)

After conjunctive **á**- (or in any other environment that selects a dependent TAM if available) there is no change in the verbal complex, because the auxiliary has no dependent form and the main verb already is in its dependent form.

Ad. 4. ‘was about to’ (imminence in the past)

C-ṭkát C-verb:INCOMPL, or

C-ṭkát cík C-verb:INCOMPL

This verbal complex consists of the Completive of ‘be’ + Incompletive main verb. The Completive auxiliary can be followed by **cík**, but **cík** can also be absent. It expresses that an action was

about to take place at some time in the past. Unless stated otherwise or apparent from the context, it is understood that it eventually did not.

k-kw-śká.t **cɪk** **p-a.pśttɔt** **ókul** (**< ɔpśttɔt**)
 3-C-be:COMPL VREF C-beat:INCOMPL child
 s/he was about to beat the child

k-kw-śká.t **p-á.kákɔ** **ana** **k-kw-á.nn-śkák.at** (**< ɔkákɔ**)
 3-C-be:COMPL C-grind:INCOMPL and 3-C-NEG-grind:DEPPRFV
 she was about to grind, but then she did not

When the time reference point is the time of speech, the construction gives an interpretation as ‘was X-ing and completed this’: at the moment of speech, the action, which had some duration, has stopped. The example below can be a response to the question ‘do you know where Kakka is?’. The answer implies that she was here, grinding, but now she has gone.

k-kw-śká.t **p-á.kákɔ** (**< ɔkákɔ**)
 3-C-be:COMPL C-grind:INCOMPL
 she was grinding (just a moment ago, but not anymore now)

Ad. 5. Past Completive:

C-**ɔkát** C-verb:COMPL, or shortened:

C-**át**-C-verb:COMPL

The Past Completive consists of the Completive of ‘be’ + Completive main verb. The Past Completive is often shortened. It is then realized as C-**at**, with **t** assimilating to the following consonant:

k-kw-śká.t **p-εś.t** / **k-kw-á.p-p-εś.t**
 3-C-be:COMPL C-go:COMPL 3-C-be:COMPL-C-go:COMPL
 s/he had gone

lepa l-ɔká.t l-ɔʁumɔ́t.ɛ / lepa l-á.l-l-ɔʁumɔ́t.ɛ

lions C-be:COMPL C-attack:COMPL lions C-be:COMPL-C-attack:COMPL

the lions have/had attacked

In case of **w**-concord, there are two alternatives for the shortened Past Completive. The first example has the full form, the second the two short alternatives. **wáɾɔkâ.t** is the expected short form: **t** becomes **r** before concord **w**, then **w** is deleted between **r** and the following vowel. **wáwɔkâ.t** is somewhat unexpected, but appears to exist as well (recall that elision of concord **w** between vowels across a morpheme boundary is not obligatory, see 2.1.6).

ɔkɔl w-ɔká.t w-ɔká.t w-ulukkû-ppu

people C-be:COMPL C-be:COMPL C-one-really

the child was the only child

ɔkɔl w-á.r-ɔká.t / w-á-w-ɔká.t w-ulukkû-ppu

people C-be:COMPL-(C-)be:COMPL / C-be:COMPL-C-be:COMPL C-one-really

the child was the only child

The Past Completive refers to a completed action or event some time in the past. It can express that the action or event just stopped or ceased then, but it can also be that the resulting state continues up to the time of reference or the moment of speech. The latter is the case in the example below. The Past Completive implies that it is already some time ago that the addressee has put his stick somewhere. That action still bears relevance to the present: at the moment of speech they cannot find it. The pluractional verb **ɔkwárəttikɔt** ‘think, remember’, as opposed to the more instantaneous non-Pluractional verb **ɔkwárikɔt** ‘recall’, corresponds with this longer time frame, expressing that remembering the place will take some repeated effort.

ant-ɔ́kwarəttikɔt na

can:DEPINCOMPL-remember.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL where:REL

ɲ-kw-ɔká.t p-ɔnəkkét.é kúrrɔŋ

2-C-be:COMPL C-put_down:COMPL stick

please recall where you put your stick (then)

By contrast, a Completive used in the same sentence, implies that only a short time has elapsed between the action of putting the stick somewhere and the moment when the hearer is asked to recall where he put it (perhaps an hour or a day). The non-pluractional verb **ɔkwárikɔt** ‘recall’ corresponds to this short time frame, expressing that the place is expected to come to mind easily:

ant-ɔkwárikɔt **na**
 can:DEPINCOMPL-remember:DEPINCOMPL where:REL
ŋ-kw-ɔnəkkét.é **kúrrɔŋ**
 2-C-put_down:COMPL stick
 please recall where you have put your stick

The example below is the last sentence of an account describing the events during a period of hunger. The Past Completive conveys that the hunger has stopped and corresponds with the events having happened a considerable time ago.

lɔn **el-l-i** **l-ɔká.t** **l-ɔká.t** **nɔ-ɬupút** **2001**
 words DEM-C-NEARSP C-be:COMPL C-be:COMPL on-year 2001
 these things took place in the year 2001

The Past Completive often functions as a pluperfect. In the following example, the giving of the money has been anterior to the events in the past that are going to be told:

pul **p-əɬek** **p-á.p-p-étet** **ul** **w-ɛɾa** **ákúccɨ**
 person C-some C-be:COMPL-C-give:COMPL people C-two money
ittɨ **á-kín** **ant-áɬ-ɔkkárəttm-ɔk**
 that SUBJ-3A can:DEPINCOMPL-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-return_to:DEPINCOMPL-O3
 a man had given two people money in order for them to come and give it
 back to him (later) (Luke 7:41)

Some verbs need a Completive in order to express an actual mental or emotional state, for example **ɔpíra** ‘become happy’ and **ɔŋɔt** ‘like, want, love’. With such verbs, the Past Completive is applied in order to express a state that existed at some time in the past:

m-p-á.p-p-əŋəʔ.é **ittɪ** **ɔ-nɪn** **t-áppuʔa** **ɔ-nɪn** **ɔ-ɕɛɕɕê**
 1-C-be:COMPL-C-like:COMPL that PERS-1A C-play:INCOMPL PERS-1A PERS-Cecce

ana.rruk **m-p-ənn-ɪ.əʔ-ʔk**
 but 1-C-NEG-find:DEPPRFV-O3

I wanted to play with Cecce, but (then) I could not find her

ana **ákká** **k-kw-íʔ.é** **k-kw-ʔká.t** **p-əpɪrá.t** **nó-ká**
 and when 3-C-find:COMPL 3-C-be:COMPL C-become_good:COMPL on-body
 and when s/he found it, s/he felt happy

In a clause introduced by **ámma** + H ‘if, when’, the Distant Completive is used as a counterfactual:

ámma **pól** **ém-p-í** **p-á.p-p-ʔká.t** **pól**
 if person DEM-C-NEARSP C-be:COMPL-C-be:COMPL person
í-p-érente **lón** **l-ʔ-kápík** **ícát** **p-á-íná.t ...**
 RES-C-speak.PLUR:INCOMPL words C-of-God truly C-IRR-know:COMPL

if this man were a person who truly speaks the word of God, he would know ... (Luke 7:39)

Dependent Past Completive: C-**ʔkát** a-PCL-C-verb:COMPL

When a Past Completive is used after the conjunctive particle **á-**, the particle is repeated on the main verb, so that the clauses become chained (recall that Completives have no dependent TAM as counterpart). Like in the Past Completive, **ɕɪk** cannot be present:

k-kw-áʔt-ɪʔt **ɔ-nenní**
 3-C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL PERS-Nenni
a-k-kw-ʔká.t **a-k-kw-ʔʔəkə.t** **kəpá**
 CONJ-3-C-be:COMPL CONJ-3-C-eat:COMPL meat

s/he found Nenni while she had been eating meat (but she had just stopped)

Other complex verbs with an auxiliary of ‘be’

TAMs can contain complex auxiliaries of ‘be’. The following, which has the Completive + Present Continuous of ‘be’, is an example. Like

the Past Continuous it expresses ‘was X-ing’, but it suggests that the action was not continued or finished. It can for example be used in a situation where the speaker reports that he saw somebody coming towards his house, but the person suddenly turned around and did not come after all. **cık** can be present or absent. **cık** adds a subtle (further) notion of spatiality and/or duration to the clause.

pul	p-ɔká.t	p-á.fık	p-ânṭán
person	C-be:COMPL	C-be:PR	C-come:INCOMPL

the man was coming (suggestion: but then something happened so that he did not come)

pul	p-ɔká.t	cık	p-a.ık	p-ânṭán
person	C-be:COMPL	VREF	C-be:PR	C-come:INCOMPL

the man was coming (suggestion: but then something happened so that he did not come)

In general, when a TAM contains a Completive of ‘be’, a double Completive is possible as well. The double Completive can be shortened in the same way as happens in the Past Completive. Such constructions typically have a pluperfect reading. Some examples follow here.

Past Continuous with double Completive of ‘be’:

C-ɔkát C-ɔkát a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL, or shortend:
 C-át-C-ɔkát a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL;
 C-ɔkát C-ɔkát cık a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL, or shortened:
 C-át-C-ɔkát cık a-PCL-verb:DEPINCOMPL

nɔ-caɾı	c-én	ɔ-cɛccé	p-á.p-p-ɔká.t	cık
on-day	C-DEM	PERS-Cɛccé	C-be:COMPL-C-be:COMPL	VREF

a-kw-ṣra
 CONJ-3-cultivate:DEPINCOMPL

On that day Cɛccé had been busy cultivating

‘be about to’ with double Completive of ‘be’:

C-**əkát** C-**əkát** C-verb:INCOMPL, or shortened:

C-**át**-C-**əkát** C-verb:INCOMPL;

C-**əkát** C-**əkát** **cık** C-verb:INCOMPL, or shortened

C-**át**-C-**əkát** **cık** C-verb:INCOMPL

ɔ-tottó **p-á.p-p-əká.t** **cık** **p-ântán** **ana**
 PERS-Tottó C-be:COMPL-C-be:COMPL VREF C-come:INCOMPL and

k-kw-áppər-əká.kat **p-əṅɔ**

3-C-again:COMPL-be:DEPPRFV C-ill

Tottó had been about to come, but he fell ill again

Past Completive with double Completive of 'be':

C-**əkát** C-**əkát** C-verb:COMPL, or shortened:

C-**át**-C-**át**-C-verb:COMPL

ɔparı **p-əká.t** **p-á.p-p-əkwnín-ək** **ɲukul**
 wife C-be:COMPL C-be:COMPL-C-produce_for:COMPL-O3 children

his wife had produced children for him

12.8. Deictic verbs

There are three deictic verbs. They always contain a concord and have only one form. They contain the formatives **ĩ**, **êrík** and **érê**, respectively, that also form part of the spatial demonstratives (see chapter 8.1). The deictic verbs are given in the first column of the table, the demonstratives, for comparison, in the second.

Table 64 Deictic verbs

C- ĩ	'be here (near speaker / deictic centre)'	en-C-ĩ	'this, these (near the deictic centre)'
C- êrík	'be there (near addressee)'	en-C-êrík	'that, those (near addressee)'
C- érê	'be over there (away from speaker/deictic centre and addressee)'	en-C-érê	'that, those (away from both, but in sight)'

The deictic verbs can function as main verbs, but also as auxiliaries. As main verbs, they typically function as presentatives:

m-p-ει **cənέ**

1-C-be_NEARSP here

I am here

a-m-p-êrik

CONJ-1-be_NEARADDR

a-n-ítto

CONJ-1-pick:DEPINCOMPL

kíce

kice-fruit

k-əɾek

C-some

k-εί

C-be_NEARSP

k-óɾé **ittuaŋ**

C-red very

and I am here with you, picking this other very ripe *kice*-fruit here
(fr. written story)

appentína

groundnuts

w-êrík

C-be_NEARADDR

the groundnuts are there in front of you!

aɾík

come

núttəruk

pigs

n-əɾek

C-some

n-érê

C-be_DIST

come, there are some pigs over there!

In a verbal complex, the deictic verbs can precede an Incompletive, a Present, a Present Continuous, or a Completive expressing a state:

m-p-εί

1-C-be_NEARSP

p-á.έ́-a

C-go:INCOMPL-ATT

I am going!

m-p-εί

1-C-be_NEARSP

p-á.ík

C-be:PR

p-á.έ́-a

C-go:INCOMPL-ATT

I am going!

m-p-êrik

1-C-be_NEARADDR

p-a.mákɔt

C-follow:INCOMPL

nɔn

O2A

n-tɔ-cəkêŋ

with-at-lower_back

I will be near to you, following you (PL) from behind

mén **m-êrik** **m-ɔməttát.ɛ**
 palm_fruits C-be_NEARADDR C-be_finished:COMPL

the palm fruits there with you are finished (App. IV, 115)

ul **w-əɾek** **w-éɾé** **w-ântán**
 people C-some C-be_DIST C-come:INCOMPL

some people are over there, coming

12.9. **ikkɔ cɪk** ‘sit, stay’

The verb **ikkɔ cɪk** ‘sit, stay’ can function as a main verb, but also as auxiliary verb in a verbal complex. In such a complex auxiliary and main verb occur in separate clauses connected through the conjunctive particle **á**. Together the clauses express a continuing action or the start of an action. Examples of **ikkɔ cɪk** ‘sit, stay’ as main verb are given first. Presence of **cɪk** is obligatory.

ikkɪ **cɪk**
 sit:IMP VREF
 sit down!

ukul **w-ɔɲɔt.é** **ittɪ** **ɔ-nɪn** **t-íkkɔ** **cɪk**
 child C-like:COMPL that PERS-1A C-sit:INCOMPL VREF
 the child wants us to stay

As an auxiliary Completive C-**ikkɔt cɪk**, Past C-**ikkáɛ cɪk** and Dependent Perfective **ikkat cɪk** are used in clause chaining construction with the conjunctive particle **á** in the following ways:

C-**ikkɔt cɪk** + **á** + PRO-verb:DEPINCOMPL

C-**ikkáɛ cɪk** or **ikkat cɪk** + **á** + PRO-verb:DEPINCOMPL

The construction with Completive C-**ikkɔt cɪk** expresses that an action was going on at some time in the past, literally: ‘X sat/stayed doing Y’. Some examples:

akka **ɔ-kín** **ṭ-ikkó.t** **cík**
 that PERS-3A C-sit:COMPL VREF

a-kín **órá** **íttíná**
 CONJ.PERS-3A cultivate:DEPINCOMPL like_that

a-ṭok **ákkakat**
 CONJ-dog come:DEPPRFV

and when they were cultivating like that, the dog came ('The story of the jackal')

ṇattattápe **ṇ-ikkó.t** **cík** **a-íttitte** **aôn**
 bird(sp.) C-sit:COMPL VREF CONJ-(PRO-)collect.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL bees

the *ṇattattape*-bird was always collecting honey (App. IV, 2)

The second construction, with Past C-**ikkáṭe** **cík** or Dependent Perfective or **ikkat** **cík** expresses that an action (or state) started (literally "sat down").

m-p-ikk.áṭe **cík** **a-n-ɔkíṇa**
 1-C-sit:PST VREF CONJ-1-become_tired:DEPINCOMPL

I started to feel tired

ana **ṭakəruk** **ɪ-ṭ-ótté** **í-ṭ-óṛe** **ṭ-ikk.áṭe** **cík**
 and chicken RES-C-little RES-C-red C-sit:PST VREF

a-ṭ-óṛnce **tɔ.pón** **appin-appin**
 CONJ-PRO-go_to.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL at_farming_field always-REDUP

and the little red hen started to go to the field every day (fr. written story)

... a-kkónacci **ikk.at** **cík** **a-kw-íttat** **moṭé**
 CONJ.PERS-Kunacci sit:DEPPRFV VREF CONJ-3-become_fat:DEPINCOMPL buttocks

n-ṭ-ɔəkén
 with-at-lower_back

... and Kunacci started to grow fat at the buttocks from behind (fr. written story)

Like auxiliaries of 'be', **ikkɔ** **cík** as auxiliary can itself co-occur with an auxiliary verb, as in the following example:

a-lón éi-l-í ánt-íkk.at cík a-l-éretta

CONJ-words DEM-C-NEARSP can:DEPINCOMPL-sit:DEPPRFV VREF CONJ-PRO-be_spoken:DEPINCOMPL

and these things started to be said (and the situation was there that these things started to be said)

12.10. C-íkkə ‘may’

The auxiliary verb C-íkkə, without cík, precedes an Incompletive main verb:

C-íkkə C-verb:INCOMPL

Unlike íkkə cík, C-íkkə ‘may’ cannot function as a main verb. It occurs only in this one form and always as an auxiliary: it does not inflect for Past or Completive, nor does it have a dependent counterpart.

The construction expresses that something *may* happen. There is an expectation or possibility, but no certainty that the stated action or will actually take place.

lón l-íkkə l-a.ka l-əppót

words C-may C-be:INCOMPL C-many

a lot of things may be going to be said now (For example after somebody has died: things that have been kept quiet are now perhaps going to be said openly)

C-íkkə cannot directly precede an adjective, it must always come before a verb. The first example has the Incompletive of the verb ɔŋa ‘become ill’, the second the Incompletive of the verb ɔ́ákkə ‘become’, followed by the adjective C-ɔ́ŋə ‘ill’. ɔ́ákkə cannot be left out.

papə p-íkkə p-á.ŋa

thing C-may C-become_ill:INCOMPL

the animal may become ill

papɔ **p-íkkɔ** **p-a.tókka** **p-ɔŋɔ**
 thing C-may C-become:INCOMPL C-ill

the animal may become ill

C-**íkkɔ** ‘may’ often precedes an Incompletive verb, but can also be combined with an auxiliary of ‘be’ that contains the Completive/ventive auxiliary C-**átt** (see the example below). C-**átt** has a modal interpretation in this context, as ‘may’ (see 12.20.2). It is this element C-**átt** that allows for the presence of C-**íkkɔ**. In the example C-**íkkɔ** can be left out without a change of meaning, but **páttóká** cannot be omitted.

ɔ-pəlɪn **p-íkkɔ** **p-átt-óká** **p-ákkarákɔ.t** **cakorok**
 PERS-somebody C-may C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-be_called:COMPL also

ɪ-p-érɪk **n-a-ŋ**
 RES-C-big on-PERS-2

somebody who is more important than you may have been invited as well
 (Luke 14:8)

Though C-**íkkɔ** normally conveys that something may happen, not that something is certain to happen, it is sometimes used in a way that expresses precisely the opposite. In the following example the Person of Nəppət is threatening the tortoise. With C-**íkkɔ** he communicates that the tortoise can be sure ‘to know him today ...’. **kəné** is a swear word variant of **ənné** ‘your mother’.

ŋ-kw-íkkɔ **p-ínane** **kəne** **ménni** **túllúk**
 2-C-may C-know_for:INCOMPL your_mother today just

ámmá **m-p-á.nn-ókípcót-ɔŋ** **ca** **cík**
 if 1-C-NEG-throw_stones_at.PLUR:DEPCOMPL-O2 head VREF

just today you will know (me), on your mother, I will crush your head with stones (lit.: you may know for your mother just today, if I will not have stoned your head)

Negation is expressed on the main verb, not on the auxiliary:

ɔ-rit **t-íkko** **t-ǎnn-ɔréko** **maɾi** **m-ɔppót**
 PERS-12 C-may C-NEG-work:DEPINCOMPL days C-many

we may not be able to do a lot of work for many days

12.11. C-**arótuk** + H ‘be still’

C-**arótuk** + H occurs in this form only. It can, for example, not be used without concord. C-**arótuk** + H ‘be still’ does not have the shape of a verb. Final **k** is not attested in verbs, unless in presents of ‘be’ (C-**aík**), where it is a remnant of the vague reference particle **cík**. Whether or not **k** of C-**arótuk** + H is perhaps itself a remnant of **cík** is unclear. There seems to be no other verb (or other word) to which it is related. In context, it can bring a high tone to the next element.

C-**arótuk** + H resembles adjectives in that it has a fixed form, must co-occur with a concord (or the focus marker **akk-** as a replacement of the concord) and can itself be combined with different TAMs of ‘be’ as auxiliaries. However, it does not express a quality, but functions typically as a verb: a locative/existential (main) verb, a copular verb and auxiliary verb. Some examples of C-**arótuk** + H as locative/existential verb follow here:

ŋ-kw-arótuk-i⁷²

2-C-be_still-Q

are you ready? / have you finished? (*lit.: are you still?*)

cík **c-arótuk** **áttík**
 place C-be_still ever

there is still endless time

As a main verb it can be preceded by an auxiliary of ‘be’:

⁷² In spite of C-**arótuk** having a floating high tone (+H), no high tone (realized as falling) is generated on the question particle.

ka **k-a.ɪk** **k-arə́tʊk** **ɪ-n̩tɛ̃⁷³**
 body C-be:PR C-be_still in-sleep

I am still asleep (lit.: the body is still in sleep)

ɔ-kín **t-ɔká.t** **t-árə́tʊk** **cɪk-i-ká** **k-ɔ-tampan**
 PERS-3A C-be:COMPL C-be_still LOC-in-body C-of-flat_open_space

they were still right in the middle of the flat open space

It can also be combined with **C-ícca** ‘be still, continue to’ as auxiliary verb. **C-ícca** is discussed in chapter 12.2.

m-p-íccá **p-árə́tʊk**
 1-C-be_still C-be_still

I am still not ready / I have still not finished

C-arə́tʊk + H can also function as a copular verb. In the first example it makes a connection between the subject and a noun; in the second and third between the subject and an adjective; in the fourth between the subject and connexive construction:

k-kw-árə́tʊk **ókól** **w-ón**
 3-C-be_still child C-POSS2A

s/he is still your child

ɲəɾɪ **ɲ-arə́tʊk** **ɲ-írrók**
 water C-be_still C-cold

the water is still cold

pul **p-arə́tʊk** **p-ɔŋɔ** **cānnan**
 person C-be_still C-ill very

the person is still very ill

cɪk **c-arə́tʊk** **c-ɔ-ɔrrət**
 place C-be_still C-of-tomorrow

it is still morning (maybe around 10.00 am)

⁷³ **m̩tɛ̃** is a contraction of **í** + **m̩tɛ̃**, see 4.4.

C-**arə́tʊk** +H as auxiliary verb can be followed by a Dependent Incompletive main verb. Examples with **ɪmma** ‘see’, **akkarə** ‘call’, **ɔmúɲe** ‘steal’, **ɔkkwôt** ‘kill’ are given in the table. The floating high tone of C-**arə́tʊk** +H is realized on all-low dependent incomplete TAM-stems (first two examples in the table. The falling realization in the second example point towards an underlyingly long vowel).

Table 65 C-**arə́tʊk** +H and Dependent Incompletive

	<i>C-arə́tʊk +H + Dependent Incompletive</i>
ɪmma ‘see’	C- arə́tʊk ɪmma +H
akkarə ‘call’	C- arə́tʊk âkkarə +H
ɔmúɲe ‘steal’	C- arə́tʊk ɔmúɲe +H
ɔkkwôt ‘kill’	C- arə́tʊk ɔkkwôt

Followed by a Dependent Incompletive it expresses that something is still to happen or to be done. It can often be translated with ‘not yet’:

m-p-arə́tʊk **ɪkkə** **áləppón**
 1-C-be_still drink:DEPINCOMPL coffee

I am still to take coffee / I have not taken coffee yet

k-kw-árə́tʊk **áikət** **ɪ-a-paŋôn**
 3-C-be_still feel_at-ease:DEPINCOMPL in-PERS-sibling.PL

s/he does not yet feel at ease between his/her siblings (s/he is still to feel at ease between his/her siblings)

ʊkʊl **ɪ-ɔparɪ** **w-ɔnó** **ittɪ** **w-ápəɾɛ́tʰa**
 child RES-(C-)-female C-have that PRO.C-be_beaten:INCOMPL

a-w-árə́tʊk **ɔppêɾ**
 CONJ-PRO.C-be_still get_pregnant:DEPINCOMPL

a girl must be beaten before she gets pregnant (she must undergo the initiation rite of being beaten. Lit.: while being still to get pregnant ...)

an-ákka **k-kw-árə̀tək** **íllə** **ɪ-ruttə́rúk**⁷⁴ ...
 and-that 3-C-be_still cut_in_two:DEPINCOMPL in-pig

and before cutting the pig in two ... (lit.: and when s/he was still to cut the pig in two ...) (fr. written story)

C-arə̀tək + H can also be combined with a non-dependent verbal complex expressing continuous action. With the Present Continuous in the first example, it communicates that an action is still going on:

m-p-arə̀tək **p-a.ɪk** **p-íkkə́** **áləppón**
 1-C-be_still C-be:PR C-drink:INCOMPL coffee

I am still drinking coffee (I have not finished my coffee yet)

However, this type of expression more often seems to make use of a construction with **C-ícca** ‘be still’.

Negation is expressed on the main verb, not on **C-arə̀tək**:

k-kw-árə̀tək **p-ǎ.nn-aŋkət** **ittɪ** **k-kw-ítta**
 3-C-be_still C-NEG-want:DEPCOMPL that 3-C-be_married:INCOMPL

she still does not want to get married

12.12. **C-ícca** ‘be still’

The verb **C-ícca** ‘be still’ occurs only in this form, always with a concord. **C-ícca** can only be followed by a non-dependent verb or adjective. Therefore, whether or not it would itself have a floating high tone is of no consequence since there is no environment where such a tone could manifest itself. Non-dependent verb and adjectives always have a high tone themselves and will not receive a preceding high tone. **C-ícca** does not seem to be related to another verb (or other word).

Unlike **C-arə̀tək** + H, **C-ícca** cannot function as a main verb. As a copular verb with adjectival predicate it can be used interchangeably with **C-arə̀tək** + H.

⁷⁴ Clause-final boundary tone (see 3.6).

η-ιccá **η-írrók**
 water C-be_still C-cold

the water is still cold

pul **p-ícca** **p-ḡḡ** **cânnan**
 person C-be_still C-ill very

the person is still very ill

C-aréḡuk and **C-ícca** can be used together, in either order:

pul **p-ícca** **p-aréḡuk** **p-ḡḡ** **cânnan**
 person C-be_still C-be_still C-ill very

the person is still very ill

pul **p-aréḡuk** **p-ícca** **p-ḡḡ** **cânnan**
 person C-be_still C-be_still C-ill very

the person is still very ill

C-ícca ‘be still’ cannot serve as a copular verb with a nominal predicate. In such a case **C-aréḡuk** ‘be still’ must be present:

k-kw-íccá **p-aréḡuk** **ókól** **w-ḡn**
 3-C-be_still C-be_still child C-POSS2A

she is still your child

C-ícca is commonly used as an auxiliary in verbal complexes with a Present of ‘be’, a Present Continuous, or a Completive denoting a state:

C-ícca C-aik

C-ícca C-aik C-incompletive TAM-stem

C-ícca C-completive TAM-stem

C-ícca expresses that something is still going on or is still in a certain state. Some examples:

η-kw-íccá **p-á.ík-ı**
 2-C-be_still C-be:PR-Q

are you still there?

ɔ-nɛnní p-íccá p-á.ík p-éret itti k-kw-ânɬan-î
 PERS-Nenni C-be_still C-be:PR C-talk_about:INCOMPL that 3-C-come:INCOMPL-Q

is Nenni still saying that she will come?

C-ícca can precede a Present Continuous within a larger verbal structure. In the example below, the Completive of ‘be’ (+ **cík**) and the conjunctive particle **á** are followed by **C-ícca** and a Present Continuous.

ɲa-ɲa-ɬɔŋkwat ɲ-ɔká.t cík
 DIM-REDUP-sheep C-be:COMPL VREF
a-ɲ-íccá ɲ-á.ík ɲ-áppuɬa
 CONJ-PRO.C-be_still C-be:PR C-play:INCOMPL

the lamb was still playing

The Completive of **ɔccó cík** ‘take time’ is used for the state of being late (first example below). In the second example this Completive is combined with **C-ícca**.

m-p-ɔccó.t cík
 1-C-receive:COMPL VREF

I am late (*upon arrival, as an apology*)

ɔ-nne p-ícca p-ɔccó.t cík
 PERS-your_mother C-be_still C-receive:COMPL VREF

your mother has still not come (lit.: your mother is still taking time)

A present state of refusing something is expressed with the Completive of **əɾa** ‘refuse, insist’. The example shows that in an environment where a Dependent Incompletive would be selected instead of an Incompletive and a Dependent Perfective instead of a Past, both without concord, **C-ícca** retains its concord (like Completives and like the Present of ‘be’):

a-cíkɪt c-ícca c-əɾá.t ɔkkwót ka
 CONJ-heart C-be_still C-refuse:COMPL kill:DEPINCOMPL body

and the heart still refused to kill the body (the heart still refused to stop beating)

Unlike C-**arə́tʊk** + H, C-**ícca** does not precede a dependent verb, nor does it, in certain environments, allow for a reading as ‘not yet’.

12.13. C-**úrənn** + H ‘just now’

The auxiliary C-**úrənn** + H ‘just now’ has only one form and only combines with a dependent incomplete TAM-stem. C-**úrənn** brings a high tone on the initial mora of an all-low dependent incomplete TAM-stems (first two examples in the table - the falling realization in the second example points towards an underlyingly long vowel).

Table 66 C-**úrənn** + H and dependent incomplete TAM-stem

	<i>C-úrənn + H and dep. incompl. TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	C- úrənn - imma + H
akkarə ‘call’	C- úrənn - âkkarə + H
əmúɲɛ ‘steal’	C- úrənn - əmúɲɛ + H
əkkwôt ‘kill’	C- úrənn - əkkwôt

C-**úrənn** + H ‘just now’ + dependent incomplete TAM-stem expresses that something has just happened, or has just been carried out. Some examples:

ɔ-kukkó **p-úrənn-eɔ̃**
PERS-Kukku C-just_now-go:DEPINCOMPL

Kukku has just left

m-p-úrənn-ɔ̃ɲəkɔt **i-cɔɹé** **c-ɔ-pira**
1-C-just_now-rest_at:DEPINCOMPL in-buttock C-of-tree

I have just taken a rest under the tree

C-**ánt** / C-**ántər** ‘can’ with dependent incomplete main verb TAM-stem, can also express that something just happened (see 12.15). If C-**ánt** / C-**ántər** is used in this sense, (virtually) no time has elapsed between the time of speech and the time of the event. When C-**úrənn** + H is used, a little time may have past. Compare:

m-p-úrrən-áo

1-C-just_now-come:DEPINCOMPL

I have just arrived (perhaps an hour or so ago)

m-p-ántər-aɔ

1-C-can:COMPL-come:DEPINCOMPL

I have just arrived (the moment of speech is the moment of arrival)

c-úrənn can be combined with an auxiliary of ‘be’. In the next example, the arrival was not shortly before but shortly after the time anchor:

m-p-əká.t

1-C-be:COMPL

p-úrrən-áo

1-C-just_now-come:DEPINCOMPL

ákka

that

k-kw-íɔ.t

3-C-die:COMPL

I had just arrived after s/he had died (I was just too late)

12.14. ***arəka** ‘as always’

The auxiliary ‘as always’ has three TAMs, based on a reconstructed verb ***arəka**:

Table 67 TAM-stems and TAMs of ***arəka**

<i>TAM-stem</i>		<i>TAM</i>	
dependent incompletive	arək + H	Dependent Incompletive	arək + H
incompletive	árək + H	Incompletive	C- árək + H
completive	arəkât shortened: arək	Completive	C- arəkât shortened: C- arək

A verb ***arəka** can be reconstructed, because of Completive C-**arəkât**, which would be the regular Completive of an **a**-initial, **a**-final, low-toned verb (***arəka**). Furthermore, a Dependent Incompletive form ***arəka** + H and an Incompletive form *C-**arəka** + H would be regularly expected. These verbs, however, can easily be seen to have lost their final vowel before the initial vowel of the dependent verb that must follow. Such loss of a verb-final vowel **a** before a vowel with which it does not necessarily coalesce is attested elsewhere in connected speech, for example in:

m-p-ɔmma **ittĩ ...** [mbɔm:-ĩtĩ]
 1-C-not_know:INCOMPL that
 I don't know (that) ...

maṭṭa **ummi** **káppəri** **k-áŋ-ɛ** [maṭ-um:i]
 please take:IMP spoon C-2POSS-PROP
 please, do pick up your spoon! (App. IV, 74)

It is therefore not far-fetched to assume that the attested auxiliaries are remaining (shortened) TAMs of a verb ***arəka**.

Dependent Incompletive **arək** +H and Incompletive C-**árək** +H are followed by the dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb. This (vowel-initial) verb is attached to the auxiliary. In the table below the forms are given of **arək** +H and C-**árək** +H preceding dependent incomplete TAM-stems of the verbs **imma** 'see', **akkarɔ** 'call', **ɔmóŋe** 'steal' and **ɔkkwôt** 'kill'. The floating high tone of the auxiliary is realized or not realized on the dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb (see the Tone Shift Rule and Tone Reappearance sub-Rules, 3.3.1 and 3.3.3).

Table 68 **arək** +H and C-**árək** +H and dep. incomplete TAM-stem

	<i>arək +H + dep. incomplete TAM-stem</i>	<i>C-árək +H + dep. incomplete TAM-stem</i>
imma 'see'	arək-ímma +H	C- árək-ímma +H
akkarɔ 'call'	arək-âkkarɔ +H	C- árək-âkkarɔ +H
ɔmóŋe 'steal'	arək-ɔmóŋe +H	C- árək-ɔmóŋe +H
ɔkkwôt 'kill'	arək-ɔkkwôt	C- árək-ɔkkwôt

Completive C-**arəkât** can select more than one TAM of the main verb: a Completive, a Past, a Dependent Incompletive and a Dependent Perfective. Table 70 presents Completive C-**arəkât** followed by a Completive and by a Past:

Table 69 Completive *C-arəkāt* with Completive and with Past

	<i>C-arəkāt</i> + <i>Completive</i>	<i>C-arəkāt</i> + <i>Past</i>
imma ‘see’	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-immât</i>	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-immakáɛ</i>
akkarɔ ‘call’	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-akkarôt</i>	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-akkaráɛ</i>
ɔmóɲɛ ‘steal’	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-ɔmɔɲê</i>	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-ɔmɔɲékáɛ</i>
ɔkkwôt ‘kill’	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-ɔkkwɔtê</i>	<i>C-arəkāt</i> <i>C-ɔkkwáɛ</i>

When followed by a dependent verb, Completive *C-arəkāt* and the dependent verb will fuse together to one word. I therefore regard the dependent main verb as TAM-stems rather than as TAMs.

Table 71 gives examples of *C-arəkāt* with dependent TAM-stems of the verbs **imma** ‘see’, **akkarɔ** ‘call’, **ɔmóɲɛ** ‘steal’ and **ɔkkwôt** ‘kill’. Final **t** of *C-arəkāt* is realized as its intervocalic allophone **r**. The falling tone of the auxiliary is realized as high (Contour Simplification Rule). When the main verb contains a high or falling tone, tone bridge occurs.

Before a dependent TAM-stem, Completive *C-arəkāt* can be shortened to *C-arək*. Comparing Completive *C-arək* to *C-arəkāt*, we see that the falling tone is lost, together with the segmental loss. However, after the shortened form *C-arək* the same tones are retained on the main verb as (regularly) occur after the full form *C-arəkāt*: a low-toned main verb TAM-stem does not receive a high tone, and there is tone bridge in case of a main verb TAM-stem that has a high or falling tone itself.

Table 70 Completive *C-arəkāt*/*C-arək* and dependent TAM-stem

	<i>C-arəkāt</i> / <i>C-arək</i> and dependent incomplete TAM-stem	<i>C-arəkāt</i> / <i>C-arək</i> and dependent perfective TAM-stem
imma ‘see’	<i>C-arəkár-imma</i> + H <i>C-arək-imma</i> + H	<i>C-arəkár-immakat</i> + H <i>C-arək-immakat</i> + H
akkarɔ	<i>C-arəkár-akkarɔ</i> + H	<i>C-arəkár-akkarat</i> + H

‘call’	C- arək-akkarə + H	C- arək-akkarat + H
ᵛmóɲe	C- arəkár-ᵛmóɲe + H	C- arəkár-ᵛmóɲekat + H
‘steal’	C- arək-ᵛmóɲe + H	C- arək-ᵛmóɲekat + H
ᵛkkwôt	C- arəkár-ᵛkkwôt	C- arəkár-ᵛkkwât
‘kill’	C- arək-ᵛkkwôt	C- arək-ᵛkkwât

*Meaning and use of *arəka*

When the auxiliary is followed by a dependent verb it expresses the assumption that something happened, happens or will happen, just like it always (or usually) does. Its use implies or suggests knowledge of the speaker about the way the subject typically behaves, or something that is happening all the time, whether this is common knowledge or private knowledge of the speaker. A specific type of source or evidence on which his assumption is based is not implied: it may be that the speaker has witnessed the same behaviour before, or that he bases his assumption on what he heard from other people. Expressions with a form of ***arəka**, expressing expected behaviour, typically have a pejorative flavour: the behaviour is disapproved of.

Examples with dependent incomplete and dependent perfective main verb TAM-stems follow here. The assumptions they express are rather strong, for which reason I translate the auxiliary with ‘surely’. The first example below has an Incomplete auxiliary and a dependent incomplete main verb. ‘As always’ precedes the main verb, not the auxiliary.

pul **p-ᵛ-nəppət** **p-a.ɪk** **p-árək-ᵛmákarət**
 person C-of-Nəppət C-be:PR C-as_always:INCOMPL-follow_each_other:DEPINCOMPL
n-ᵛ-cəkên
 with-at-lower_back

the person of Nəppət is surely following from behind (he always follows people at this hour) (fr. written story)

In the following two examples, the auxiliary is Dependent Incomplete:

a-kəllán **arək-əŋwō**

CONJ-old_woman as_always:DEPINCOMPL-sing:DEPINCOMPL

and the old woman will surely sing (it is her habit to sing, but now it is not really appropriate)

ə-kakká **p-á.ík** **kárəṭā**

PERS-Kakka C-be:PR where

akka **a-kw-árək-əka** **í-nṭé**
that CONJ-3-as_always:DEPINCOMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL in-sleep

where is Kakka? she is surely asleep! (many times, she sleeps at this unusual hour)

Completive C-**arəkât**/C-**arək** followed by a dependent incomplete main verb TAM-stem expresses an assumption that a certain event just happened before the time of speech or the time of reference. C-**arəkât** and C-**arək** can be used interchangeably. Some examples:

pul **p-arək-əməŋe** **ana** **ə-kín** **ṭ-əkkwé.r-ək**
person C-as_always:COMPL-steal:DEPINCOMPL and PERS-3A C-beat.PLUR:COMPL-O3

the man has surely stolen, that is why they have beaten him (the man is know -by the speaker or generally- to have stolen before)

ə-kakká **p-arəká.r-əká** **í-nṭé**
PERS-Kakka C-as_always:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL in-sleep

Kakka was surely asleep (many times, she sleeps at this unusual hour)

C-**arəkât**/C-**arək** followed by a dependent perfective main verb expresses an assumption about what happened as the next thing at some moment in the past. In the second example the concord on the auxiliary is replaced by the focus marker **akk-**.

pul **p-arək-akkarat**
person C-as_always:COMPL-call:DEPPRFV

the man surely called (then) (this is what he does in such situations, but he actually shouldn't)

ɔ-laló akk-arəká.r-ómóɲe.kat ɨmít
PERS-Lalu FOC-as_always:COMPL-steal:DEPPRFV goat

it was surely Lalo who (then) stole the goat (he is known for stealing, by the speaker or generally)

The adverb **íkkəɛ** ‘maybe’ can be added to a clause with ‘as always’. **íkkəɛ** somewhat weakens the assumption:

íkkəɛ ɬok ɬ-a.ɪk ɬ-árək-íkkə nî
maybe dog C-be:PR C-as_always:INCOMPL-drink:DEPINCOMPL pooh

maybe the dog is eating pooh again (the dog has a habit of eating pooh)

When the (Completive) auxiliary is followed not by a dependent main verb, but by a non-dependent main verb, it is not an assumption, but a factual statement. In this context I translate the auxiliary with ‘as expected’ (because the same is always, or often, the case). Compare these examples with a Past (the first) and a dependent perfective main verb (the second), which both express a consecutive event:

ɔ-laló p-arəká.t p-ómóɲé.katɛ ɨmít
PERS-Lalu C-as_always:COMPL C-steal:PST goat

Lalo, as expected, stole the goat (then)

ɔ-laló p-arəká.r-ómóɲe.kat ɨmít
PERS-Lalu C-as_always:COMPL-steal:DEPPRFV goat

Lalo surely stole the goat (then)

Another example with Dependent Perfective main verb is the following:

ɬok ɬ-arəká.t ɬ-ərək.k.áɛ ɲurû
dog C-as_always:COMPL C-eat:PST asida

the dog, as always, (then) ate the asida (the dog is always stealing asida if you don’t pay attention)

The combination with a Completive main verb expresses that something has just happened at the time of speech, or at the

reference time, as could be expected, because it always (or often) happens this way. The auxiliary has a pejorative connotation. Some examples:

ɔ-nenní **p-arəká.t** **p-aá.t**
 PERS-Nenni C-as_always:COMPL C-come:COMPL

Nenni has, as always, (already) arrived (she always comes exactly in time, she gives people no space)

ɬok **ɬ-ɔ-pattɪ** **t-arəká.t** **t-ɔkkwɔt.é** **ɲatərəpê**
 dog C-of-person C-as_always:COMPL C-kill:COMPL rabbit

the dog of that person has, as always, killed the rabbit (it is never my dog that kills the rabbit!)

a-pélla **p-arəká.t** **p-ɔttɪé.t** **kɪt**
 CONJ-cat C-as_always:COMPL C-make_leave:COMPL eyes

the cat, as always, had quickly glimpsed around (it always does this, it is part of its unreliable nature)

Negation comes between the auxiliary and the main verb:

ɬok **ɬ-m** **ɬ-arəká.r-ɔkənn-ɔkkwɔt**
 dog C-POSS1 C-as_always:COMPL-NEG:DEP-kill:DEPCOMPL

as always my dog did not kill it (as always my dog did not make the kill)

12.15. *anta ‘can (possibility)’

The auxiliary *anta ‘can (possibility)’ has three TAMs, as given in table 72. These forms are based on a verb which can be reconstructed as *anta (see below).

Table 71 TAM-stems and TAMs of *anta

TAM-stem		TAM	
dependent incompletive	ant + H	Dependent Incompletive	ant + H
incompletive	ánt + H	Incompletive	C- ánt + H
completive	ántər shortened: ánt	Completive	C- ántər shortened: C- ánt

The initial **a** of the dependent auxiliary (and the absence of a form with **ɔ**) suggests development from an **a**-initial verb. The final vowel is less clear, but may well have been **a** as well, so that a possible reconstruction of the auxiliary is ***anta**.

The Dependent Incompletive and the Incompletive TAMs of the auxiliary (**ant** +H and **C-ánt** +H) are followed by a dependent incompletive TAM-stem of the main verb. Examples are given in table 73, with **ant** +H and **C-ánt** +H preceding dependent incompletive **ɪmma** ‘see’, **akkarɔ** ‘call’, **ɔmúɲɛ** ‘steal’ and **ɔkkwôt** ‘kill’. The floating tone of the auxiliary is realized or not realized on the main verb in accordance with the Tone Shift Rule and the Tone Reappearance sub-Rules.

Table 72 **ant** +H and **C-ánt** +H and dep. incompletive TAM-stem

	ant + H + <i>dep.</i> <i>incompl TAM-stem</i>	C-ánt + H + <i>dep.</i> <i>incompl. TAM-stem</i>
ɪmma ‘see’	ant-ɪmma +H	C-ánt-ɪmma +H
akkarɔ ‘call’	ant-âkkarɔ +H	C-ánt-âkkarɔ +H
ɔmúɲɛ ‘steal’	ant-ɔmúɲɛ +H	C-ánt-ɔmúɲɛ +H
ɔkkwôt ‘kill’	ant-ɔkkwôt	C-ánt-ɔkkwôt

Completive **C-ántər** precedes dependent incompletive or dependent perfective TAM-stems of the main verb, generating the same tone patterns on the main verb as the Completive auxiliary **C-arəkât** ‘as always’. Though these tones cannot be regularly derived from the combination of **C-ántər** and dependent incompletive main verb, and though **C-ántər** is no longer a regular Completive (the regular Completive would have been ***C-antât**, regularly realized ***C-antár** or ***C-antar** before a vowel-initial main verb), I gloss the main verb as dependent incompletive (like after **C-arəkât**), and the auxiliary stem **ántər** as completive.

The second vowel of ***C-antât** most likely has been reduced to **ə** before developing the short variant **C-ánt**, which has the high tone now on the first mora. Probably under influence of this short form,

the high tone then moved to the first mora on the longer form **C-ántər** as well.

The short Completive auxiliary **C-ánt** is —apart from its tonal effect on the following verb stem— no longer distinct from the Incompletive **C-ánt** + H. However, since it is a free variant of **C-ántər**, and since it has the same tonal effect on the following dependent incomplete main verb as **C-ántər**, I will still consider it a reduced completive stem. Note also that **C-ántər** and **C-ánt** have no dependent counterparts, which also points at them being former Completives, in the first case still on the pathway of loosing the completive marking, in the second case already having lost it, except for its tonal effects on the following element.

Notably, a reconstruction as ***antə** (with Completive ***C-antət**) would be possible as well. Reduction and tonal change would in that case have followed the same pathway.

Table 75 presents the forms of Completive **C-ántər** / **C-ánt** followed by the dependent incomplete TAM-stem of a main verb. With **əmóɲe** ‘steal’ and **əkkwət** ‘kill’ there is tone bridge.

Table 73 **C-ántər** / **C-ánt** and dep. incomplete TAM-stem

	<i>C-ántər / C-ánt + dep. incomplete TAM-stem</i>
ɪmma ‘see’	C-ántər-ɪmma + H / C-ánt-ɪmma + H
akkarə ‘call’	C-ántər-akkarə + H / C-ánt-akkarə + H
əmóɲe ‘steal’	C-ántər-əmóɲe + H / C-ánt-əmóɲe + H
əkkwət ‘kill’	C-ántər-əkkwət / C-ánt-əkkwət

Completive **C-ántər** and **C-ánt** can also be followed by a dependent perfective main verb TAM-stem (just as can **C-arəkāt** and **C-arək**). A dependent perfective TAM-stem can, moreover, follow after Incompletive **C-ánt** + H and Dependent Incompletive **ant** + H. Preceded by Completive **C-ántər**/**C-ánt** the dependent perfective is all-low or has tone bridge until its own high or falling tone; preceded by Incompletive **C-ánt** + H and Dependent Incompletive **ant** + H the

presence of a floating high tone can be seen when the main verb is all-low. In table 75, Dependent Incompletive **ant** + H with dependent perfective main verb TAM-stem is presented in the first column, Incompletive **C-ánt** + H with dependent perfective main verb TAM-stem in the second, and Completive auxiliaries with dependent perfective main verb TAM-stems in the third:

Table 74 Forms of ***anta** with dependent perfective TAM-stem

	ant + H + dep. perfective TAM-stem	C-ánt + H + dep. perfective TAM-stem	C-ántər / C-ánt + dep. perfective TAM- stem
imma 'see'	ant-ímmakat + H	C-ánt-ímmakat + H	C-ántər-immakat + H C-ánt-immakat + H
akkarɔ 'call'	ant-âkkarat + H	C-ánt-âkkarat + H	C-ántər-akkarat + H C-ánt-akkarat + H
ɔmóɲe 'steal'	ant-ɔmóɲekat + H	C-ánt-ɔmóɲekat + H	C-ántər-ɔmóɲekat + H C-ánt-ɔmóɲekat + H
ɔkkwât 'kill'	ant-ɔkkwât	C-ánt-ɔkkwât	C-ántər-ɔkkwât C-ánt-ɔkkwât

I thus assume that, originally, **C-ántər** and **C-ánt** developed from a regular Completive ***C-antât**, like **C-arək** has developed from (still existing) **C-arəkât**. While the auxiliaries are losing completive inflection and are probably moving towards just one (short) auxiliary form, the tone patterns regularly generated by the (formerly) full Completive auxiliary become associated with completive semantics of the verb as a whole. The same development can be seen in the auxiliaries of 'again', based on the reconstructed auxiliary verb ***appa** (or perhaps ***appɔ**) (see 12.16). Loss of completive inflection has gone furthest in the negation auxiliaries, where only the main verb TAM-stems still carry the (tonal) marking of a formerly Completive auxiliary, so that, in that context, it has become useful to speak of dependent completive main verb TAM-stems (see 12.17).

Meaning and use

Auxiliaries of ***anta** express an opportunity, a possibility or just that the moment is there for something to be done or to happen. The auxiliary is often rather difficult to translate in English. I gloss it with ‘can’, but it does not refer to personal skill or ability.

Some examples with (non-dependent) Incompletive **c-ánt** +H followed by a Dependent Incompletive main verb follow here. Only the tones on the main verb show that the auxiliary is an Incompletive (and not a Completive).

pul p-ánt-əmóne károk ana p-p-á.kənn-ənékə
 person C-can:INCOMPL-steal:DEPINCOMPL bag and PRO-C-NEG-take:DEPINCOMPL
 the person can steal the bag, but he will not hold (keep) it

ə-rən ʔ-ánt-ímma cərok ɣórrot
 PERS-12A C-can:INCOMPL-see:DEPINCOMPL mountain tomorrow
 we will be able to see the mountain tomorrow (context: now we cannot see it because it is dark)

The following sentence is situated in the Past:

ana mənn.ákka m-p-aa.t i.ccík k-óŋ
 and when 1-C-come:COMPL near C-POSS3
itti m-p-ánt-əkətá-k ana ...
 that 1-C-can:INCOMPL-look_at:DEPINCOMPL-O3 and
 and when I had come near him so that I could see him, (then) ...
 (fr. written story)

The auxiliary can have a politeness effect:

m-p-əŋə.é itti ə-nən ʔ-ánt-əkəne-n itti
 1-C-like:COMPL that PERS-2A C-can:INCOMPL-show:DEPINCOMPL-O1 that
ə-nən ʔ-a.ra tún itti kát-ʔa cənέ
 PERS-2A C-cultivate:INCOMPL onion that how-Q here
 could you show me how you cultivate onion here? (lit.: I want that you can show me how you cultivate onion here) (fr. written text)

Dependent Incompletive **ant** +H with a dependent incomplete main verb TAM-stem is very common as a friendly command to a singular or plural addressee. When addressing a single person, there is no pronoun clitic. **ant** does not seem to be in Imperative TAM, since the Imperative of an **a**-final verb does not bring a high tone to the next element. In case of a plural addressee, the pronoun clitic ‘you (PL)’ is present in the form of **ń-** or **śn-**. I translate **ant** in these cases with ‘please’, though ‘please’ is perhaps a little strong.

Table 75 Commands with **ant** +H

	<i>sg. addressee</i>	<i>pl. addressee</i>	
ípittɔ ‘ask’	ant-ípittɔ	(ɔ)n-ánt-ípittɔ	please ask!
ɔɔɔɔ ‘stand’	ant-ɔɔɔɔ	(ɔ)n-ánt-ɔɔɔɔ	please wait!
ɔccɛkɔt ‘hear, listen’	ant-ɔccɛkɔt	(ɔ)n-ánt-ɔccɛkɔt	please listen!
ɔllɔ ‘run’	ant-ɔllɔ	(ɔ)n-ánt-ɔllɔ	please make way!

Examples with Completive auxiliary, as shown by the tones on the main verb, follow here. Such constructions express that the opportunity for something to happen has come (or had come at a certain point in time), implying that, at the time of speech (or at the time reference point), the action has just been carried out and/or there is a resulting state.

m-p-ántər-aɔ

1-C-can:COMPL-come:DEPINCOMPL

I have arrived just now

m-p-ánt-ɔ

1-C-can:COMPL-die:DEPINCOMPL

pəɾɪn

finally

I am dead now / I am completely finished (said when something serious has happened)

inénní m-p-ántər-ərrət kɪnɪt t̪əpʊt pəɾɪm
 today 1-C-can:COMPL-push_to:DEPINCOMPL teeth outside finally

today the time has come for me to suffer very much (more lit.: today the moment has come to push out the teeth completely)

ka k-ántər-ókkót táɬ-ta
 body C-can:COMPL-do:DEPINCOMPL how-Q

how has the body been doing? (typically asked when the last time the speaker saw the addressee, the addressee was ill)

m-p-ántər-əṭəkka p-əpərət
 1-C-can:COMPL-become:DEPINCOMPL C-good

I had the chance to become well (i.e. I am fine now; answer to the question in the previous example)

The next example has a reference point in the past:

ə-nɪn t̪-ánt-ɪət áɬʊɾan pəɾɪm
 PERS-1A C-can:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL thieves finally

we could finally catch the thieves

Some examples with Dependent Incompletive **ant** and Incompletive C-**ánt** preceding a Dependent Perfective verb follow here. Such events are situated in the past, or, as a consecutive event, in the relative future.

akka móre m-əká.t cɪk
 that cultivating_party C-be:COMPL VREF
a-púl ant-ɪkk.at ɲəpak
 CONJ-person can:DEPINCOMPL-drink:DEPPRFV beer

because of the cultivating party, the man (then) could drink beer (he had the opportunity and he did it)

mənn-ákka **ʊkʊl** **w-ittát.ɛ** **kiccé**
 even-that child C-become_fat:COMPL properly
a-kakká **ant-ákkakat** **tʉan**
 CONJ.PERS-Kakka can:DEPINCOMPL-come:DEPPRFV home

only when the child was completely better, Kakka finally came to the house (implying: she came too late, she should have come during the child's illness).

an-ákka **maɾɪ** **m-ɔkkɔt.ɛ** **m-əɾɛ-m-əɾapórók**
 and-that days C-do:COMPL C-two-C-two.three
a-íke **ant-ákkakat** **nó-capú**
 CONJ-flood can:DEPINCOMPL-come:DEPPRFV on-ground

and when the seven days were done, the flood came over the earth (Genesis 7:10)

An example with Completive auxiliary C-**ántər**/C-**ánt** preceding a Dependent Perfective main verb follows here:

pʉl **p-ántər-ómóɲɛ.kat** / **p-ánt-ómóɲɛ.kat**
 person C-can:COMPL-steal:DEPPRFV / C-can:COMPL-steal:DEPPRFV

the person just (finally) got the chance and stole

12.16. *appa ‘again’

The auxiliary ‘again’ has three TAMs, as given in table 77. These forms are based on a verb which can be reconstructed as ***appa** (see further below).

Table 76 TAM-stems and TAMs of ***appa**

TAM-stem		TAM	
dependent incompletive	app + H	Dependent Incompletive	app + H
incompletive	ápp + H	Incompletive	C- ápp + H
completive	áppər shortened: ápp	Completive	C- áppər shortened: C- ápp

The initial **a** of the dependent auxiliary (and the absence of a form with **ɔ**) suggests development from an **a**-initial verb. The final vowel

is less clear, but may well have been **a** as well, so that a possible reconstruction of the auxiliary is ***appa**. **C-áppər**, like **C-ántər**, then probably developed from Completive ***C-appât** (regularly realized as ***C-appár** or ***C-appar** before a vowel-initial main verb TAM-stem). The second vowel **a** then reduced to **ə** before developing the short variant **C-ápp**, which had the high tone now on the first mora. Probably under influence of this short form, the high tone then also changed to the first mora on the longer form.

Notably, a reconstruction as ***appə** (with Completive ***C-appôt**) would be possible as well. Reduction and tonal change would in that case have followed the same pathway.

The Dependent Incompletive and the Incompletive TAMs of ‘again’ (**app** + H and **C-ápp** + H) are followed by a dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb.

Table 77 **app** + H and **C-ápp** + H and dep. incomplete TAM-stem

	app + H + <i>dependent incomplete</i>	C-ápp + H + <i>dependent incomplete</i>
imma ‘see’	app-ímma + H	C-ápp-ímma + H
akkarə ‘call’	app-âkkarə + H	C-ápp-âkkarə + H
əmúɲɛ ‘steal’	app-əmúɲɛ + H	C-ápp-əmúɲɛ + H
əkkwôt ‘kill’	app-əkkwôt	C-ápp-əkkwôt

C-áppər precedes dependent incompletives or dependent perfectives of the main verb, generating the same tone patterns on main verbs as the Completive auxiliaries **C-arəkât**/**C-arək** ‘as always’ and **C-ántər**/**C-ánt**. Though these tones cannot be regularly derived from the combination of **C-áppər** and dependent incomplete main verb, I gloss the main verb as dependent incomplete and **C-áppər** as completive, assuming the same tonal process as after **C-arəkât**/**C-arək** ‘as always’ and **C-ántər**/**C-ánt**.

Like C-**ánt**, the short completive form C-**ápp** is no longer distinct from the incomplete form of the auxiliary, but, as a free variant of C-**áppər** is glossed as completive as well. Like completives, C-**áppər**/C-**ápp** has no dependency opposition. The whole process appears to be precisely analogous to the development of C-**ántər**/C-**ánt**. The Completive auxiliaries with dependent incomplete main verb TAM-stem are presented in table 79.

Table 78 C-**áppər**/C-**ápp** and dep. incomplete TAM-stem

	<i>C-áppər/C-ápp + dep. incomplete TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	C- áppər-imma +H C- ápp-imma +H
akkarə ‘call’	C- áppər-akkarə +H C- ápp-akkarə +H
əmújɛ ‘steal’	C- áppər-əmújɛ +H C- ápp-əmújɛ +H
əkkwôt ‘kill’	C- áppər-əkkwôt C- ápp-əkkwôt

Dependent perfectives TAM-stems can be preceded by Completive C-**áppər** and C-**ápp**, but also by Incomplete C-**ápp** +H and Dependent Incomplete **app** +H (just as they can be preceded by Completive C-**ántər**/C-**ánt**, and by Incomplete C-**ánt** +H and Dependent Incomplete **ant** +H). After C-**áppər**/C-**ápp** the dependent perfective stem is all-low or there is tone bridge until its own high; preceded by **app** +H the presence of the preceding high tone can be seen when the main verb itself is all-low. The forms are given in table 80.

Table 79 Forms of ***appa** with dependent perfective TAM-stem

	<i>app +H + dep. perfective TAM-stem</i>	<i>C-ápp +H + dep. perfective TAM-stem</i>	<i>C-áppər/C-ápp + dep. perfective TAM- stem</i>
--	---	--	--

imma 'see'	app-ímmakat + H	C-ápp-ímmakat + H	C-áppər-ímmakat + H C-ápp-ímmakat + H
akkarə 'call'	app-âkkarat + H	C-ápp-âkkarat + H	C-áppər-akkarat + H C-ápp-akkarat + H
əməne 'steal'	app-əmənekət + H	C-ápp-əmənekət + H	C-áppər-əmənekət + H C-ápp-əmənekət + H
əkkwət 'kill'	app-əkkwāt	C-ápp-əkkwāt	C-áppər-əkkwāt C-ápp-əkkwāt

Commands with 'again' are formed with Dependent Incompletive **app** + H and the dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb. When addressing a singular second person no pronoun (clitic) is applied. When addressing a plural second person, these commands have the full 2PL pronoun **ənən**, or the clitics **ən-** or **ń-**. Examples with the latter are given in table 81.

Table 80 Commands with **app** + H

<i>verb</i>	<i>2SG addressee</i>	<i>2PL addressee</i>	<i>English</i>
akkarə 'call'	app-âkkarə	(ə)n-ápp-âkkarə	call again!
əcəre 'stand'	app-əcəre	(ə)n-ánt-əcəre	wait again!
əccəkət 'hear'	app-əccəkət	(ə)n-ápp-əccəkət	listen again!
əllə 'run'	app-əllə	(ə)n-ápp-əllə	make way again!

The following two examples contrast a verb with Completive 'again' and dependent incomplete main verb with a verb with Completive 'again' and dependent perfective main verb. The first draws attention to the result of the action, another goat being dead, not so much to the action of the lion. It also implies that the event happened recently. The second draws attention to the action of the lion, not so

much to another goat being dead. The expression makes no claim about when the event occurred. Therefore, in athetic statement, addition of an adjunct of time is appropriate.

ṭepa ṭ-ápp-ṣkkwót ímít w-ṣṭek
 lion C-again:COMPL-kill:DEPINCOMPL goat C-some

the lion has again killed a goat (i.e.: another goat is dead from the lion)

ṭepa ṭ-ápp-ṣkkw.át ímít w-ṣṭek mæccm-tí
 lion C-again:COMPL-kill:DEPPRFV goat C-some yesterday-you_know

the lion killed a goat again yesterday, you know

The following is an example with Dependent Incompletive **app** + H preceding a dependent perfective main verb. The verb now denotes a future consecutive event:

ṣ-pəllm p-a.ṭṭe nṣ-ṭokól
 PERS-one_of_group C-leave:INCOMPL on-children
á-kw-á.nn-ápp-éṣ.kat pṣṭm itti m-p-a.íne ókol
 CONJ-3-NEG:DEP-again:DEPINCOMPL-speak:DEPPRFV finally that 1-C-go_to:INCOMPL child

a man will abandon his children and he will never again say ‘I go to my child’ (fr. written essay)

There is an adverb **əttəṅ** ‘again’. This adverb can be used instead of the auxiliary but can also be added to a clause that has a verb with the auxiliary ‘again’:

k-kw-ṣkkṣ.ṭé əttəṅ
 3-C-do:COMPL again

s/he has done it again

k-kw-ápp-ṣkkót
 3-C-again:COMPL-do:DEPINCOMPL

s/he has done it again

k-kw-ápp-ṣkkót əttəṅ
 3-C-again:COMPL-do:DEPINCOMPL again

s/he has done it again

12.17. Negation auxiliary

Negation is marked by TAMs of the verb **ɔ́kórənnɔ** ‘let, abstain’ functioning as auxiliary verb. As a main verb **ɔ́kórənnɔ** has a full inflectional paradigm, as an auxiliary verb its inflectional paradigm is reduced. As an auxiliary of negation it has two TAMs, both of which have shortened forms:

Dep. Incompletive **ɔ́kórənn** + H, shortened: **ɔ́kənn** + H, **ʒnn** + H
 Incompletive **C-akórənn** + H, shortened: **akənn** + H, **ǎnn** + H

Main verb stems coming after a negation auxiliary can have the shape of a dependent incomplete TAM-stem or of a dependent perfective TAM-stem. Stems with the (segmental) shape of a dependent incomplete, however, come in two sets of tone patterns: the tone patterns that are expected on the basis of the composing parts, but also an unexpected set of tone patterns. The latter are the same tone patterns as found after the Completive auxiliaries **C-arəkât/C-arək**, **C-ántər/C-ánt** and **C-áppər/C-ápp** (sections 12.14-12.16). It seems then that the negation auxiliaries have grammaticalized to the extent that a former Completive auxiliary (which would have regularly generating the different tone patterns on the main verb stems) has adopted the shape of the Incomplete auxiliary. Moreover, it allows for absence of the concord, so that the formerly Completive auxiliary now has a dependent counterpart. Negated verbs still have the contrast incomplete-completive, but this is now only marked through the tones on the main verb, and no longer segmentally or tonally on the negation auxiliary itself.

Glossing

Synchronically, therefore, main verb stems after a negation auxiliary with tones as after (Completive) **C-arəkât/C-arək**, **C-ántər/C-ánt** and **C-áppər/C-ápp** will be regarded as dependent completive TAM-stems and glossed as DEPCOMPL. Their tones are the only markers of completiveness of the verb. The negation morphemes (synchronically) are no longer incompletives or completives, but only

have a dependency opposition. They will therefore be glossed as NEG vs. NEG:DEP.

Negation auxiliaries are always followed by a dependent TAM-stem: a dependent incomplete, a dependent perfective or a dependent completive. Examples with **imma** ‘see’, **akkarə** ‘call’, **əməje** ‘steal’ and **əkkwət** ‘kill’ follow here.

The longer and shorter forms are free variants. The longest forms, however, do not seem to be used so often. In the Təmətən area the middle form is generally preferred, according to my consultant (JS), while in the Təru and Tərî areas, the shortest forms are very common. In the tables, the names of the TAMs are given in italics.

Table 81 Dependent Negative Incomplete and Negative Incomplete

	<i>Dependent Negative Incomplete:</i> əkərənn + H/ əkənn + H/ ənn + H + <i>dep. incomplete main verb TAM-stem</i>	<i>Negative Incomplete:</i> C- a.kərənn + H/ C- a.kənn + H/C- ə.nn + H + <i>dep. incomplete main verb TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	əkərənn-imma + H əkənn-imma + H ənn-imma + H	C- a.kərənn-imma + H C- a.kənn-imma + H C- ə.nn-imma + H
akkarə ‘call’	əkərənn-akkarə + H əkənn-akkarə + H ənn-akkarə + H	C- a.kərənn-akkarə + H C- a.kənn-akkarə + H C- ə.nn-akkarə + H
əməje ‘steal’	əkərənn-əməje + H əkənn-əməje + H ənn-əməje + H	C- a.kərənn-əməje + H C- a.kənn-əməje + H C- ə.nn-əməje + H
əkkwət ‘kill’	əkərənn-əkkwət əkənn-əkkwət ənn-əkkwət	C- a.kərənn-əkkwət C- a.kənn-əkkwət C- ə.nn-əkkwət

Table 82 Dependent Negative Completive and Completive

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Dependent Negative Completive:</i> <i>ɔ́kórənn/ɔ́kónn/ǎnn + dependent completive main verb TAM-stem</i>	<i>Negative Completive:</i> <i>C-a.kórənn/C-a.kónn/C-ǎnn + dependent completive main verb TAM-stem</i>
imma 'see'	ɔ́kórənn-imma + H ɔ́kónn-imma + H ǎnn-imma + H	C-a.kórənn-imma + H C-a.kónn-imma + H C-ǎnn-imma + H
akkarɔ 'call'	ɔ́kórənn-akkarɔ + H ɔ́kónn-akkarɔ + H ǎnn-akkarɔ + H	C-a.kórənn-akkarɔ + H C-a.kónn-akkarɔ + H C-ǎnn-akkarɔ + H
ɔ́móɲe 'steal'	ɔ́kórənn-ɔ́móɲe + H ɔ́kónn-ɔ́móɲe + H ǎnn-ɔ́móɲe + H	C-a.kórənn-ɔ́móɲe + H C-a.kónn-ɔ́móɲe + H C-ǎnn-ɔ́móɲe + H
ɔ́kkwɔ́t 'kill'	ɔ́kórənn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t ɔ́kónn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t ǎnn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t	C-a.kórənn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t C-a.kónn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t C-ǎnn-ɔ́kkwɔ́t

Table 83 Dependent Negative Perfective and Negative Perfective

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Dependent Negative Perfective:</i> <i>ɔ́kórənn/ɔ́kónn/ǎnn + dep. perfective TAM-stem</i>	<i>Negative Perfective:</i> <i>C-a.kórənn/C-a.kónn/C-ǎnn + dep. perfective TAM-stem</i>
imma 'see'	ɔ́kórənn-immakat + H ɔ́kónn-immakat + H ǎnn-immakat + H	C-a.kórənn-immakat + H C-a.kónn-immakat + H C-ǎnn-immakat + H
akkarɔ	ɔ́kórənn-akkarat + H	C-a.kórənn-akkarat + H

‘call’	၁ကေnn-akkarat + H ၁nn-akkarat + H	C-a.kေnn-akkarat + H C-၁.nn-akkarat + H
၁မုၤ ‘steal’	၁ကေၣ်nn-၁မုၤnekat + H ၁ကေnn-၁မုၤnekat + H ၁nn-၁မုၤnekat + H	C-a.kေၣ်nn-၁မုၤnekat + H C-a.kေnn-၁မုၤnekat + H C-၁.nn-၁မုၤnekat + H
၁kkwât ‘kill’	၁ကေၣ်nn-၁kkwât ၁ကေnn-၁kkwât ၁nn-၁kkwât	C-a.kေၣ်nn-၁kkwât C-a.kေnn-၁kkwât C-၁.nn-၁kkwât

The sets below illustrate the different non-dependent TAMs. **ပုၤ** ‘person’, **၁ကုၤ** ‘child’ and **ပုၤပုၤ** ‘snake’ are low-toned nouns. The TAMs in the first set are based on **akkar** ‘call’, in the second on **၁kkwât** ‘kill’. In both sets, the first example has a Negative Incompletive, the second a Negative Completive, the third a Negative Perfective.

ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-၁kkar **၁ကုၤ** ‘the man does/will not call the child’
ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-akkar **၁ကုၤ** ‘the man has not called the child’
ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-akkar.at **၁ကုၤ** ‘the man did not call the child’

ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-၁kkwât **ပုၤပုၤ** ‘the man does/will not kill the snake’
ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-၁kkwât **ပုၤပုၤ** ‘the man has not killed the snake’
ပုၤ ပ-a.kေnn-၁kkw.ât **ပုၤပုၤ** ‘the man did not kill the snake’

There are signs of still further grammaticalization of the negation auxiliary. Particularly among speakers who use the shortest form, there is a tendency to use **a** in the dependent form instead of **၁**, so that only **၁nn** (C-၁nn) remains.

Use and scope

To start with, some sentences will be presented with **၁ကေၣ်nn** ‘let’ as main verb. The verb can express ‘let’ in the sense of ‘allow’, as in the following examples:

pul **p-əkərənnə.t**
 person C-let:COMPL

the man allowed it

... a-túulɪ **əkərənn.aɬ-ɔk**
 CONJ-hyena let:DEPPRFV-O3

... and the hyena let him (do it) (fr. written story)

The verb can also express ‘let’ in the sense of ‘abstain from’:

m-p-əká.t **cɪk** **a-n-ɔ́mentɛ** **ittɪ** **n-əkərənnə** **karră**
 1-C-be:COMPL VREF CONJ-1-say.PLUR:DEPINCOMPL that 2A-let:DEPINCOMPL lie

I was saying all the time ‘do not lie!’

Negative commands (prohibitives) are formed with the Imperative **kərənnɪ** of **əkərənnə**:

kərənnɪ **ɔpəlle**
 let:IMP be_afraid:DEPINCOMPL

do not be afraid!

kərənnɪ **ɔɾəkɔ**⁷⁵ **cɪk** **n-ukun** **w-ɔ́-kúrê**
 let:IMP eat:DEPINCOMPL VREF with-hand C-of-left_side

do not eat with your left hand!

For an advice not to do something the Dependent Incompletive auxiliary is used. The two expressions below, in which the 2SG subject clitic **ɲ**- ‘you’ is deleted between vowels, differ tonally, due to the use of the subjunctive particle **â**- (first example) vs. the conjunctive particle **á**- (second example). In the first example, the advice has immediate relevance; the addressee is about to begin eating. The advice in the second example is a general advice, for some time in the future.

⁷⁵ In this environment the final vowel of **ɔɾəkɔ** is realized as low.

á-kənn-ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌⁷⁶

SUBJ-(2-)NEG:DEP-eat:DEPINCOMPL

cɪk

VREF

n-ɔ̌kɔ̌n

with-hand

w-ɔ̌-kúré

c-of-left_side

you must not eat with your left hand! (the addressee is about to eat)

á-kənn-ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌⁷⁷

CONJ-(2-)NEG:DEP-eat:DEPINCOMPL

cɪk

VREF

n-ɔ̌kɔ̌n

with-hand

w-ɔ̌-kúré

c-of-left_side

you must not eat with your left hand (as a general advice)

If the eating has already started and the speaker wants to stop the addressee, the Dependent Incompletive auxiliary is used directly. Its long form can be glossed as the auxiliary but also as the verb **ɔ̌kəɾənnɔ̌**:

ɔ̌kəɾənn-ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌⁷⁸

NEG:DEP-let:DEPINCOMPL-eat:DEPINCOMPL

cɪk

VREF

n-ɔ̌kɔ̌n

with-hand

w-ɔ̌-kúré

c-of-left_side

no eating with your left hand! (while catching the hand of the child)

Further examples illustrating the use of the negation auxiliaries follow here.

Just like the Completive can express a present state or a present sensory perception, a Negative Completive can express negation of a present state or a of present sensory perception:

ɔ̌-rɔ̌n t-ǎ.nn-ɪmma

PERS-12A C-NEG-see:DEPCOMPL

mɔ̌ɾɔ̌n

mountains

ákka

that

ɣíɾímák

darkness

ɣ-á.ɪk

c-be:PR

we cannot see the mountains because it is dark

An example of a Negative Perfective is the following. The sentence does not refer to an event that just happened, but forms part of a series of events that are set in the past.

⁷⁶ In this environment the final vowel of **ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌** is realized as low.

⁷⁷ In this environment the final vowel of **ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌** is realized as low.

⁷⁸ In this environment the final vowel of **ɔ̌ɾəkɔ̌** is realized as low.

ɔ-kín ʈ-á.nn-ókə́ta.kat⁷⁹ ʈépa
 PERS-3A C-NEG-look_at:DEPPRFV lion

they did not look at the lion

A Negative Perfective does not necessarily refer to an event in the past. It can also refer to a consecutive event in the future, as in the sentence below. Because of the conjunctive particle **á**, which selects a dependent verb, the auxiliary **ǎnn** instead of **ǎnn** is in principle expected here. This opposition, however, is not for all speakers functional anymore. The negation morpheme was given here with **a**; the speaker confirmed that some people would use **ɔ** here. Note further that there is a double auxiliary on the verb ‘speak’ (the example was also given in the section 12.6 on ‘again’).

ɔ-pəllm p-a.ʈte nɔ-ɲokól
 PERS-one_of_group C-leave:INCOMPL on-children

á-kw-á.nn-ápp-ére.kat⁸⁰ pə́ɾm itti m-p-a.íne ókul
 CONJ-3-NEG:DEP-again:DEPINCOMPL-speak:DEPPRFV finally that 1-C-go_to:INCOMPL child

a man will abandon his children and he will never again say ‘I go to my child’ (fr. written essay)

The following example was given with initial **ɔ** on the negation auxiliary. Here too, there is a double auxiliary on the main verb, but now the negation auxiliary is the second.

məna ɔ-nɔn ʈ-ánt-əkə́nn-əccíkwə́-ín ...
 even PERS-2A C-can:INCOMPL-NEG:DEP-hear:DEPINCOMPL-O1

even if you do not listen to me ... (John 10:38)

Lumun has no negative adverbs. Hence an English expression with ‘never’ is negated on the verb in Lumun:

⁷⁹ The tone on the negation morpheme is realized as high in this environment.

⁸⁰ After the 3rd person pronoun clitic **kw** the negation morpheme is realized with a high tone, not with a falling tone.

tɪk **ɛn-t-i** **t-ǎ.nn-íɔ** **áttík** (**< ɪɔ**)
 fire DEM-C-NEARSP C-NEG-die:DEPINCOMPL ever
 this fire will never die

In the English equivalent of the following example, negation is expressed on the verb ‘want’. In Lumun it is expressed on the verb **ɔkɪttɪnɛ** ‘destroy for’:

m-p-ɔŋɔt.é **ittɪ** **ól**
 1-C-like:COMPL that people
w-ǎ.nn-ɔkɪttɪnɛ **nɪn** **kéccók** **k-ín**
 C-NEG-destroy_for:DEPINCOMPL O1A market C-POSS1A

I do not want people to destroy our market (lit.: I want that people do not destroy for us our market)

Negation can, however, also be expressed on ‘want’, as in the next example. Combined with negation, the verb **ɔŋkɔt** ‘want, agree’ is used, not **ɔŋɔt** ‘like, want, love’.

m-p-ǎ.nn-ɔŋkɔt **ittɪ** **ɔ-rɪt** **t-áppuɔta** **pérɪn**
 1-C-NEG-want:DEPINCOMPL that PERS-12 C-play:INCOMPL finally

I don’t want to play with you (SG) anymore (I don’t want that you and I play anymore)

A negated construction with ‘be’ is used in order to establish scope over a noun phrase:

ɔkónn-ɔká **papókɪra** **akk-ɔkɪccé.r-ɔŋ**
 NEG:DEP-be:DEPINCOMPL leopard FOC-chase:COMPL-O2

it was not a leopard that chased you

Inherently negative verbs

A few verbs are inherently negative: **ɔmmâ** ‘not know’, **ɛlla** (tr.) ‘not have, lack’, **ɛlla** (intr.) ‘be absent, lack’ and **ɔɾa** ‘refuse, not want’. With a negation auxiliary these verbs express strong affirmation (assertive focus). Two examples in different TAMs (Negative

Incompletive and Negative Completive) are given with **əmmâ** ‘not know’. The Negative Completive expresses a present state.

m-p-a.kənn-əmmá akka a-n-əkkót ɲəɾɛ
 1-C-NEG-not_know;DEPINCOMPL that CONJ-1-do;DEPINCOMPL work

I *will* know how to do the work (lit.: I will not not know how to do the work. Conveying: I will find out, I will learn)

m-p-a.kənn-əmmá akka a-n-əkkót ɲəɾɛ
 1-C-NEG-not_know;DEPCOMPL that CONJ-1-do;DEPINCOMPL work

I *do* know how to do the work

12.18. Irrealis

Irrealis is marked by the auxiliary **ɛ̃**. The auxiliary occurs in two forms, a dependent form and a non-dependent form. The non-dependent form is always preceded by a concord (unless replaced by a focus marker), the dependent irrealis marker cannot be preceded by a concord:

ɛ̃ (dependent)
c-â (non-dependent)

The dependency value will only be marked on the dependent irrealis marker (IRR:DEP).

The irrealis morpheme precedes a (non-dependent!) completive or a past TAM-stem of the main verb. Thus, in combination with the irrealis marker, the completive and past TAM stems are not immediately preceded by a concord. Apart from focus constructions, in which the concord is replaced by a focus marker, this is the only (morpho-syntactic) environment where this happens.

Irrealis **ɛ̃** coalesces with the initial vowel of the completive of past TAM-stem of the main verb that follows. This results in **î, î, û, ô, ɛ̃**, or **â**. Irrealis **ɛ̃** before **ə** results in **ɛ̃ə**. Coalesced vowels with a contour can be pronounced with some length.

Irrealis **â** is realized as **á** before the vowels **ĩ**, **ɪ**, **u**, **ʊ** and **ə**, resulting in diphthong **ái**, **ái**, **áu**, **áu** and **áə**. The falling contour of the irrealis marker spreads over the vowel sequence. Irrealis **â** before **a** and **ɔ** is realized as **â**. **â** coalesces with an initial vowel **ɛ**, resulting in **ê**.

The **ɔ̃/â** opposition that functions as marker of dependency versus non-dependency shows that irrealis developed from an **ɔ**-initial verb. In such verbs the same opposition is found in the dependent inceptive TAM-stem versus the inceptive TAM-stem. The irrealis possibly developed from **ɔkâ** ‘be’. It lacks the segmental part **ka** of ‘be’, but the same goes for the copula **C-á** and the Present TAM of ‘be’, **C-aĩk**.

In environments that select a dependent TAM-stem, for example after a negation auxiliary, the irrealis marker in principle occurs as **ɔ̃**. When the irrealis marker is directly preceded by both a subject and a concord, only its non-dependent form **â** is possible.

Table 84 Dependent Irrealis Inceptive and Irrealis Inceptive

<i>verb</i>	<i>Dependent Irrealis Inceptive:</i> ɔ̃ + <i>inceptive TAM-stem</i>	<i>Irrealis Inceptive:</i> C-â + <i>inceptive TAM-stem</i>
ɪmma ‘see’	ĩmma.t	C-á-ĩmma.t
ʊnɔ ‘build’	ũnɔ.t	C-á-ũnɔ.t
ɔkkwɔ̃ ‘hit’	ɔkkwɔ̃.t	C-âkkwɔ̃.t
ɔkkwɔ̃t ‘kill’	ɔkkwɔ̃t.é	C-âkkwɔ̃t.é
ɛrɛ ‘speak’	êrê.t	C-êrê.t
ərrɔ ‘push’	ɔ̃-ərrɔ.t	C-á-ərrɔ.t
apɔ ‘fall’	âpɔ.t	C-âpɔ.t
aɔ ‘come’	âá.t	C-âá.t

Table 85 Dependent Irrealis Past and Irrealis Past

<i>verb</i>	<i>Dependent Irrealis Past:</i> <i>ê + past TAM-stem</i>	<i>Irrealis Past:</i> <i>C-â + past TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	îmma.káɛ	C-â-imma.káɛ
ɔnɔ ‘build’	ôn.áɛ	C-â-on.áɛ
ɔkkwɔ ‘hit’	â.kkw.áɛ	C-âkkw.áɛ
ɔkkwɔt ‘kill’	â-kkw.áɛ	C-âkkw.áɛ
ere ‘speak’	êre.káɛ	C-êre.káɛ
ərrɔ ‘push’	ɔ-ərrá.ɛ	C-â-ərrá.ɛ
apɔ ‘fall’	âp.áɛ	C-âp.áɛ
ao ‘come’	C-âkka.káɛ	C-âkka.káɛ

Some speakers use **â** in morpho-syntactic contexts where (dependent) **ê** would be expected. An example is the following. The irrealis marker comes after the negation auxiliary, which selects a dependent verb form. Nevertheless, **â** was used:

pul **p-a.kónn-á-ɛê.t**
 person C-NEG-IRR:DEP-go:COMPL
 the man should not have gone

Another case is the following in which irrealis **ê** is expected, but in which **â** was considered possible as well. The initial vowel of the past TAM stem of the main verb is **ɔ** (the verb is **ɔmmâ** ‘not know’).

m-p-a.kónn-ɔ-ɔmma.káɛ / **m-p-a.kónn-â-amma.káɛ**
 1-C-NEG-IRR:DEP.not_know:PST / 1-C-NEG-IRR:DEP-not_know:PST
ɔɛkɔ **túrít** **ámmá** **ɔ-íára** **p-ɔká.t** **p-ɔɲkéné.r-ín**
 eat:DEPINCOMPL food if PERS-my_mother C-be:COMPL C-show:COMPL-O1
 I *would* have known how to eat food, if my mother had taught me (lit.: I would not have not known ...)

It seems then, that, at least in the speech of some speakers, the irrealis marker is in a process of further grammaticalization, losing its dependency/non-dependency distinction. The same process is witnessed, at least for part of the speakers, in the negation auxiliaries (see 12.17).

Meaning and use

The irrealis marker can express that an event did not happen, while conveying that this is regretted by the speaker:

ŋ-kw-é-ɛlɪkkó.t pól ém-p-í
 2-C-IRR-release:COMPL person DEM-C-NEARSP

you should have released this man (i.e. you did not release this man, but it would have been better if you had)

In sentences which contain a clause introduced by **ámma** + H ‘if, when’, the irrealis marker is not used on the verb in the **ámma** + H -clause, only on the verb in the main clause. In the examples below, the irrealis conveys that the event would have occurred if the situation had been different.

ámma ŋ-kw-óká.t p-áppór-ómóŋe ana ŋ-kw-á-ɪó.t
 if 2-C-be:COMPL C-again:COMPL-steal:DEPINCOMPL and 2-C-IRR-die:COMPL

if you would have stolen again, you would have died/be dead.

ɔ-nɪn t-á-aká.t cɪk tórró ínénní
 PERS-12 C-IRR-be:COMPL VREF Lumun_country today

ámma t-ɔ́ák t-éllâ.t
 if war C-be_absent:COMPL

we would be in the Lumun area now, if the war had not been there

The following example has the dependent irrealis **ɔ̂**. It is the first verbal element in a clause introduced by the conjunctive marker **á**. In this environment the dependent form is selected:

ámmá m-p-á.p-p-íná.t a-n-ḡ-ḡkkwḡḡ-úḡ
 if 1-C-be:COMPL-C-know:COMPL CONJ-1-IRR:DEP-kill:COMPL-O2
 if I had known, I would have killed you

In my corpus, the Irrealis Completive is more frequent than the Irrealis Past. It is often difficult to establish a clear difference in interpretation between the two. Generally speaking, the Irrealis Past tends to draw the attention more strongly to the action or event itself while the Irrealis Completive tends to focus rather on the resulting situation. The sentence below, with an Irrealis Past, was first given with an Irrealis Completive, but is fine with both.

k-kw-é-élikk.áté pól ém-p-í
 3-C-IRR-release:PST person DEM-C-NEARSP
a-kw-ḡkəṛənnḡ i-p-élikkákw.t
 CONJ-3-let:DEPINCOMPL RES-C-be_released:COMPL

s/he should have released this person, while leaving the one who was released (or: s/he should have released this person and not the one who was released)

Irrealis can alternatively be expressed with a Completive of the verb **ḡnā** ‘bring’ (second example below) or with a Past Completive construction involving the defective verb **C-ḡnḡ** ‘have’ (third example below).

ḡ-kw-á-accḡkḡḡ-ín
 2-C-IRR-hear:COMPL-O1
 you should have listened to me

ḡ-kw-ḡná.t itti ḡ-kw-a.ccḡkḡḡ-ín
 2-C-bring:COMPL that 2-C-hear:INCOMPL-O1
 you should have listened to me

ḡ-kw-á.p-p-ḡnḡ itti ḡ-kw-a.ccḡkḡḡ-ín
 2-C-be:COMPL-C-have that 2-C-hear:INCOMPL-O1
 you should have listened to me

The above given constructions with **ᏔᏗ** ‘bring’ and **C-ᏔᏗ** ‘have’ can also be combined with an Irrealis Completive:

Ꮣ-kw-ᏔᏗ.t **itṭi** **Ꮣ-kw-á-accṭkṭ.ṭ-ín**
 2-C-bring:COMPL that 2-C-IRR-hear:COMPL-O1

you should have listened to me

Ꮣ-kw-á.p-p-ᏔᏗ **itṭi** **Ꮣ-kw-á-accṭkṭ.ṭ-ín**
 2-C-be:COMPL-C-have that 2-C-IRR-hear:COMPL-O1

you should have listened to me

C-ᏔᏗ ‘have’, which is undoubtedly related to **ᏔᏗ** ‘bring’, is further discussed in section 12.22 of this chapter.

12.18.1. Combinations of irrealis with some other auxiliaries

In case of other auxiliaries forming part of the verbal complex, the irrealis auxiliary always comes closest to the main verb, selecting a (non-dependent) completive or perfective TAM-stem.

Some examples of negation and irrealis follow here:

pul **p-a.kénn-á-akkakáṭe** **pəɽɪn** **ákka** **cɪk** **c-εṭ.t**
 person C-NEG-IRR:DEP-come:PST finally that VREF C-go:COMPL

the man should not have come anymore because it was too late

pul **p-a.kénn-í-ɪmma.káṭe** **nɪn** **ámma** **ṭ-nɪn** **ṭ-á.kénn-akkarṭ-k**
 person C-NEG-IRR:DEP-see:PST 1A:O if PERS-1A C-NEG-call:DEPCOMPL-O3

the man would not have seen us if we had not called him

k-kw-á.nn-ṭ-əkərénnṭ.t **púl** **á-p-ânṭán**
 3-C-NEG-IRR:DEP-let:COMPL person SUBJ-PRO-come:DEPINCOMPL

s/he should not have allowed the person to come

ámma **ín-p-á.p-p-íná.t** **á-n-əkénn-ṭ-əkkwṭ-ṭk**
 if 1-C-be:COMPL-C-know:COMPL SUBJ-1-NEG:DEP-IRR:DEP-kill:COMPL-O3

if I had known, I would not have killed him

The following is an example of C-**ánt** ‘can’ and irrealis. C-**ánt** is probably completive here, but this cannot be seen from the tones. The clause expresses that the opportunity was there to call and the subject should have called according to the speaker, but he did not.

k-kw-ánt-á-akkarô.t (< k- + p- + ánt- + ô- + akkarô.t)

3-C-can:COMPL-IRR:DEP-call:COMPL

he should have called

The following statement combines C-**árək** and irrealis. C-**árək** is probably a completive form, though it cannot be seen from the tones. It is said just after finding a man in the house:

pul

person

p-árək-ô-omupé.t

C-as_always:COMPL-IRR:DEP-steal:COMPL

ámmá

if

pókul

children

p-ellâ.t

C-be_absent:COMPL

t.uan

at_house

the man would surely have stolen, if the children had not been at home (because the man always steals if he has the opportunity).

12.19. C-**íra** ‘should’

C-**íra** ‘should’, which is always preceded by a concord, has one form only. It can be combined with an Incompletive or an Irrealis Completive:

C-**íra** C-incompl stem

C-**íra** C-IRR-completive stem

Since it can only be combined with non-dependent verbs, it is of no consequence whether or not it would itself have a floating high tone. A non-dependent verb has a high (or falling) tone itself and a preceding high tone will not manifest itself on it.

In combination with an Incompletive, the construction expresses that something should (still) happen, in other words that the stated event did not yet take place and perhaps even will not take place, but that, according to the speaker, it would be better if it did:

ŋ-kw-íra p-élikkə pól ém-p-í
 2-C-should C-release:INCOMPL person DEM-C-NEARSP
 you should release this man

ɔ-kín t-íra t-a.nán-ɔŋ lón appík
 PERS-3A C-should C-bring_to:INCOMPL-O2 words all
 they should explain everything to you

At least in some cases in which an Irrealis Completive is used, C-íra can be added, apparently without change of meaning. Like their counterparts without C-íra (see chapter 12.18), the examples below express that something did not happen, while conveying the speaker's view that it would have been better if it had.

ŋ-kw-íra p-é-ɛlikkɔ.t pól ém-p-í
 2-C-should C-IRR-release:COMPL person DEM-C-NEARSP
 you should have released this man

ɔ-kín t-íra t-á-anán-ɔŋ⁸¹ lón appík
 PERS-3A C-should C-IRR-bring_to:COMPL-O2 words all
 they should have explained everything to you

C-íra can also serve as a main verb. It is then followed by akka 'that', functioning as a complementizer, and a Dependent Incompletive verb:

ŋ-kw-íra akka ɔccɛkɔt
 2-C-should that hear:DEPINCOMPL
 you should listen!

Negation is expressed on the main verb, not on C-íra:

⁸¹ The completive TAM-stem of the benefactive derivation **ɔnáne** 'bring to' is **ɔnánɛt**. Plural (consonant-initial) object pronominal clitics come after the TAM-stem (for example **ɔnánɛt-tón** 'brought for us'); singular (vowel-initial) object pronominal clitics, however, replace the ending **ɛt** of the completive TAM-stem of a benefactive verb, for example **ɔnán-óŋ** 'brought for you'.

k-kw-íra p-ǎ.nn-ǝkórənnɔ pól á-p-ânťán
 3-C-should C-NEG-let:DEPINCOMPL person SUBJ-C-come:DEPINCOMPL
 he should not allow the man to come

12.20. Itive and ventive

Lumun has an itive auxiliary **ǝť** and a ventive auxiliary **atť**. Both have a dependent incompleted TAM-stem, a (non-dependent) incompleted TAM-stem and a completive TAM-stem. In addition, ventive **ǝť** has an imperative TAM-stem. The forms are given in the table. The itive and ventive completive TAM-stems are precisely the same, also as to their tonal behaviour.

Table 86 Itive and ventive TAM-stems

<i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>itive</i>	<i>ventive</i>
dependent incompleted	ǝť	atť
incompleted	átť	atť
completive	âtť	âtť
imperative	ť	-

I represent the completive itive/ventive TAM-stem **âtť** with a falling tone, since, in context, it is always realized with a high tone and does not bring a high tone to the following element. The tonal representation of the dependent incompleted and incompleted TAM-stems is only tentative. Examples of their realization as part of verbal words are presented in the tables 87-90 and in the example sentences in this chapter.

The incompleted and completive TAM-stems are preceded by a concord, thus: itive incompleted C-**átť**, ventive incompleted C-**atť**, and itive/ventive completive C-**âtť**. The dependent forms (itive **ǝť**, ventive **atť**) occur in environments that would select a dependent incompleted or a dependent perfective TAM-stem. The dependency opposition in the itive and ventive auxiliaries is fully functional.

The dependent incompleted and incompleted itive and ventive auxiliaries select a dependent incompleted or a dependent perfective TAM-stem of the main verb. The completive auxiliary **âtť** (whether

receiving an itive or a ventive interpretation) selects a completive TAM-stem. **âtt** is further discussed in 12.20.1.

The tables below present dependent and non-dependent itive and ventive verbs. The tones are given as they would be when the verb is preceded by a subject that does not influence the tones of the verb, for example **pul** ‘person’.

Table 87 Dependent Itive Incompletive and Itive Incompletive

	<i>Dep. Itive Incompletive</i> śt + <i>dep. incompletive</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>Itive Incompletive</i> C-á.t + <i>dep. incompletive</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	śt-ímma + H	C-a.t-ímma + H
akkarō ‘call’	śt-âkkarō + H	C-a.t-âkkarō + H
ɔmóɲe ‘steal’	śt-ɔmóɲe + H	C-a.t-ɔmóɲe + H
ɔkkwôt ‘kill’	śt-ɔkkwôt	C-a.t-ɔkkwôt

Table 88 Dependent Itive Perfective and Itive Perfective

	<i>Dep. Itive Perfective</i> śt + <i>dep. perfective</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>Itive Perfective</i> C-á.t + <i>dep. perfective</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	śt-ímmakat + H	C-a.t-ímmakat + H
akkarō ‘call’	śt-âkkarat + H	C-a.t-âkkarat + H
ɔmóɲe ‘steal’	śt-ɔmóɲekat + H	C-a.t-ɔmóɲekat + H
ɔkkwôt ‘kill’	śt-ɔkkwât	C-a.t-ɔkkwât

Table 89 Dependent Ventive Incompletive and Ventive Incompletive

	<i>Dep. Ventive Incompletive</i> ať + <i>dep. incompletive</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>Ventive Incompletive</i> C-âť + <i>dep. incompletive</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	ať-imma + H	C-âť-imma + H

akkarɔ ‘call’	aṭ-akkarɔ + H	C-áṭ-akkarɔ + H
ɔmóɲe ‘steal’	aṭ-ɔmóɲe + H	C-áṭ-ɔmóɲe + H
ɔkkwât ‘kill’	aṭ-ɔkkwât	C-áṭ-ɔkkwât

Table 90 Dependent Ventive Perfective and Ventive Perfective

	<i>Dep. Ventive Perfective</i> <i>aṭ + dep. perfective</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>Ventive Perfective</i> <i>C-áṭ + dep. perfective</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	aṭ-immakat + H	C-áṭ-immakat + H
akkarɔ ‘call’	aṭ-akkarat + H	C-áṭ-akkarat + H
ɔmóɲe ‘steal’	aṭ-ɔmóɲekat + H	C-áṭ-ɔmóɲekat + H
ɔkkwât ‘kill’	aṭ-ɔkkwât	C-áṭ-ɔkkwât

Ventive *aṭ* may have developed from *aw* ‘come’, itive *ɔṭ* from *ɛṭ* ‘go’, but where *ṭ* has come from is not clear.

Use of the itive and ventive auxiliaries

The itive and ventive auxiliaries are used when an action takes place at a location that is different from where the performer of the action is at the time of speech (the performer has or had to go somewhere to perform the action) or, when the location where he performs the action is different from where he was or will be before (he will have to come, or has had to come, to the location first). Whether a movement is viewed as itive or ventive depends on the position of the deictic centre. In case of speech participants (first and second persons), the deictic centre lies with the speaker. In case of third persons, the storyteller will typically change the deictic centre from one participant to another, and he may put the deictic centre with himself, as if he himself were located somewhere in the scene. Generally, the use of an itive or ventive auxiliary is obligatory when an action involves movement to or from another place.

Itive and ventive with dependent incompletive TAM-stem

Two examples of itive **ṣṭ** combined with a dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb are given here. The first has the non-dependent incomplete TAM-stem **áṭ**, the second the dependent incomplete **ṣṭ**.

m-p-a.ṭ-ṣkákṣt **ı-aləpapúr** **ḡṛṛṛṣt**
 1-C-IT:INCOMPL-grind_at:DEPINCOMPL in-mill tomorrow
 I will go and grind at the mill tomorrow

m-p-a.éṣ **a-n-ṣṭ-ṣkákṣt** **ı-aləpapúr**
 1-C-go:INCOMPL CONJ-1-IT:DEPINCOMPL-grind_at:DEPINCOMPL in-mill
 I must go and grind at the mill (I am going now)

Ventive **aṭ** is used in the following two examples. The second has two auxiliaries on the main verb, with the ventive as the second:

m-p-áṭ-ṣkákṣ **ḡṛṛṛṣt**
 1-C-VEN:INCOMPL-grind:DEPINCOMPL tomorrow
 I will come and grind tomorrow (the speaker is at the mill, maybe she came to check if it is working, she will go home and return tomorrow)

m-p-ápp-áṭ-ṣkákṣ **ḡṛṛṛṣt**
 1-C-again:INCOMPL-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-grind:DEPINCOMPL tomorrow
 I will come and grind again tomorrow (the speaker is at the mill, she is (or has been) grinding there)

The following two examples contrast a non-dependent itive and ventive followed by a dependent incomplete TAM-stem.

ḡ-kw-a.ṭ-ṣṭəkṣ
 2-C-IT:INCOMPL-eat:DEPINCOMPL
 you (must) go and eat (the speaker is not at the place where the food is, the addressee must move away from the speaker)

ḡ-kw-áṭ-ṣṭəkṣ
 2-C-VEN:INCOMPL-eat:DEPINCOMPL
 you (must) come and eat (the speaker is at the place where the food is, the addressee must come to where the speaker and the food are)

The next two examples contrast a dependent itive and ventive followed by a dependent incomplete TAM-stem:

ɔmɛɬ.ɛ kɪn á-kɪn ʒɛ-ʒmɪccɔ ɔ-nnân
 tell:IMP O3A SUBJ.PERS-3A IT:DEPINCOMPL-greet:DEPINCOMPL PERS-mother
 tell them to go and greet their mother (the mother is not where the speaker is)

ɔmɛɬ.ɛ kɪn á-kɪn aɬ-ɔmɪccɔ ɔ-nnân
 tell:IMP O3A SUBJ.PERS-3A VEN:DEPINCOMPL-greet:DEPINCOMPL PERS-mother
 tell them to come and greet their mother (the mother is where the speaker is)

Itive and ventive with dependent perfective TAM-stem

In the following examples the consecutive action (that takes place at a location where the subject first had to go) is expressed with an itive auxiliary and a dependent perfective TAM-stem:

a-múɬá ʒrɛp.át ɬəmən-ɬəmən
 CONJ.PERS-Amoɬa jump_down:DEPPRFV quickly-REDUP

a-kw-ʒɛ-áukkwat lɛcɔk
 CONJ-3-IT:DEPINCOMPL-drive_in_different_direction:DEPPRFV goats

Amoɬa moved down quickly (jumping down) and drove the goats in a different direction (fr. written story)

a-kw-ʒɪŋkat itti k-kw-á.éʒ t.óán
 CONJ-3-go:DEPPRFV that 3-C-go:INCOMPL at_house

a-kw-ʒɛ-íat pɪce p-ɔɛ pɛɪɪn
 CONJ-3-IT:DEPINCOMPL-find:DEPPRFV tree(sp) C-red finally

and she got on her way home and she found then a *pice*-tree with very ripe fruits (lit. a very ripe *pice*-tree) (fr. written story)

A clause with a form of the verb **ɛʒ** ‘go’ or **aw** ‘come’ often precedes a verb with an itive or ventive auxiliary, drawing stronger attention to the movement that is required in order to carry out the action at a different location than where the performer is (or was). The itive or ventive auxiliary cannot be omitted in such cases.

m-p-a.ɪk **p-a.ẽ** **p-a.t-ítto** **ʊá**
 1-C-be:PR C-go:INCOMPL C-IT:INCOMPL-pick:DEPINCOMPL fruit(sp)
 I am going to pick *ʊa*-fruits

ɔ-nne **p-a.ɪk** **p-âkkarɔ**
 PERS-your_mother C-be:PR C-call:INCOMPL
ittɪ **ɲ-kw-ântan** **á-t-ɔrəkɔ** **ɲurû**
 that 2-C-come:INCOMPL SUBJ-(2-)VEN:DEPINCOMPL-eat:DEPINCOMPL asida
 your mother is calling you to come and eat asida

In the following example the deictic centre lies at the house of the man who performs the actions. He goes to the market to buy engine oil and comes back to his house to treat his chicken with the oil. The going is expressed with a main verb and with the itive auxiliary, the coming back only with the ventive auxiliary.

pul **p-ɔŋkáte** **ɬallaɬɬa**
 person C-go:PST market
á-p-ɔt-ɔkéro **ɲaak** **ɲ-ɔ-ɬorompíl**
 SUBJ-PRO-IT:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPINCOMPL oil C-of-car
á-kw-aɬ-ɪpɪntet⁸² **ɬakuruk** **ɪ-ɔræccô**
 SUBJ-3-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-dig_for:DEPINCOMPL chicken in-feathers
 the man went to the market to buy engine oil in order to put it between the feathers of the chicken (lit.: in order to come and put it ...) (fr. written story)

In the next example, *ẽ* ‘go’ itself has an itive auxiliary:

pul **p-ɔ-nɔppət** **p-ɔr.a.káte** **nɔ-ppan**
 person C-of-Nɔppət C-refuse:PST on-room
a-p-ɔt-é **í-mán** **m-ɔ-ttit**
 CONJ-C-IT:DEPINCOMPL-go:DEPINCOMPL in-house C-of-granary
 the person of Nɔppət did not go into the house but went into the granary (fr. written story)

⁸² A high tone is in principle expected on the dependent ventive auxiliary, because of the 3SG pronominal proclitic. It is not realized, however, due to the subjunctive particle *â*.

In a chain of clauses, the deictic centre does not need to stay fixed. In the following example, the perspective changes from the place from where the man left to the place where he arrived:

a-púl ɔ́ŋkat a-p-át-ɔ́kér.at
 CONJ-person go:DEPPRFV CONJ-PRO-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPPRFV
 and the man went and he came to buy it

The verb **ɔ́t** ‘find’ is a special because an itive or ventive auxiliary is often obligatory also when there is no spatial movement involved, as in the example below. The speaker is sitting at a place and not moving. It seems that whenever **ɔ́t** is not the first verb in a verbal sequence, an itive or ventive auxiliary is used.

... a-n-íkk.at cɪk pá.p.ɔ́tté a-n-ɔ́t-í.at
 CONJ-1-sit:DEPPRFV VREF short_time CONJ-1-IT:DEPINCOMPL-find:DEPPRFV
a-n-íɾimat n.tɪ ɪ-kɪt
 CONJ-1-become_blind:DEPINCOMPL from in-eyes
 and I sat for a while and I found that I was getting blind

An example with ‘find’ and a (dependent) ventive auxiliary is the following:

ámámá ɔ́-rún ɬ-áá.t mənə aɬ-ɪ.at ...
 if PERS-12A C-come:COMPL until VEN:DEPINCOMPL-find:DEPPRFV
 when we will find it ... (lit.: when we will have come to come find it ... :
 the speakers will come back to the place where they are now to try and find
 something they expect to be there)

Commands with an itive auxiliary

Itive **ɔ́t** has an imperative TAM-stem: **ɬ**. Imperative **ɬ** is followed by the dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb. Imperative **ɬ** comes with a high tone, as shown in the example below with the low-toned verb **ɔ́ŋkə** ‘rest’.

ṭ-ṣṇṇṇṇ

IT:IMP-rest:DEPINCOMPL

go and rest! (to singular addressee)

ṭ-íṭṇṇ-m

IT:IMP-pick_for:DEPINCOMPL-O1

mén

palm_fruits

á-n-áṭ-ṭṭṇṇ

SUBJ-1-VEN:INCOMPL-drink:INCOMPL

pick palm fruits for me so that I come and eat them!

The ventive auxiliary does not have an imperative TAM-stem. Commands to a singular addressee with ‘come’ are expressed with the Imperative of **ṇṇ** ‘come’ followed by the conjunctive particle **á** + main verb with ventive auxiliary:

aṭṭ

come:IMP

áṭ-ṭṭṇṇ⁸³

CONJ.(2.)VEN:DEPINCOMPL-wait_for:DEPINCOMPL

ṇ-íáṇ

PERS-mother

cṭṭ

VREF

pá.p.ṣṭṭṇṇ

short_time

come and wait a little time for my mother! (fr. written story)

A combination of the Imperative of **ṇṇ** ‘go’, the conjunctive particle **á** and a dependent incomplete itive auxiliary and main verb are possible as well when addressing a singular person:

ṇṇ

go:IMP

áṭ-ṇṇṇṇ⁸⁴

CONJ.(2.)IT:DEPINCOMPL-meet:DEPINCOMPL

ṇ-a-áṭ

in-PERS-3

go to meet him/her!

Commands to a plural addressee, whether itive or ventive, use a 2PL addressive pronominal proclitic or pronoun (see 6.5), followed by a dependent incomplete auxiliary and main verb, for example:

⁸³ The conjunctive particle **á** seems involved here. The 2SG pronoun clitic **ṇ** is deleted between vowels. Derivation: **á + ṇ + aṭ-ṭṭṇṇ** > **aáṭṭṭṇṇ** > **áṭṭṭṇṇ** > **áṭṭṭṇṇ**.

⁸⁴ The conjunctive particle **á** seems involved here. The 2SG pronoun clitic **ṇ** is deleted between vowels. Derivation: **á + ṇ + aṭ-ṇṇṇṇ** > **aáṭ-ṇṇṇṇ** > **áṭ-ṇṇṇṇ** > **áṭ-ṇṇṇṇ**. In this analysis, the itive dependent incomplete stem receives a high tone.

၁၈-၁တံ-၁၈၁က

2A-IT:DEPINCOMPL-rest:DEPINCOMPL

go and rest! (to plural addressee)

၁၈-၁တံ-၁ကက-၁၈

2A-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-make_sit:DEPINCOMPL-O1A

၁က

VREF

come and make us sit together! (to family members, in order to mediate in a conflict)

12.20.1. The completive itive/ventive auxiliary C-**၁တံ**

The Completive auxiliary C-**၁တံ** can precede a dependent perfective TAM-stem of a main verb and a TAM-stem that has the segmental shape of a dependent incomplete with the tones that are found after the (completive) auxiliary verbs C-**၁ကက**, C-**၁ကတံ**, C-**၁ကပံ** (and their shortened variants) and after the negation auxiliaries when a completive tense is expressed. In the latter case, I call these stems ‘dependent completive’, as explained in 12.17. In the other cases they are simply dependent incomplete TAM-stems, since their tones follow regularly from the preceding (not-shortened) auxiliaries.

Also in the case of C-**၁တံ**, the tones are regularly generated: no tone on low stems, since verbs with a final falling tone do not bring a high tone to a next element, and tone bridge in case the verb has a high (of falling) tone itself. I therefore conclude that the completive auxiliary C-**၁တံ** combines with the dependent incomplete TAM-stem. As will be seen in the examples, this is also consistent with the meaning of these TAMs. The forms are given in the table below. I call the TAMs Itive/Ventive Completive and Itive/Ventive Past Perfective, respectively. The latter must be distinguished from the Itive Perfective and the Ventive Perfective.

Table 91 Itive/Ventive Completive and Itive/Ventive Past Perfective

	<i>Itive/Ventive Completive</i> <i>C-átt + dep. incomplete</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>	<i>Itive/Ventive Past</i> <i>Perfective</i> <i>C-átt + dep. perfective</i> <i>TAM-stem</i>
imma ‘see’	C-átt-imma + H	C-átt-immakat + H
akkarɔ ‘call’	C-átt-akkarɔ + H	C-átt-akkarat + H
ɔmúɲɛ ‘steal’	C-átt-ɔmúɲɛ + H	C-átt-ɔmúɲekat + H
ɔkkwât ‘kill’	C-átt-ɔkkwât	C-átt-ɔkkwât

Itive/ventive C-átt has probably developed along two lines, which have resulted in one and the same morpheme. The itive auxiliary is likely to have developed from the Completive TAM of **ɛ̃** ‘go’, the ventive from the Completive of **ɑ** ‘come’. The first example below has the itive/ventive auxiliary and allows for two interpretations, depending on the context. The second example gives the alternative way for expressing the itive variant, the third the alternative way for expressing the ventive variant:

pul **p-átt-ɔkéro**
 person C-ITVEN:COMPL-trade:DEPINCOMPL
 the man has gone/come to buy it

pul **p-ɛɔ.t** **á-p-ɔt-ɔkéro**
 person C-go:COMPL SUBJ-C-IT:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPINCOMPL
 the man has gone to buy it

pul **p-aa.t** **á-p-aɬ-ɔkéro**
 person C-come:COMPL SUBJ-C-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPINCOMPL
 the man has come to buy it

The construction C-átt + dependent incomplete TAM-stem of the main verb has undoubtedly developed from these constructions, neutralizing the opposition itive-ventive in the resulting short form C-átt. C-átt retains the notion of movement from one place to another,

but the direction of the movement must be interpreted, according to the situation.

The examples also show that the TAM-stems of main verbs with L.H.L* or L.HL/L.L.HL tone patterns used after C-**átt** have developed not from completive, but from incomplete TAM-stems. Synchronically, however, they can be regarded as completive TAM-stems. This is because stems with the same tone patterns occur in other environments where they minimally contrast with dependent incomplete TAM-stems: the tones on these stems have become the only elements signalling the TAM of the verb. This is, for example, the case in negated verbs: the negation auxiliaries (no longer?) have a distinction between Incomplete and Completive, only the tones on the main verb TAM-stems make the distinction. A process in the same direction is seen at work in auxiliaries of ***anta** ‘can’ and ***appa** ‘again’. The (longer) completive form of these auxiliaries is being shortened to the same forms as the incompletives. There too, when the short forms are used, only the tones on the dependent main verb can distinguish the TAMs.

The same process of shortening of constructions of the Completive of **éñ** ‘go’ and the Completive of **ə** ‘come’ with a dependent perfective TAM-stem has given rise to the combination **átt** + dependent perfective TAM-stem. Compare the following cases. In all three, the buying is just the next action. There is no purposerelation between the going or coming and the action expressed by the main verb.

pul **p-átt-ókérat**

person C-ITVEN:COMPL-trade:DEPPRFV

the man went/came and bought it

pul **p-éś.t** **a-p-śt-ókér.at**

person C-go:COMPL CONJ-PRO-IT:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPPRFV

the man went and bought it

pul **p-aa.t** **a-p-át-ókér.at**

person C-come:COMPL CONJ-PRO-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-trade:DEPPRFV

the man came and bought it

C-**âtt** patterns with completive TAM-stems in that it cannot occur without a preceding concord.

Use and meaning

Some further sentential examples are given here to illustrate the use and meaning of Completive C-**âtt**:

m-p-âtt-ôccó **tík ana attı** **tík t-a.îk**

1-C-ITVEN:COMPL-receive:DEPINCOMPL fire and I_hope_that fire C-be:PR

I have come to get fire and I hope the fire is there (the speaker has arrived at the neighbour's place, where she hopes to get fire. The deictic centre lies where the speaker is while saying this sentence). (fr. written story)

m-p-aa.t **n-tş-mıřuk** **p-âtt-şıáẽ**

1-C-come:COMPL with_at-bush C-ITVEN:COMPL-urinate:DEPINCOMPL

I come from the bush, having gone to urinate (the deictic centre is where the speaker is while saying this sentence)

It was remarked before that the verb **ıřt** 'find' is very often combined with an itive or ventive auxiliary, and that, in combination with this verb, movement does not need to be involved. Also the example below does not express movement. C-**âtt** + dependent incomplete TAM-stem of **ıřt** does not express itive or ventive action in order to (try and) find (i.e. to search), but the end result of having found.

m-p-âtt-ıřt **ókúl kéccôk**

1-C-ITVEN:COMPL-find:DEPINCOMPL child market

I found the child in the market (*not*: I have gone to find the child in the market)

C-**âtt** + dependent perfective TAM-stem expresses a consecutive action or event, following upon a movement that has taken place. Two examples:

ɔ-ttán	p-átt-óccó.kat	im̩t	w-ittík	
PERS-father	C-ITVEN:COMPL-receive:DEPPRFV	goat	C-big	
ana	ɔ-kín	t-átt-akkar.at	kúrí	k-én
and	PERS-3A	C-ITVEN:COMPL-call:DEPPRFV	family	C-POSS3A
itti	ɔ-kín	t-átt-etiako		
that	PERS-3A	C-VEN:INCOMPL-become_blessed:DEPINCOMPL		

the father (went and) caught a fat goat and they (went and) invited their family to come and get blessed

ana	ílí	kapík	w-ı̄e.káté	pápé	itti
and	leader	God	C-tell:PST	fish	that
p-p-á.t-úttet		ɔ-ionán	ci-nó-kútút	k-ó-rók	
PRO-C-IT:INCOMPL-vomit_at:DEPINCOMPL		PERS-Jonah	LOC-on-lip	C-of-water_place	
ana	p-p-átt-utte.kat-ók	cık			
and	PRO-C-ITVEN:COMPL-vomit_at:DEPPRFV-O3	VREF			

and the Lord God told the fish that it must (go and) vomit Jonah onto the water side, and it (went and) vomited him there. (Jonah 2:10)

The following examples have C-átt + dependent perfective TAM-stem. The verbs convey that a consecutive action can or may have happened, but there is no certainty about whether or not it actually did. In the first example C-átt precedes the dependent perfective stem of **imma** ‘see’, in the second the dependent perfective stem of **immako** ‘shelter’.

ɔ-lótti	p-átt-imma.kat	ɔ-ttán	akka	k-kw-ész.t	kéccôk
PERS-Lótti	C-ITVEN:COMPL-see:DEPPRFV	PERS-father	that	3-C-go:COMPL	market

It is possible that Lótti saw his father when he went to the market

ɔ-laló	p-ellá.t	t.uan	ána	pól	p-átt-immak.at
PERS-Lalo	C-be_absent:COMPL	at_house	and	person	C-ITVEN:COMPL-shelter:DEPPRFV
ákka	kápík				
that	rain				

Lalo was not in the house, therefore the person may have sheltered (there) from the rain

12.20.2. Itive and ventive as markers of possibility/probability

In certain environments itive **ɔ̃t** and ventive **ãt** can have a modal interpretation expressing a possibility rather than a certainty. A Dependent Perfective without auxiliary can refer to a future consecutive event. The same is possible for a verb that contains an itive or ventive auxiliary and a dependent perfective TAM-stem. In a sentence that contains a clause introduced by **ámma** + H ‘if, when’, however, the itive or ventive auxiliary + dependent perfective TAM-stem does not convey that a consecutive event *will* happen, but that it *can* or *may* happen. It expresses a possibility, not a certainty.

ɔ̃-lótti p-a.ṭ-ímma.kat ɔ̃-ttán ámma k-kw-éś.t kéccôk
 PERS-Lótti C-IT:INCOMPL-see:DEPPRFV PERS-father if 3-C-go:COMPL market

Lótti can/may see his father when he goes to the market (the deictic centre is placed with Lótti)

ɔ̃-lótti p-át-ímma.kat ɔ̃-ttán ámma k-kw-áa.t kéccôk
 PERS-Lótti C-VEN:INCOMPL-see:DEPPRFV PERS-father if 3-C-come:COMPL market

Lótti can/may see his father when he comes to the market (the deictic centre is placed with the father)

Completive **c-âtt** also allows for a modal interpretation, as in the following two examples:

k-kw-âtt-imma lők
 3-C-ITVEN:COMPL-see:DEPINCOMPL dogs

s/he came to see the dogs / s/he went to see the dogs / s/he may have seen the dogs (the speaker is not sure)

ɔ̃-kín ṭ-âtt-anṭán
 PERS-3A C-ITVEN:COMPL-come:DEPINCOMPL

maybe they came (I am not sure, I don’t remember)

Particularly when used with **ɔ̃kâ** ‘be’, **c-âtt** obtains a modal reading, expressing that something is maybe or probably the case:

lɔn l-átt-óká l-óppót
 words C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-many

maybe a lot of things are said now (for example, somebody has died and bad things were whispered about the person before. Maybe these things are now said openly, but the speaker is not sure if this is actually happening)

mɪɔ ém-m-í m-átt-óká m-óηwó.t úl w-ɔppót
 disease DEM-C-NEARSP C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-kill.PLUR:COMPL people C-many

this disease has (by now) probably killed many people

pul em-p-ɪ p-átt-óká p-ó-károṭâ
 person DEM-C-NEARSP C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-of-where

from where could this person be?

ɔ-ɕɛccé p-átt-óká p-ákkárákɔ.t
 PERS-Cɕcce C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-be_called:COMPL

Cecce may have been invited

Under this interpretation of the ventive/itive Completive, also a dependent form is attested (that is, a form without concord). This actually suggests that C-átt with modal reading is no longer perceived as a Completive verb, since a Completive would under all circumstances retain its concord. The clause from the Bible ‘it must have been an angel’ (Acts 12:15) is translated with (dependent) átt:

átt-óká ɔɾupa w-ɔ-tɔtɪllettât
 ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL spirit C-of-NOM.be_sent.PLUR

it must have been an angel (lit.: a spirit of being sent repeatedly)

C-átt can be used in combination with C-íkkɔ ‘may’:

ɔ-ɕɛccé p-íkkɔ p-átt-óká p-ákkárákɔ.t
 PERS-Cɕcce C-may C-ITVEN:COMPL-be:DEPINCOMPL C-be_called:COMPL

Cɕcce may have been invited

12.21. Defective verbs with complementizer element **tĩ**

attĩ ‘I hope that’ contains the complementizing formative **tĩ** that is also part of the complementizer **ittĩ** ‘that’ (see 18.7). **tĩ** is also a formative of the defective verb **ɔpərĩ** ‘say, think’.

attĩ ‘I hope that’ is a fully frozen form. It is immediately followed by its complement, without the complementizer **ittĩ** ‘that’. It is used in greetings, and solicits a response. It is commonly translated with ‘I hope that’, but whether the first person singular subject has actually ever been part of it is unclear, since no remnant of ‘I’ can be recognized. Two examples:

attĩ ŋ-kw-a.ɪk p-ɔpərɔt
 I_hope_that 2-C-be:PR C-good

I hope you are fine?

at-tĩ ŋ-kw-ɪcáɬ.ɛ
 I_hope_that 2-C-lie_down:COMPL

I hope that you slept?

ɔpərĩ ‘say, think’, like **attĩ**, contains the complementizing element **tĩ**. Unlike **attĩ**, it can be followed by **ittĩ** ‘that’, but this is not necessary. It can inflect for Incompletive, in which case the initial vowel (regularly) changes to **a**. The Incompletive does (irregularly) not have a high tone on its initial vowel.

m-p-a.pərɪ k-kw-ânɬán
 1-C-say:INCOMPL 3-C-come:INCOMPL

I think she will come

m-p-a.pərɪ ittĩ k-kw-ânɬán
 1-C-say:INCOMPL that 3-C-come:INCOMPL

I think she will come

Apart from the base form (the dependent incomplete TAM-stem) **ɔpərĩ** and Incompletive C-**apərĩ**, a Completive C-**ɔpərĩ** attested. In the first example below, dependent incomplete **ɔpərĩ** follows the auxiliary **ant** ‘can’. The second example has Completive C-**ɔpərĩ**.

ant-ɔpəri

can:DEPINCOMPL-say:DEPINCOMPL

ŋ-kw-a.kkət

2-C-do:INCOMPL

ŋín-ɬa

what-QW

tell (me), what will you do?

ŋ-kw-ɔpəri **tát-ɬa**

2-C-say:COMPL how-QW

what did you say?/what have you just said?

12.22. C-ɔnô ‘have, must’

The verb C-ɔnô ‘have, must’ occurs in one form only. Its phonological shape is different from other verbs since it ends in **o**. It shares with adjectives that it is always preceded by a concord (unless replaced by the focus marker **akk-** or a-C-C-) and that it can be combined with different TAMs of **ɔká** ‘be’, including the Present of ‘be’. Nevertheless, I consider it a verb, since it needs not only a subject but also an (expressed or unexpressed) object. Some examples:

k-kw-ɔno **larɔ**

3-C-have twins

s/he has twins

kapík **akk-ɔnô**

God FOC-have

it is in God’s hands (it is God who has it)

áməntáci **p-ɔká.t** **p-ɔnú** **kapík**

PERS.aməntáci C-be:COMPL C-have rain

Aməntáci was holding the rain (i.e. had control over the rain) (App. I, 3)

Before C-ɔnô, the Completive of ‘be’ C-ɔkât can be shortened to C-ât, in the same way as happens in Past Completives (see 12.7.5). Thus:

áməntáci **p-á.p-p-ɔnú** **kapík**

PERS.Aməntáci C-be:COMPL-C-have rain

Aməntáci was holding the rain (Aməntáci had control over the rain)

ɔ-nenní	p-íccá	p-ónú	lɔn	rtti	k-kw-ântan-î
PERS-Nenni	C-be still	C-have	words	that	3-C-come:INCOMPL-O

C-**ᐅᐅ** is also found in combination with the Present of ‘be’. Completives preceded by the Present of ‘be’ are uncommon, but not entirely unattested, as shown in the second example below, which has the Completive of **ᐅᐅ** ‘like, want, love’. Co-occurrence with the Present of ‘be’ reveals a tendency of C-**ᐅᐅ** and C-**ᐅᐅᐅ** towards becoming adjectives. However, particularly the combination with C-**ᐅᐅᐅ** was not fully acceptable for my consultants.

some animal that is called cat/some animal having the name cat

s/he wants that ...

m-pəŋəʔ.é	akka	kéccók	k-ín	k-ónó	aʔəpə	cík	áppík
1-C-like:COMPL	that	market	C-POSS1A	C-have	things	VREF	all

I like it that our market has everything

m-pəŋəʔ.é itti kéccók k-ín k-á.ná aʔəpu cik áppik
 1-C-like:COMPL that market C-POSS1A C-bring:INCOMPL things VREF all

I want our market to have everything

c-ənō does not only express possession, it also commonly expresses ‘must’:

k-kw-ónu itti k-kw-á.ccíkwət
 3-C-have that 3-C-hear:INCOMPL

s/he must listen

lətti ŋ-kw-ənó itti ŋ-kw-a.ʔəkə ʔuʔít ʔ-əppót
 lətti 2-C-have that 2-C-eat:INCOMPL food C-many

Lətti, you must eat a lot of food

12.23. Combinations of auxiliaries

Some combinations of auxiliaries are presented here. Within the word, auxiliaries occur in a certain order. If present, a form of ***anta** ‘can’ comes as the first, itive/ventive as the last, except for the irrealis morpheme, which is the very last. Negation precedes a form of ***appa** ‘again’, but follows a form of ***arəka** ‘as always’. Some examples:

məna ɔ-nən ʔ-ánt-əkənn-əccíkwət-ín ...
 even PERS-2A C-can:INCOMPL-NEG:DEP-hear:DEPINCOMPL-O1

even if you do not listen to me ... (John 10:38)

cíkɪt c-ərrə.r-ín itti m-p-ánt-át-əkəʔa ókul
 heart C-push:COMPL-O1 that 1-C-can:INCOMPL-VEN:DEPINCOMPL-look_at:DEPINCOMPL child
 my heart pushed me to come and see the child (that I take the opportunity to come and see the child)

ʔuk t-m ʔ-arək-əkənn-əkəkwət
 dog C-POSS1 C-as_always:COMPL-NEG:DEP-kill:DEPCOMPL

my dog surely did not kill anything (it never catches anything!)

m-p-ǎnn-ápp-íkkə **ḡópak**

1-C-NEG-again:DEPINCOMPL-drink:DEPINCOMPL beer

I will not drink beer again

m-p-ápp-əṭ-əkákəṭ **ɪ-aləpapór** **ḡərrəṭ**
 1-C-again:INCOMPL-IT:DEPINCOMPL-grind_at:DEPINCOMPL in-mill tomorrow

I will again go and grind at the mill tomorrow

m-p-ǎnn-ápp-əṭ-íkkə **ḡópak**

1-C-NEG-again:DEPINCOMPL-IT:DEPINCOMPL-drink:DEPINCOMPL beer

I will not go and drink beer again

12.23.1. Constructions with an auxiliary of ‘be’

Auxiliaries are attached to the main verb in some cases and to another auxiliary in other cases. In a Present Continuous (C-**aík** + Incompletive main verb), the negation auxiliary, and auxiliaries of ***anta** ‘can’ and ***appa** ‘again’ come on the main verb:

m-p-a.ík **p-akénn-ícat**
 1-C-be:PR C-NEG-lie_down:DEPINCOMPL

I am not lying down

k-kw-á.ík **p-ánt-úet** **ḡúcul**
 3-C-be:PR C-can:INCOMPL-prepare:DEPINCOMPL sauce

she is just starting to prepare the sauce (lit.: she is having the opportunity to prepare the sauce. As an answer to a question: has mother already prepared the food?)

m-p-a.ík **p-ápp-éren-əṭ** **ittĩ ...**
 1-C-be:PR C-again:INCOMPL-speak_to:DEPINCOMPL-O2 that

I am telling you again ...

In Past Completive constructions (C-**əkāt** ‘was/were’ + Completive main verb) negation tends to come on the main verb as well. The negated construction can be shortened in the same way as the Past Completive (see 12.7.5):

m-p-ɔká.t **p-ákónn-ɨcat** / **m-p-á.p-p-ákónn-ɨcat**
 1-C-be:COMPL C-NEG-lie_down:DEPCOMPL 1-C-be:COMPL-C-NEG-lie_down:DEPCOMPL

I had not laid down

In the following example negation comes on the copular verb ‘be’, not on the auxiliary ‘be’:

pul **p-ɔká.t** **p-ákónn-ɔká** **pɨak**
 person C-be:COMPL C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL orphan

the man was not a poor person

However, in constructions with a Past Completive with a main verb expressing a state, negation comes on the auxiliary. Completives indicating a state pattern here with adjectives. For comparison, an example with an adjective is given last.

m-p-ǎnn-ɔká **p-íámâ.t**
 1-C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL C-become_hungry:COMPL

I was not hungry

m-p-ǎnn-ɔká **p-ɔŋɔ́.é** **ittĩ ...**
 1-C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL C-like:COMPL that

I did not want (that) ...

lɔn **el-l-i** **l-akónn-ɔka**⁸⁵ **l-ɔpərɔt**
 words DEM-C-NEARSP C-NEG-be:DEPINCOMPL C-good

these things will not be good

In complex verbs with a clause chaining structure, negation comes on the auxiliary of ‘be’.

m-p-akónn-ɔká **á-n-ɨcat**
 1-C-NEG-be:DEPCOMPL CONJ-1-lie_down:DEPINCOMPL

I was not lying down (on the contrary: I was working)

⁸⁵ The falling tone of ɔká is realized here as low.

Also in the following example, the auxiliary is attached to the auxiliary of ‘be’:

m-p-ántór-óká

1-C-can:COMPL-be:INCOMPL

p-íó.t

C-die:COMPL

I am dead/I have just died (said in serious distress)